https://truckmanualshub.com/

Operator’s Manual

Track excavators

75Z3 / 75Z3₂
8003 / 8003₂



Machine models	**75Z3/8003** **75Z3₂/8003₂**
Edition	**4.0**
Language	**en**
Article number	**1000132136**

WACKER NEUSON

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Documentation

Description		Order no.
Operator's Manual		1000132136
Spare parts catalogue de/en/fr	75Z3 (AC02517 to AD07209) 8003 (AC02528 to AD07187) 75Z3 (AH00646 to AJ02793) 8003 (AH00611 to AJ02798)	1000128458 1000137282 1000182731 1000181117
Spare parts catalogue de/it/es	75Z3 (AC02517 to AD07209) 8003 (AC02528 to AD07187) 75Z3 (AH00646 to AJ02793) 8003 (AH00611 to AJ02798)	1000128460 1000137283 1000182732 1000181118

Legend

Edition	Issued
1.0	05/2004
1.1	05/2005
1.2	01/2006
2.0	11/2007
2.1	04/2008
2.2	11/2009
3.0	01/2010
4.0	04/2012

Copyright – 2012 Wacker Neuson Linz GmbH, Hörsching
Printed in Austria
All rights reserved

No part of this publication may be reproduced, translated or used in any form or by any means – graphic, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording, taping or information storage or retrieval systems – without prior permission in writing from the manufacturer.

The cover features the machine with possible optional equipment.

Non-metric dimensions and weights are rounded.

Translation of original Operator's Manual

Wacker Neuson Linz GmbH
Flughafenstraße 7
A-4063 Hörsching

Tel. +43 (0) 7221 63000
E-mail: office.linz@wackerneuson.com
www.wackerneuson.com

Document: BA 75Z3/8003 en
Order no.: 1000132136
Edition: 4.0

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Table of contents

Introduction

Important information on the Operator's Manual 1-1
Abbreviations/symbols 1-1
Machine overview 1-2
Brief description 1-3
Travelling drive 1-3
Work hydraulics 1-3
Shock cartridges (option) 1-3
Cooling system 1-3
Cab 1-3
Fields of application, attachments 1-4
Use: attachment 1-4
Regulations 1-6
EC declaration of conformity for all machines delivered before 29 December 2009 1-7
EC declaration of conformity for all machines delivered after 29 December 2009 .. 1-8
Declaration of conformity for machines without CE mark on the type label 1-9
Type labels and component numbers 1-10
Signs and symbols (up to serial no. AH01658) 1-13
...on the outside of the machine 1-13
Signs and symbols (from serial no. AH01659) 1-17
Safety labels 1-22
Fire extinguisher 1-27

Safety instructions

Identification of warnings and dangers 2-1
Warranty 2-1
Disposal 2-1
Designated use and exemption from liability 2-2
General conduct and safety instructions 2-3
Organisational measures 2-3
Selection and qualification of staff, basic responsibilities 2-4
Safety instructions regarding operation 2-5
Normal operation 2-5
Information on visibility 2-6
Cab and protective structures (from serial no. AJ02793) 2-7
Installing/removing the Front Guard 2-7
Work range and restricted visibility 2-8
Checks when reversing the machine 2-8
Trailer operation 2-8
Applications with lifting gear 2-9
Instructions on fastening loads 2-9
Prerequisite for safe use 2-10
Attachments 2-10
Safety instructions for maintenance 2-11
Warning of special hazards 2-13
Electrical system 2-13
Working in the area of underground electric lines 2-13
Working near overhead electric lines 2-13
Gas, dust, steam, smoke 2-14
Hydraulics 2-14
Noise 2-14
Oil, grease and other chemical substances 2-14
Using the quickhitches in water 2-14
Battery 2-14
Tracks 2-15

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Hammer operation 2-15
Safety instructions 2-15
Working with a hammer 2-16
Transport and towing 2-17
Towing 2-17
Transport 2-17

Operation

Cab 75Z3/8003 (up to serial no. AH00610) 3-2
Control elements 75Z3/8003 (up to serial no. AH00610) 3-4
Cab 75Z3/8003 (serial nos. AH00611 to AH02749) 3-6
Control elements 75Z3/8003 (serial nos. AH00611 to AH02749) 3-8
Cab 75Z3 2/8003 2 (from serial no. AJ02793) 3-10
Control elements 75Z3 2/8003 2 (from serial no. AJ02793) 3-12
Indicator lights and warning lights: overview 3-14
Putting into operation 3-17
Safety instructions 3-17
Putting the machine into operation for the first time 3-17
Running-in period 3-17
Check lists 3-17
Start-up checklist 3-18
Operation checklist 3-18
Parking checklist 3-19
Driving the machine 3-20
Preheating start switch 3-20
Throttle 3-20
Automatic engine speed setting 3-21
Before starting the engine 3-22
Starting the engine: general 3-23
Starting with the drive interlock (option) 3-24
Drive interlock (up to serial no. AH02749) 3-24
Drive interlock – internal transponder (from serial no. AJ02793) 3-25
Jump-starting the engine (supply battery) 3-26
Starting at low temperatures 3-27
When the engine has started 3-27
Special instructions for driving on public roads 3-28
Drive position 3-28
Drive levers 3-28
High speed 3-29
Moving off 3-29
Hydraulic brake 3-29
Mechanical brake 3-29
Working on slopes 3-30
Stabiliser blade operation 3-32
Parking the machine 3-33
Parking the machine on slopes 3-33
Light system 3-34
Working light 3-34
Front and rear roof lights (option) (up to serial no. AH02749) 3-35
Rotating beacon (option) 3-36
Interior light 3-36
Cab heating and ventilation 3-37
Summer/winter operation (up to serial no. AD04617) 3-38
Heating controls (from serial no. AD04618) 3-38
Air conditioning (option) 3-39
Recirculated air mode 3-39

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Wiper/wash system 3-40
Tank for washer system 3-40
Seat (standard) 3-41
Seat depth adjustment 3-42
Horizontal adjustment 3-42
Weight adjustment 3-42
Adjusting the head rest 3-42
Backrest adjustment 3-43
Height adjustment 3-43
Seat (air suspension option) 3-44
Seat depth adjustment 3-45
Horizontal adjustment 3-45
Weight adjustment 3-45
Height adjustment 3-45
Adjusting the head rest 3-46
Backrest adjustment 3-46
Horizontal suspension 3-46
Seat belt 3-47
Retracting lap belt (option) 3-48
Mirrors (option) 3-49
Safety instructions 3-49
Adjusting the mirrors 3-50
Emergency exit 3-51
Emergency exit on machines equipped with protective Front Guard structures (option) 3-51
Front window (up to serial no. AD06526) 3-52
Front window (from serial no. AD06527) 3-53
Opening the front window 3-53
Closing the front window 3-54
Opening the lower front window 3-54
Closing the lower front window 3-55
Opening the whole front window 3-55
Closing the whole front window 3-56
Opening the front window to a gap 3-57
Opening the side window 3-57
Engine cover 3-57
Battery master switch 3-58
Tilting the cab 3-59
Door 3-62
Door 75Z3 3-62
Door 8003 3-62
Exit through the door (up to serial no. AH02749) 3-64
Exit through the door (from serial no. AJ02793) 3-65
Armrest adjustment (75Z3/8003 up to serial no. AH02749) 3-66
Armrest adjustment (75Z3/8003 from serial no. AJ02793) 3-66
Towing the machine 3-67
Crane handling the machine 3-68
Loading and transporting the machine 3-70
Safety instructions 3-70
Tying down the machine 3-71
Driving signal (option) 3-71
Working with the machine 3-72
General safety instructions 3-72
Control levers/ISO controls: overview 3-73
Left-hand control lever 3-73
Hammer pedal lock (up to serial no. AH02749) 3-73
Boom/triple articulation boom operation (up to serial no. AH02749) 3-74

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Hammer pedal lock (from serial no. AJ02793) 3-74
Boom/triple articulation boom operation (from serial no. AJ02793) 3-75
Right-hand control lever 3-75
Lowering the boom with the engine stopped 3-76
Rotating the upper carriage 3-76
Swivel unit brake 3-77
Changeover valve for SAE/ISO controls (option) 3-78
Left-hand control lever 3-78
Right-hand control lever 3-78
Directional valve position 3-78
Directional valve 3-79
Control lever with proportional controls (option): overview 3-80
Function 3-80
Left-hand control lever 3-81
Changeover between auxiliary hydraulics and boom swivel 3-81
Switching the status indicator on/off for auxiliary hydraulics/boom swivel 3-81
Operating the boom/auxiliary hydraulics 3-82
Hammer operation 3-82
Adjusting control response 3-82
Characteristic curves – status indicator 3-83
Right-hand control lever 3-83
Releasing pressure 3-83
Control lever if equipped with 3rd control circuit (option): overview 3-84
Left-hand control lever 3-84
Boom swivel (up to serial no. AH02749) 3-84
Boom swivel (from serial no. AJ02793) 3-85
Right-hand control lever 3-85
Releasing pressure 3-85
Vario (8003 option) 3-86
Vario operation 3-86
Driving across slopes with the Vario feature 3-86
Vario warning device 3-87
Warning ranges 3-87
Working with the Vario feature 3-88
Improved reach with the Vario feature 3-88
Releasing the pressure on the work hydraulics 3-89
Releasing pressure 3-89
Pressure release with proportional controls (option) 3-89
Re-equipping attachments 3-90
Specific safety instructions 3-90
Removing a bucket 3-90
Mounting a bucket 3-91
Quickhitch (option) 3-91
Hydraulic quickhitch – Easy Lock (option) 3-92
Picking up an attachment 3-93
Setting down an attachment 3-94
Shovel bucket operation 3-95
Powertilt (option) 3-95
Re-equipping 3-96
Operation 3-96
Right-hand control lever (Powertilt) 3-96
Connections for auxiliary hydraulics 3-97
Quickhitch couplings 3-97
Safe load indicator (option) 3-98
Safety feature “Hose burst valve” (option) 3-99
Applications with lifting gear 3-99
Lifting gear applications 3-100

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Fastening loads ... 3-100
Work area assessment and preparation ... 3-100
Examining the site ... 3-100
Preparing the ground ... 3-100
Working with the machine ... 3-101
Working with the standard bucket ... 3-101
Inadmissible work procedures ... 3-101
Work position of machine ... 3-102
Bucket position when digging ... 3-102
Excavating trenches ... 3-103
Loading ... 3-103
Grading ... 3-104
Excavating trenches laterally ... 3-104
Working alongside trenches ... 3-105
Stabiliser blade at rear ... 3-105
Further practical hints for digging ... 3-106
Loading vehicles ... 3-106
Freeing the machine ... 3-106
Grading ... 3-106
Grading ... 3-106
Increased volume of auxiliary hydraulics 8003 (from serial no. AJ02782) ... 3-107

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting the engine ... 4-1
Indicator lights ... 4-3
Seals, hoses ... 4-3
Undercarriage ... 4-4
Engine error codes: ... 4-5
Malfunctions of the Powertilt unit ... 4-9
Troubleshooting the central lubrication system (option) ... 4-10
Proportional controls (option) diagnosis display ... 4-11

Maintenance

Introduction ... 5-1
Safety-relevant parts ... 5-1
Fuel system ... 5-2
Refuelling ... 5-3
Fuel-filling pump (option) (75Z3 up to serial no. AD07209; 8003 up to serial no. AD07187) ... 5-3
Fuel-filling pump (option) (75Z3 from serial no. AH00646; 8003 from serial no. AH00611) ... 5-4
Stationary fuel pumps ... 5-4
Diesel fuel specification ... 5-5
Bleeding the fuel system ... 5-5
Fuel prefilter with water separator ... 5-6
Engine lubrication system ... 5-7
Checking the engine oil level ... 5-7
Filling up engine oil ... 5-8
Engine and hydraulics cooling system ... 5-9
Specific safety instructions ... 5-9
Checking/filling up coolant ... 5-10
Air filter ... 5-12
Replacing the air filter ... 5-13
Air intake ... 5-14
Change cab air filter ... 5-14
Replacing the filter element of the air conditioning system (option) ... 5-15
Diesel particulate filter (option) ... 5-16
Main components of diesel particulate filter system ... 5-16

https://truckmanualshub.com/

How the diesel particulate filter works 5-17
Machine operation with diesel particulate filter 5-17
Display 5-19
Temperature scale 5-19
Exhaust gas back pressure scale 5-19
Alarm messages 5-20
Maintenance 5-23
Oils and fuels 5-24
Troubleshooting 5-24
Warranty 5-24
V-belt 5-25
Checking V-belt tension 5-25
Retightening the V-belt 5-26
Checking the V-belt of the air conditioning system (option) 5-27
Tightening the V-belt of the air conditioning system (option) 5-27
Hydraulic system 5-28
Specific safety instructions 5-28
Checking the hydraulic oil level 5-29
Filling up hydraulic oil 5-30
Important information for the use of biodegradable oil 5-31
Checking hydraulic pressure lines 5-32
Tracks 5-33
Checking the track tension of the rubber tracks 5-33
Checking the track tension of the steel tracks (option) and hybrid tracks (option) .. 5-34
Adjusting track tension 5-34
Travelling drive 5-36
Checking the oil level and filling up oil 5-36
Draining oil 5-36
Maintenance of attachments 5-37
Electrical system 5-37
Service and maintenance work at regular intervals 5-37
Instructions concerning specific components 5-37
Alternator 5-37
Battery 5-38
General maintenance work 5-40
Cleaning 5-40
General instructions for all areas of the machine 5-40
Inside the cab 5-40
Cleaning the seat belt 5-41
Exterior of the machine 5-41
Engine compartment 5-41
Screw connections and attachments 5-41
Pivots and hinges 5-41
Overview of lubrication points 5-42
Parking the machine 5-43
Lubrication points on the boom, bucket and stick rams 5-43
Lubrication points on the boom and stick 5-44
Joint rod lubrication point 5-45
Lubrication points on the stabiliser blade and stabiliser blade ram 75Z3 5-45
Lubrication points of stabiliser blade ram 8003 5-46
Lubrication points on the slewing ram and swivelling console 5-46
Lubrication points of ball bearing race of live ring 5-47
Lubrication points of live ring teeth 5-48
Powertilt lubrication points (option) 5-49
Lubrication points of hydraulic quickhitch (option) 5-49
Lubrication points of control lever base (from serial no. AJ02793) 5-50

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Central lubrication system (option) 5-51
Function 5-51
Status LEDs 5-51
Adjusting cycle time and lubrication time 5-52
Repair in case of clogging 5-52
Preparatory work before taking the machine out of service 5-53
Maintenance if the machine is out of service for a longer period of time 5-53
Putting into operation again 5-53
Fluids and lubricants 5-54
Oil grades for the diesel engine, depending on temperature 5-55
Additional oil change and filter replacement (hydraulic system) 5-55
Oil grades for the hydraulic system, depending on temperature 5-56
Maintenance plan (overview) 5-57
Maintenance label 5-62
Explanation of symbols on the maintenance label 5-62

Specifications

Chassis 6-1
Engine 6-1
Hydraulic system 6-2
Work hydraulics 6-2
Undercarriage and swivel unit 6-2
Stabiliser blade 6-3
Electrical system 6-3
Fuse box on instrument panel (75Z3/8003 up to serial no. AD07209/AD07187) 6-3
Main fuse box with relays (75Z3/8003 up to serial no. AD07209/AD07187) 6-3
Fuse box on instrument panel (75Z3/8003 serial nos. AH00646/AH00611 to AH02749/AH02747) 6-4
Main fuse box with relays (75Z3/8003 from serial no. AH00646/AH00611) 6-4
Fuse box on instrument panel (75Z3/8003 from serial no. AJ02793 /AH02798) 6-5
ECU control unit (75Z3/8003 from serial no. AH00646/AH00611) 6-5
Noise levels 6-6
Vibration 6-6
Coolant compound table 6-6
Powertilt 6-7
Weight indications 6-7
Dimensions model 75Z3 6-8
Dimensions model 8003 Vario (option) 6-10
Dimensions model 8003 triple articulation boom (option) 6-12
Lift capacity table 75Z3 6-14
Lift capacity table 75Z3 counterweight (option) 6-15
Lift capacity table 75Z3 long stick (option) 6-16
Lift capacity table 75Z3 long stick, counterweight (option) 6-17
Lift capacity table 8003 6-18
Lift capacity table 8003 counterweight (option) 6-19
Lift capacity table 8003 long stick (option) 6-20
Lift capacity table 8003 long stick, counterweight (option) 6-21
Lift capacity table 8003 triple articulation boom (option) 6-22
Lift capacity table 8003 triple articulation boom, counterweight (option) 6-23
Lift capacity table 8003 long stick, triple articulation boom (option) 6-24
Lift capacity table 8003 long stick, triple articulation boom, counterweight (option) 6-25
Lift capacity table 8003 Vario (option) 6-26

https://truckmanualshub.com/

A

Abbreviations 1-1
Air conditioning (option) 3-39
Air filter 5-12
Air intake 5-14
Applications with lifting gear 2-9

B

Battery master switch 3-58
Biodegradable oil
  Notices regarding use of biodegradable oil 5-31

C

Cab air filter 5-14, 5-15
Central lubrication system (option) 5-51
Check lists 3-17

D

Declarations of conformity 1-7
Diesel particulate filter (option) 5-16
Driving on public roads 3-28
Driving signal (option) 3-71
Driving the machine 3-20

E

Emergency exit 3-51
  Front Guard (option) 3-51

F

Fire extinguisher 1-27
Fluids and lubricants 5-54

H

Heating 3-37
Hydraulic quickhitch system (option) 3-92

I

Important information
  On the Operator's Manual 1-1
Increased volume of auxiliary hydraulics 8003 3-107
Indicator lights and warning lights 3-14
Interior light 3-36

L

Legal regulations 1-6
Light system 3-34
Lowering the boom with the engine stopped 3-76, 3-83

M

Machine
  Brief description 1-3
  Crane-handling the machine 3-68
  Fields of application, attachments 1-4
  Loading and transporting 3-70
  Overview 1-2
  Tying down the machine 3-71
Maintenance
  Air filter 5-13, 5-14
  Biodegradable oil 5-31
  Bleeding the fuel system 5-5
  Cab air filter 5-14
  Central lubrication system (option) 5-51
  Checking the coolant level 5-10
  Checking the engine oil level 5-7
  Checking the hydraulic oil level 5-29
  Diesel particulate filter (option) 5-16
  Electrical system 5-37
  Engine and hydraulics cooling system 5-9
  Engine lubrication system 5-7
  Filling up coolant 5-11
  Filling up engine oil 5-8
  Filling up hydraulic oil 5-30
  Filter element of air conditioning system (option) 5-15
  Fluids and lubricants 5-54
  Fuel system 5-2
  General maintenance work 5-40
  Hydraulic pressure lines 5-32
  Hydraulic system 5-28
  Overview of lubrication points 5-42
  Screw connections 5-41
  Service and maintenance work at regular intervals 5-37
  Tracks 5-33
  Travelling drive 5-36
  V-belt 5-25
Maintenance label 5-62
Maintenance plan 5-57

N

Noise levels 1-13, 1-18

O

Operation 3-1
  3rd control circuit (option) 3-84
  Adjusting the mirrors 3-50
  Adjusting the seat 3-41
  Before starting the engine 3-22
  Cab overview 3-2
  Connections for auxiliary hydraulics 3-97
  Control element overview 3-4
  Control levers overview 3-73
  Hammer pedal lock 3-73, 3-74
  Moving off 3-28
  Preheating start switch 3-20
  Seat belt 3-47
  Starting the engine 3-23
  Stop and park the machine 3-33
  Triple articulation boom (option for 8003) 3-75
  Working on slopes 3-30

https://truckmanualshub.com/

P

Powertilt (option) 3-95
Protective structures 2-7
Putting into operation 3-2
  Check lists 3-17
  Putting the machine into operation for the first time 3-17
  Safety instructions 3-17

R

Refuelling 5-3
  Fuel-filling pump 5-3
Regulations 1-6
Rotating beacon 3-36
Running-in period 3-17

S

Safety feature “Hose burst valve” (option) 3-99
Safety instructions 2-1
  Applications with lifting gear 2-9
  Attachments 2-10
  Designated use and exemption from liability 2-2
  General conduct 2-3
  Hammer operation 2-15
  Identification 2-1
  Maintenance 2-11
  Operation 2-5
  Special hazards 2-13
  Transport 2-17
  Working near electric lines 2-13
Safety-relevant parts 5-1
Seat
  Adjusting the head rest 3-42
  Backrest adjustment 3-43
  Height adjustment 3-43
  Horizontal adjustment 3-42
  Seat depth adjustment 3-42
  Weight adjustment 3-42
Seat (air suspension option) 3-44
Seat (standard) 3-41
Seat belt
  Retracting lap belt 75Z3 (option) 3-48
  Seat belt (standard) 3-47
Signs and symbols 1-13
Specifications 6-1
  Chassis 6-1
  Coolant compound table 6-6
  Dimensions 6-8
  Electrical system 6-3
  Engine 6-1
  Hydraulic system 6-2
  Lift capacity tables 6-14
  Noise levels 6-6
  Powertilt 6-7
  Stabiliser blade 6-3
  Undercarriage and swivel unit 6-2
  Vibration 6-6
  Weight indications 6-7
  Work hydraulics 6-2, 6-3
Starting aid 3-26

T

Taking the machine out of service 5-53
Tilting the cab 3-59
Towing the machine 3-67
Troubleshooting
  Central lubrication system 4-10
  Engine 4-1
  Hydraulics 4-1
  Powertilt unit 4-9
Type labels and component numbers 1-10

V

Ventilation 3-37
  Ventilation, fresh air 3-37

W

Warranty 2-1
Wiper/wash system 3-40
Working
  Freeing the machine 3-106
  Practical hints 3-106
  Working with the machine 3-72

https://truckmanualshub.com/

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1 Introduction

1.1 Important information on the Operator's Manual

The Operator's Manual is stored in the document box behind the seat.

This Operator's Manual contains important information on how to work safely, correctly and economically with the machine. Therefore, it aims not only at new staff, but it also serves as a reference for experienced staff. It helps to avoid dangerous situations and reduce repair costs and downtimes. Furthermore, the reliability and the service life of the machine will be increased by following the instructions in the Operator's Manual. This is why **the Operator's Manual must always be kept at hand in the machine.**

Your own safety, as well as the safety of others, depends to a great extent on how the machine is moved and operated. Carefully read the Operator's Manual before putting the machine into operation. This Operator's Manual will help to familiarise yourself more easily with the machine, thereby enabling you to use it more safely and efficiently.

Follow chapter "**Safety Instructions**" in particular. As a rule, keep the following in mind:

Careful and prudent working is the best way to avoid accidents.

Operational safety and readiness of the machine do not only depend on your skill, but also on maintenance and servicing of the machine. This is why regular maintenance and service work is absolutely necessary.

Extensive maintenance and repair work must always be carried out by a Wacker Neuson workshop. Use only original spare parts for repairs. This ensures operational safety and readiness of your machine, and maintains its value.

- Special equipment and superstructures are not described in this Operator's Manual.
- Wacker Neuson reserves the right to improve the technical standard of our machines without adapting the Operator's Manual.
- Modifying Wacker Neuson products and fitting them with additional equipment and attachments not included in our delivery program requires Wacker Neuson's written authorisation, otherwise warranty and product liability for possible damage caused by these modifications shall not be applicable.
- Subject to modifications and printing errors.

Your Wacker Neuson dealer will be pleased to answer any further questions regarding the machine or the Operator's Manual.

Abbreviations/symbols

- This symbol stands for a list.
  - Subdivision within lists or an activity. Follow the steps in the recommended order.

☞ *This symbol requires you to carry out the activity described.*

➥ Description of the effects or results of an activity.

 This symbol shows the driving direction – for better orientation in figures and graphics.

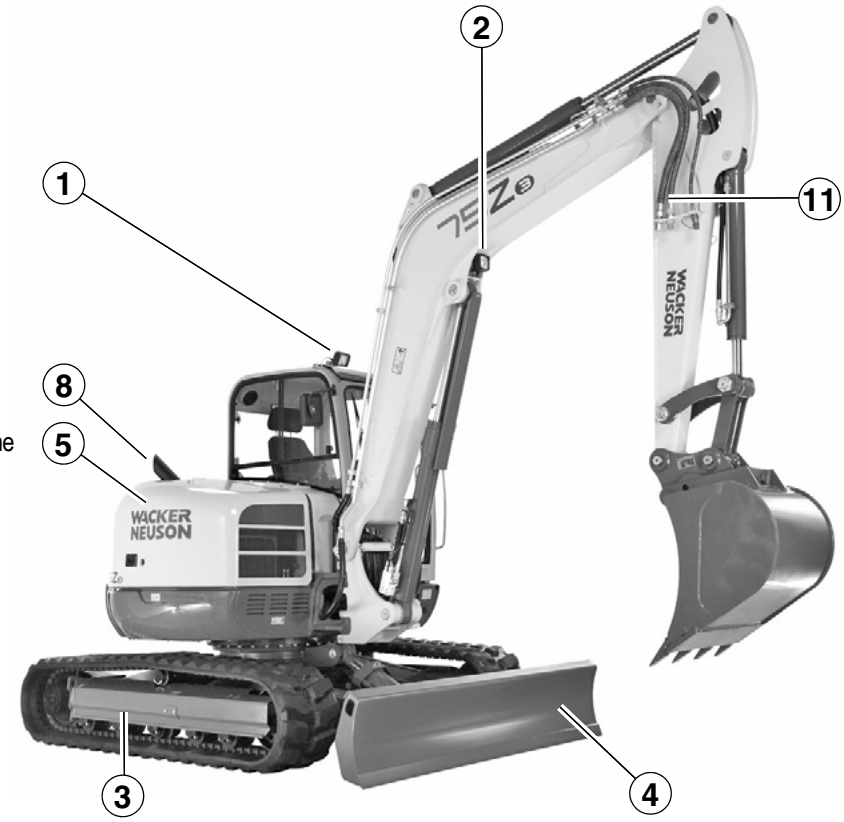
Notice!

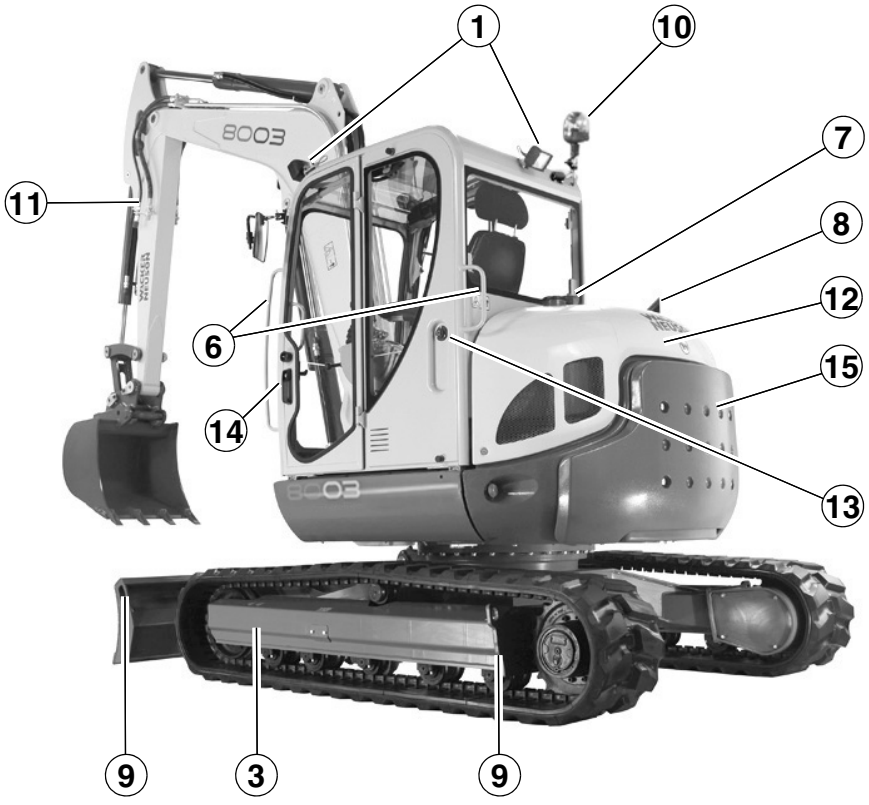
Unless otherwise specified, all indications made in this Operator's Manual refer to models 75Z3 / 8003 and 75Z3 2 / 8003 2.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1.2 Machine overview

1 Roof lights (option)
2 Working light on boom
3 Undercarriage
4 Stabiliser blade
5 Engine cover
6 Handles
7 Tank filler inlet
8 Exhaust pipe
9 Eye hook for loading/tying down the machine
10 Rotating beacon (option)
11 Auxiliary hydraulics
12 Tank cover
13 Door arrester
14 Door handle and lock
15 Counterweight (option)





https://truckmanualshub.com/

1.3 Brief description

The machine model 75Z3 / 8003 and 75Z3 2 / 8003 2 is a self-propelled work machine.

Get informed on and follow the legal regulations of your country.

This machine is a versatile and powerful helper for moving earth, gravel and debris on construction sites and elsewhere. A wide range of attachments accounts for the numerous applications of the machine, among others hammer and grab applications. When using these attachments, observe the legal regulations of your country and equip the machine with all the safety equipment required. See *Chapter 1.4 "Fields of application, attachments"* for further applications.

The main components of the machine are:

- Undercarriage
  - Tracked travel gear
  - Stabiliser blade
  - Live ring
- Upper carriage
  - Cab
  - Water-cooled diesel engine
  - Hydraulic and electric components
- Boom

Travelling drive

The diesel engine permanently drives a twin axial variable displacement pump whose oil flow is sent to the control valve. Depending on actuation, each pump supplies a hydraulic motor or the work hydraulics with oil.

Work hydraulics

The twin axial variable displacement pump supplies the work hydraulics for the main components with oil. This pump is output-controlled and supplies the oil quantity depending on the output required. This machine is also equipped with a gear pump flanged onto the variable displacement pump. Depending on engine speed, this pump supplies oil for the swivel unit, the stabiliser blade and boom swivelling.

Shock cartridges (option)

The auxiliary hydraulics are equipped with a Schock cartridge to compensate pressure peaks in the hydraulic system.

Cooling system

The coolant temperature and level is monitored with the indicator lights on the machine's instrument panel.

Cab

The cab has been specially designed for protection in case of an accident.

- ROPS (Roll Over Protective Structure) and TOPS (Tip Over Protective Structure) tested cab.
- FOPS (Falling Object Protective Structure) – option.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1.4 Fields of application, attachments

The attachments will decide in the first place how the machine is used.

Caution!

In order to avoid damage to the machine, only the attachments listed below have been certified for installation on the machine.

☞ *Please contact a Wacker Neuson dealer if you wish to use other attachments.*

Using attachments of other manufacturers, or tools which have been released for other machine types, can reduce the machine's output and stability considerably, and can also cause damage to the machine and injuries to the operator or the staff.

Always compare the weight of the attachment and its maximum payload with the indications in the lift capacity table. Never exceed the maximum payload stated in the lift capacity table.

Notice!

Please refer to the Operator's and maintenance manual of the attachment manufacturer for using and carrying out maintenance on attachments such as hammers, grabs etc.

Use: attachment

Description of attachment	Weight	Capacity	Remarks
Mechanical quickhitch	73 kg (161 lbs.)		Operation of Wacker Neuson quickhitch systems requires a quickhitch mount.
Easy Lock quickhitch	85 kg (187 lbs.)		
Hammer mount NE36	65 kg (143 lbs.)		
Universal mount NE36/NE42	61 kg (134 lbs.)		
Hydraulic hammer NE36	350 kg (772 lbs.)		
Hydraulic hammer NE42	438 kg (966 lbs.)		
Powertilt with Easy Lock	231 kg (509 lbs.)		
Backhoe bucket B = 300 mm (12 in)	137 kg (302 lbs.)	0.096 m^3 (3.4 cu. ft.)	
	100 kg (287 lbs.)		Mechanical quickhitch
Backhoe bucket B = 350 mm (13.8 in)	141 kg (298 lbs.)	0.127 m^3 (4.5 cu. ft.)	Hydraulic quickhitch (Easy Lock)
Backhoe bucket B = 400 mm (15.7 in)	144 kg (317 lbs.)	0.148 m^3 (5.2 cu. ft.)	Hydraulic quickhitch (Easy Lock)
Backhoe bucket B = 450 mm (17.7 in)	160 kg (353 lbs.)	0.154 m^3 (5.4 cu. ft.)	
	156 kg (344 lbs.)		Mechanical quickhitch
Backhoe bucket B = 500 mm (19.7 in)	161 kg (355 lbs.)	0.183 m^3 (6.5 cu. ft.)	Hydraulic quickhitch (Easy Lock)

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Description of attachment	Weight	Capacity	Remarks
Backhoe bucket B = 600 mm (23.6 in)	189 kg (417 lbs.)	0.221 m^3 (7.8 cu. ft.)	
	157 kg (346 lbs.)		Mechanical quickhitch
	186 kg (410 lbs.)	0.220 m^3 (7.8 cu. ft.)	Hydraulic quickhitch (Easy Lock)
Backhoe bucket B = 700 mm (27.6 in)	204 kg (450 lbs.)	0.256 m^3 (9 cu. ft.)	Hydraulic quickhitch (Easy Lock)
Backhoe bucket B = 750 mm (29.5 in)	216 kg (476 lbs.)	0.279 m^3 (9.9 cu. ft.)	
	182 kg (401 lbs.)		Mechanical quickhitch
Backhoe bucket B = 800 mm (31.5 in)	228 kg (503 lbs.)	0.292 m^3 (10.3 cu. ft.)	Hydraulic quickhitch (Easy Lock)
Backhoe bucket B = 900 mm (35.4 in)	238 kg (525 lbs.)	0.339 m^3 (12 cu. ft.)	
	206 kg (454 lbs.)		Mechanical quickhitch
	246 kg (542 lbs.)	0.328 m^3 (11.6 cu. ft.)	Hydraulic quickhitch (Easy Lock)
Backhoe bucket B = 1000 mm (39.36 in)	264 kg (582 lbs.)	0.365 m^3 (12.9 cu. ft.)	Hydraulic quickhitch (Easy Lock)
Ditch cleaning bucket B = 1200 mm (47.2 in)	195 kg (430 lbs.)	0.241 m^3 (8.5 cu. ft.)	
	300 kg (661 lbs.)		Mechanical quickhitch
Ditch cleaning bucket B = 1500 mm (59 in)	225 kg (496 lbs.)	0.314 m^3 (11.1 cu. ft.)	
	295 kg (650 lbs.)		Mechanical quickhitch
	238 kg (525 lbs.)	0.342 m^3 (12.1 cu. ft.)	Hydraulic quickhitch (Easy Lock)
Offset bucket B = 1500 mm (59 in)	325 kg (716 lbs.)	0.280 m^3 (9.9 cu. ft.)	
	280 kg (617 lbs.)		Mechanical quickhitch
	358 kg (789 lbs.)	0.342 m^3 (12.1 cu. ft.)	Hydraulic quickhitch (Easy Lock)

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1.5 Regulations

Requirements to be met by the user

Earth moving machines may be driven and serviced only by persons who meet the following requirements:

- 18 years or older
- Physically and mentally suited for this work
- Persons have been instructed in driving and servicing the earth moving machine and have proven their qualifications to the contractor
- Persons are expected to carry out work reliably.
- Persons have been appointed by the contractor for driving and servicing the earth moving machine.
- Get informed on and follow the legal regulations of your country.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1.6 EC declaration of conformity for all machines delivered before 29 December 2009

WACKER NEUSON

EC Declaration of Conformity

according to EC Directive 98/37/EC, 2000/14/EC Appendix 6

Wacker Neuson Linz GmbH
Haidfeldstr. 37
A-4060 Linz-Leonding

declare, under their own responsibility, that the product

Product name	Track excavator 75Z$_3$/8003
Models	75Z$_3$/8003
Versions	75Z$_3$/8003
Serial no.	- - - - - - - - - - -

to which this declaration refers, corresponds to the pertinent fundamental requirements regarding safety and health of

EC Directive 98/37/EC,
and the requirements of further pertinent EC Directives and standards
.

ISO 3471 and EN 13510	Tested		Administrative unit reported according to Appendix 6
2000/14/EC	information Noise level	dBA	TÜV SÜD Industrie Service GmbH EC no. 0036 Conformity assessment procedure appendix 6
	Measured value	98.1	
	Guaranteed value	98	

The following standards and/or technical specifications have been used for the proper application of the requirements regarding safety and health stated in the EC Directives:
EN 474-1, EN 474-3, EN 12100-1, EN 12100-2, ISO 3471, EN 13510;

Place of storage of technical documentation:
Wacker Neuson Linz GmbH
Department: R & D
Haidfeldstr. 37
A-4060 Linz-Leonding

Linz-Leonding, (date) _ _ . _ _ . _ _ _ _

Josef Erlinger/Managing Director
Wacker Neuson Linz GmbH

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1.7 EC declaration of conformity for all machines delivered after 29 December 2009

EC Declaration of Conformity

According to Machine Directive 2006/42/EC, appendix II A

Manufacturer

Wacker Neuson Linz GmbH
Haidfeldstr. 37
A-4060 Linz-Leonding

Product

Machine designation:	Hydraulic excavator
Machine model:	75Z3/8003
Serial no.:	_____
Output (kW):	43.4 kW
Measured sound power level:	98.1 dB (A)
Guaranteed sound power level:	98 dB (A)

Conformity assessment procedure

Notified body according to Directive 2006/42/EC, appendix XI:
Fachausschüsse Bau und Tiefbau
Prüf- und Zertifizierungsstelle im BG-PRÜFZERT
Landsberger Str. 309
D-80687 Munich
Distinguishing EU number 0515

Notified body according to Directive 2000/14/EC, appendix VI:
TÜV SÜD Industrie Service GmbH
Westendstr. 199
D-80686 Munich

Directives and standards

We hereby declare that this product corresponds to the relevant regulations and requirements of the following Directives and standards:
2006/42/EC (old 98/37 EC), 2004/108/EC (old 89/336/EEC), 2002/44/EC, 2005/88/EC, 2000/14/EC;
DIN EN ISO 12100-1 and 2, DIN EN 474-1 and 5, DIN EN 14121,
DIN EN 3471, DIN EN 13510, EN ISO 3744, EN ISO 3746, DIN EN ISO 3449

Leonding, _____	_____	_____
Place, date	Thomas Köck,	Josef Erlinger,
	Responsible for documentation	Managing director

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1.8 Declaration of conformity for machines without CE mark on the type label

Declaration of conformity

Manufacturer

Wacker Neuson Linz GmbH
Haidfeldstr. 37
A-4060 Linz-Leonding

Product

Machine designation: Hydraulic excavator	
Machine model:	75Z3/8003
Serial no.:	_____
Output (kW):	43.4 kW
Measured sound power level:	98.1 dB (A)
Guaranteed sound power level:	98 dB (A)

Directives and standards

We hereby declare that this product corresponds to the relevant regulations and requirements of the following Directives and standards:

2006/42/EC (old 98/37 EC), except 1.7.3., 2004/108/EC (old 89/336/EEC), 2002/44/EC, 2005/88/EC, 2000/14/EC;
DIN EN ISO 12100-1 and 2, DIN EN 474-1 (except 7.3.) and 5, DIN EN 14121,
DIN EN 3471, DIN EN 13510, EN ISO 3744, EN ISO 3746, DIN EN ISO 3449

Leonding, _____	_____	_____
Place, date	Thomas Köck,	Josef Erlinger,
	Responsible for documentation	Managing director

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1.9 Type labels and component numbers



Fig. 1: Type label: location

Serial number

The serial number is stamped on the machine chassis. It is also located on the type label. The type label is located at the front left on the upper carriage.

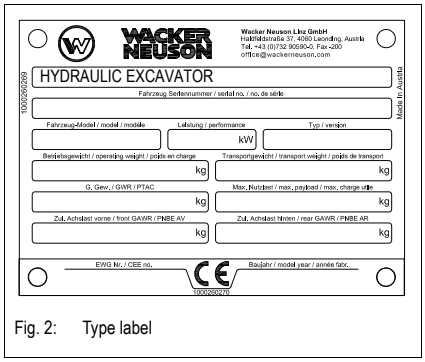


Fig. 2: Type label

Type label information

Field below Wacker Neuson logo:	HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR
Fahrzeug Seriennummer/serial no./no. de série:	Serial number of machine
Fahrzeug Modell/model/modèle:	Machine designation
Leistung/performance:	Engine output
Typ/version:	Machine type
Betriebsgewicht/operating weight/poids en charge:	Operating weight
Transportgewicht/transport weight/poids en transport:	Transport weight
G. Gew./GWR/PTAC:	Gross weight rating (admissible)
Max. Nutzlast/max. payload/max. charge utile:	Maximum payload
Zul. Achslast vorne/front GAWR/PNBE AV:	Front gross axle weight rating
Zul. Achslast hinten/rear GAWR/PNBE AR:	Rear gross axle weight rating

Option

EWG Nr./CEE no.:	EEC check number
Baujahr/model year/année fabr.:	year of construction

Other information – *see chapter 6 Specifications* on page 6-1



Fig. 3: Cab type label (up to serial no. AJ02792)

Cab number

The type label is located on the B-pillar on the left-hand side of the door.

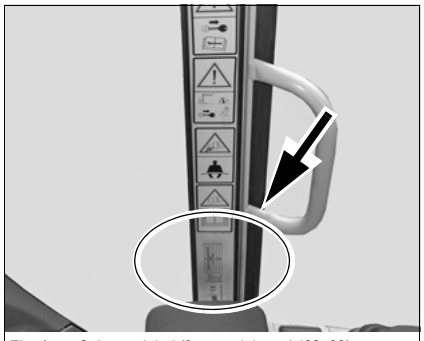
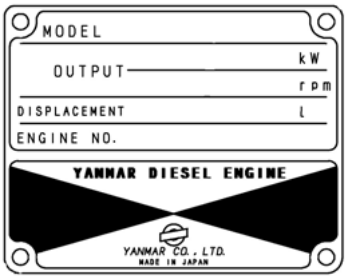


Fig. 4: Cab type label (from serial no. AJ02793)

https://truckmanualshub.com/



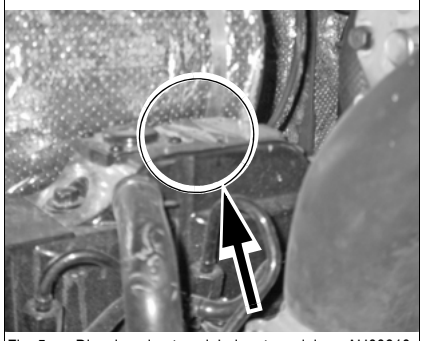
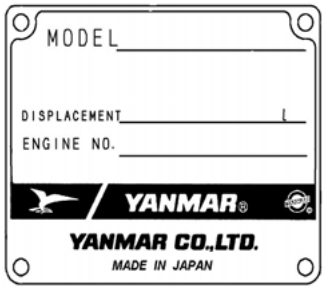


Fig. 5: Diesel engine type label up to serial no. AH00610



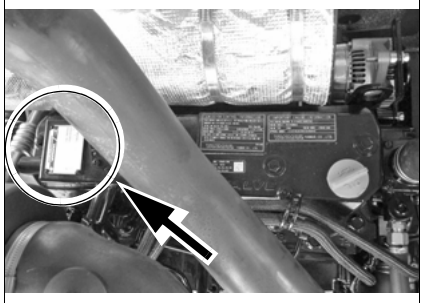


Fig. 5: Diesel engine type label from serial no. AH00611

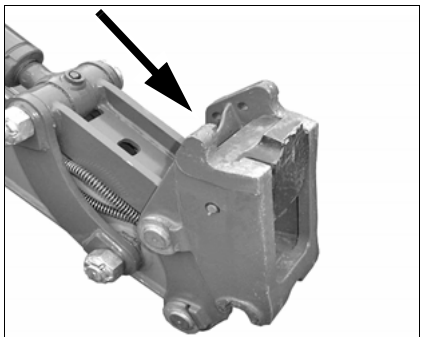


Fig. 6: Hydraulic quickhitch type label

Engine number

The type label (arrow) is located on the valve cover (engine).

Hydraulic quickhitch

https://truckmanualshub.com/

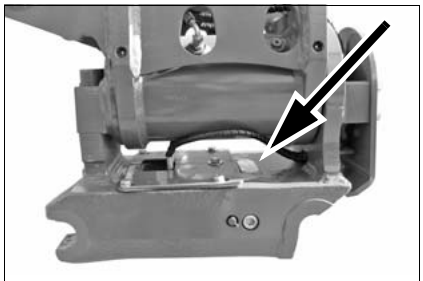


Fig. 7: Powertilt type label

Powertilt with hydraulic quickhitch

The serial number of the Powertilt is stamped in the housing near the hydraulic connections.
The serial number of the hydraulic quickhitch is located on the type label.
The type label is located at the rear on the hydraulic quickhitch fork.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1.10 Signs and symbols (up to serial no. AH01658)

The following states signs and symbols that do not contain explanatory text and that are not explained in the following chapters.

...on the outside of the machine



Fig. 8: Eye hook label

Meaning

Machine is raised by the eye hooks

– *see chapter 3.43 Loading and transporting the machine* on page 3-70

Location

On either side of the stabiliser blade, and on either side of the boom



Fig. 9: Label for points used for tying down the machine

Meaning

Points for tying down the machine.

The mounting points are used for tying down the machine during loading and transport – *see chapter 3.44 Tying down the machine* on page 3-71

Location

On either side of the stabiliser blade, and on either side of the undercarriage

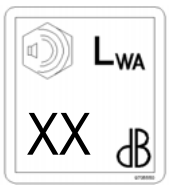


Fig. 10: Noise level label

Meaning

Noise levels produced by the machine.

L_{WA} = sound power level

Other information – *see chapter 6.10 Vibration* on page 6-6

Location

Next to the cab door.



Fig. 11: Direction indicator

Meaning

This label shows the forwards driving direction.

Location

On either side of the undercarriage.



Fig. 12: Danger label

Meaning

General indication of danger

This label warns persons standing or working near the machine of an existing danger within the area of increased danger around the machine.

Location

On either side of the boom.



Fig. 13: CE mark

Meaning

The CE mark means that the machine meets the requirements of the Machine Directive and that the conformity procedure has been carried out. The machine meets all the health and safety requirements of the Machine Directive.

Location

On the type label.

https://truckmanualshub.com/



Fig. 14: Prohibitory label

Meaning

Do not open engine cover before engine is at a standstill.

Do not touch any moving or turning parts.

Location

At the rear on the engine cover of the machine, in the engine compartment.



Fig. 15: Rotating V-belt

Meaning

Danger of being caught up.
Stay clear of the engine compartment with the engine running.
Carry out work in the engine compartment at engine standstill only.

Location

In the engine compartment.



Fig. 16: Hot surfaces

Meaning

Do not touch hot surfaces, wait for parts to cool down.

Location

In the engine compartment.



Fig. 17: Diesel

Meaning

Fill in diesel fuel only.

Location

On the fuel tank.



Fig. 18: Hydraulic oil

Meaning

The tank contains hydraulic oil.

– *see chapter Filling up hydraulic oil* on page 5-30

Location

On the hydraulic oil tank.

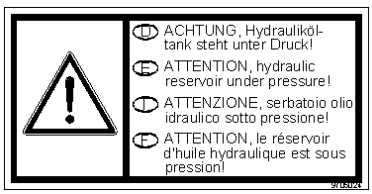


Fig. 19: Hydraulic oil tank under pressure

Meaning

Hydraulic oil tank under pressure.

– *see chapter Filling up hydraulic oil* on page 5-30

Location

On the hydraulic oil tank.



Fig. 20: Read the Operator's Manual

Meaning

Read the Operator's Manual before working on the tilt chassis or underneath the cab.

Location

On the tilt chassis.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

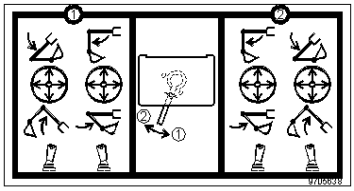


Fig. 21: Changeover valve for SAE/ISO controls

Meaning

This label shows the control mode selected on the ISO/SAE valve.

– *see chapter 3.48 Changeover valve for SAE/ISO controls (option)* on page 3-78

Location

Inside the cab.



Fig. 22: Read the Operator's Manual

Meaning

Read the Operator's Manual before working with the machine.

Location

Inside the cab on the right-hand trim.



Fig. 23: Danger of being caught up

Meaning

Caution, danger of severe crushing.
Always use the handles to open and close the front window.
Always lock the front window with both locks.

Ensure that no-one hits the window with their head as you open and close it.

Location

On the front window.



Fig. 24: Parking the machine correctly

Meaning

Press the boom and the stabiliser blade into the ground as you leave the machine, remove the ignition key and place chocks on the left and right under the tracks – *see Parking checklist* on page 3-19.

Location

Cab roof lining.

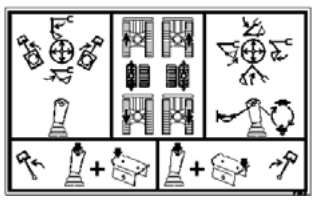


Fig. 25: Controls

Meaning

This label describes the pedal and control lever functions.

– *see Control levers/ISO controls: overview* on page 3-73

Location

Cab roof lining.

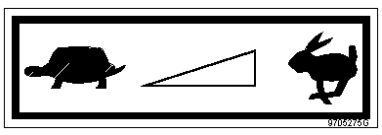


Fig. 26: Describes the throttle lever function

Meaning

Describes the throttle lever function.

– *see Throttle* on page 3-20

Location

Below the throttle lever.

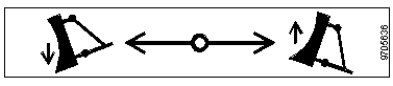


Fig. 27: Stabiliser blade lever function

Meaning

Describes the stabiliser blade lever function.

Location

Inside the cab.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

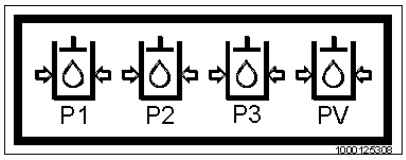


Fig. 28: Measurement ports

Meaning

States the pressures that can be measured.

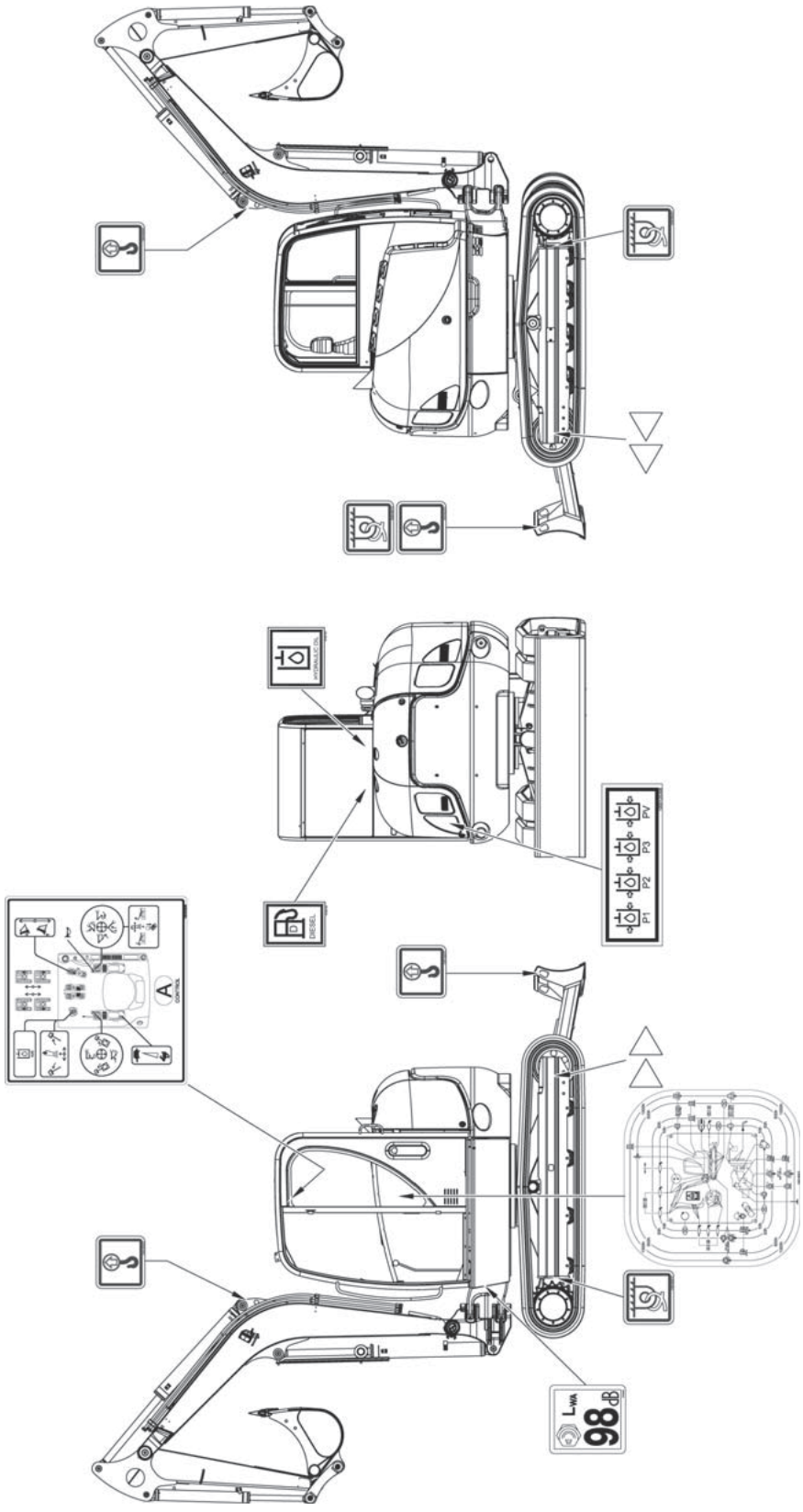
Location

In the engine compartment.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1.11 Signs and symbols (from serial no. AH01659)

Overview of adhesive labels



https://truckmanualshub.com/

The following states signs and symbols that do not contain explanatory text and that are not explained in the following chapters.



Fig. 29: Eye hooks

Meaning

Locates the lifting points for hoisting the machine with lifting devices (slings, chains, or cables).

– *see chapter 3.42 Crane handling the machine* on page 3-68

Location

On either side of the stabiliser blade, and on either side of the boom.



Fig. 30: Points for tying down the machine

Meaning

Points for tying down the machine.

– *see chapter 3.44 Tying down the machine* on page 3-71

Location

On either side of the stabiliser blade, and on either side of the undercarriage.

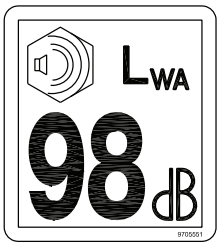


Fig. 31: Noise level indication

Meaning

Noise levels produced by the machine.

L_{WA} = sound power level

– *see chapter 6.10 Vibration* on page 6-6

Location

At the front on the chassis.

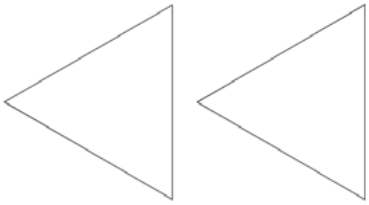


Fig. 32: Direction arrows

Meaning

This label shows the forwards driving direction.

Location

On either side of the undercarriage at the supporting rollers.



Fig. 33: Diesel

Meaning

Only refuel diesel fuel with a low content of sulphur.

– *see chapter 5.21 Fluids and lubricants* on page 5-54

Location

Near the fuel filler neck behind the rear window.



Fig. 34: Hydraulic oil

Meaning

Hydraulic oil tank. Use only specified hydraulic fluids.

– *see chapter 5.21 Fluids and lubricants* on page 5-54

Location

On the outside behind the rear window.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

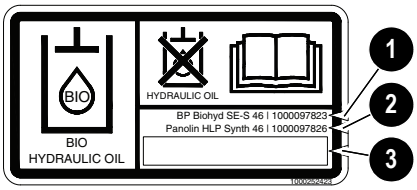


Fig. 35: Biodegradable hydraulic oil

Meaning (option)

The tank contains biodegradable hydraulic oil.

This label is notched on the side depending on the biodegradable hydraulic oil used.

1 BP Biohyd SE-S 46

2 PANOLIN HLP Synth 46

3 Other producer of biodegradable hydraulic oil

– *see chapter Important information for the use of biodegradable oil* on page 5-31

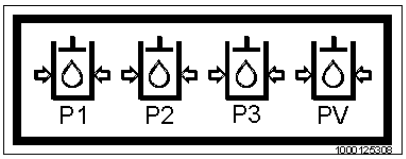


Fig. 36: Measurement ports

Meaning

States the pressures that can be measured.

Location

In the engine compartment on the left.

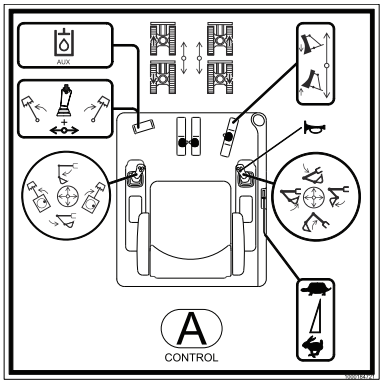


Fig. 37: ISO controls

Meaning (serial nos. AH01659 to AH02749)

Explains the functions of the joysticks (control pattern A) and of other controls. If the machine is fitted with an SAE/ISO changeover valve, check before starting the machine the control pattern that has been chosen.

This label describes the pedal and control lever functions.

– *see chapter 3.47 Control levers/ISO controls: overview* on page 3-73

Location

On the headliner.

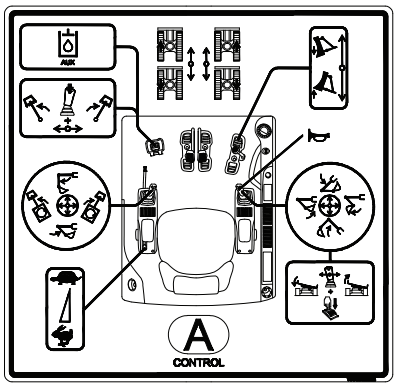


Fig. 38: ISO controls

Meaning (from serial no. AJ03264)

Explains the functions of the joysticks (control pattern A) and of other controls. If the machine is fitted with an SAE/ISO changeover valve, check before starting the machine the control pattern that has been chosen.

This label describes the pedal and control lever functions.

– *see chapter 3.47 Control levers/ISO controls: overview* on page 3-73

Location

On the headliner.

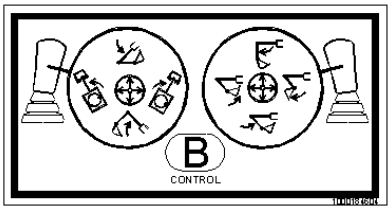


Fig. 39: SAE controls

Meaning (option)

Explains the joystick functions (control pattern B).

Check before starting the machine the control pattern that has been chosen.

Label shows the position at which the ISO or SAE controls are selected.

– *see chapter 3.48 Changeover valve for SAE/ISO controls (option)* on page 3-78

Location

On the headliner.

Controls

A = ISO controls

B = SAE controls

https://truckmanualshub.com/

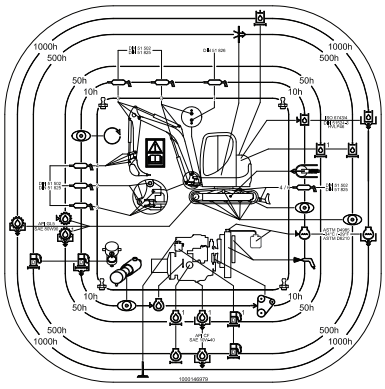


Fig. 40: Maintenance label

Meaning

Indication of maintenance intervals. For a complete list of the maintenance intervals, see chapter “Maintenance” of the Operator’s Manual.

Location

Left-hand window of cab.

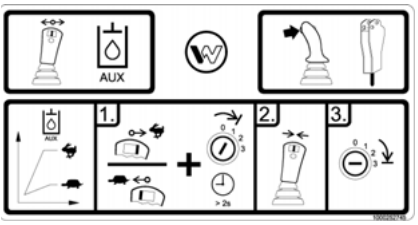


Fig. 41: Proportional controls setting

Meaning (option)

This label describes the proportional controls and the setting of the control response.

– *see chapter Adjusting control response* on page 3-82

Location

On the headliner.

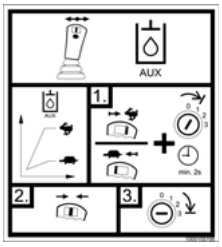


Fig. 42: 3rd control circuit setting

Meaning (option)

This label describes the proportionally controlled 3rd control circuit and the setting of the control response.

– *see chapter Adjusting control response* on page 3-82

Location

On the headliner.

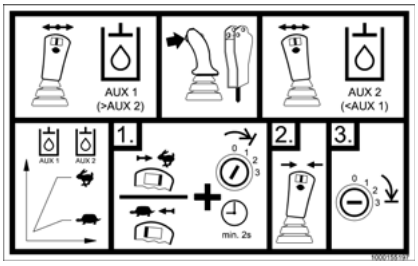


Fig. 43: Setting of 3rd control circuit and auxiliary hydraulics

Meaning (option)

This label describes the proportionally controlled 3rd control circuit and auxiliary hydraulics, and the setting of the control response.

– *see chapter Adjusting control response* on page 3-82

Location

On the headliner.

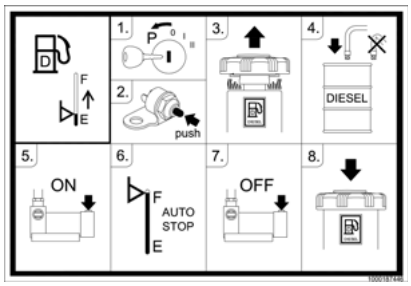


Fig. 44: Refuelling

Meaning

Refuelling explained with a fuel-filling pump.

Location

In the engine compartment on the left.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

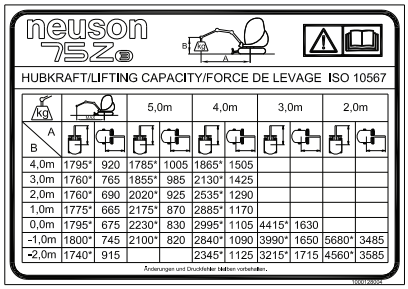


Fig. 45: Lift capacity table

Meaning

The admissible lift capacity must be observed according to the table.

– *see chapter 6.17 Lift capacity table 75Z3* on page 6-14

Location

On the headliner.

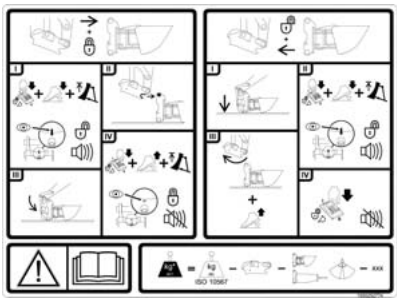


Fig. 46: Hydraulic quickhitch

Meaning (option)

This label describes the functions of the hydraulic quickhitch.

– *see chapter 3.55 Hydraulic quickhitch – Easy Lock (option)* on page 3-92

Location

On the headliner.

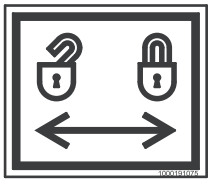


Fig. 47: Condensate trap stop cock

Meaning (option) (from serial no. AH01659)

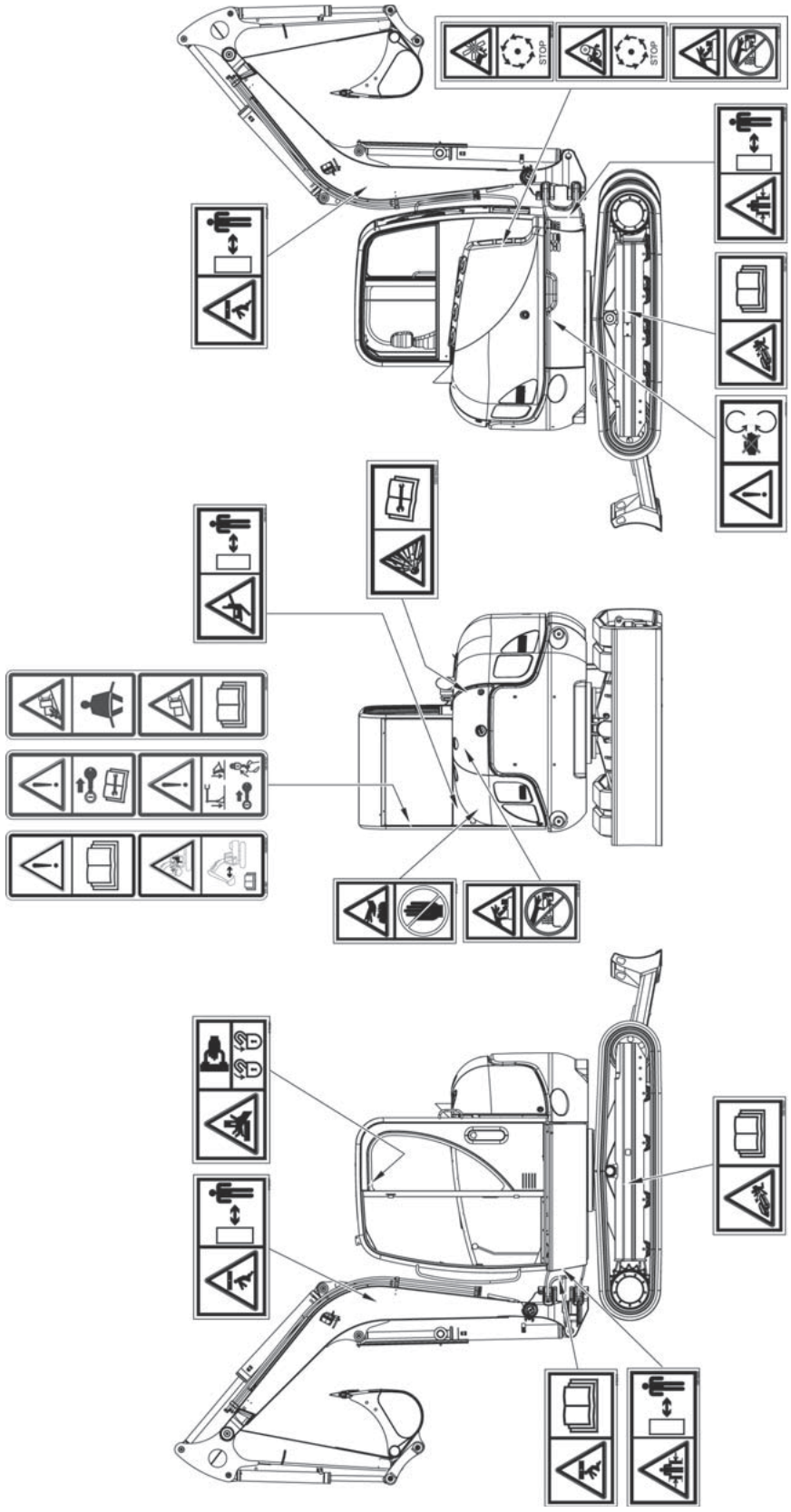
This label identifies the stop cock of the condensate trap (machine equipped with diesel particulate filter option).

Location

In the engine compartment on the left.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Safety labels



https://truckmanualshub.com/

Danger!

Always follow the instructions given on the safety labels to avoid severe injuries or death.



Fig. 48: Tighten tracks

Meaning

The label means the following:

- Danger due to grease squirting out.
- Always read the Operator's Manual before working on the tracks.

Location

On left and right-hand side of undercarriage near the lubrication system.

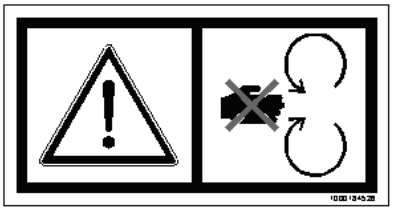


Fig. 49: Prohibitory label

Meaning

Stop the engine before opening or dismounting the safety devices (e.g. engine cover, fan guard ...)

Location

On the chassis below the engine cover handle.



Fig. 50: Rotating V-belt

Meaning

This safety label warns of the following dangers:

- Caution, rotating fan.
  Stop the engine before opening the engine cover.
  Stay clear of the engine compartment if the fan is still running.

- Caution, danger of severe crushing.
  Stay clear of the engine compartment with the engine running.
  Carry out work in the engine compartment at engine standstill only.

- Caution, the tank is hot and under pressure.
  Allow the tank to cool down.
  Carefully and slowly open the cover only after the tank has cooled down, to release the pressure.
  Wear suitable protective clothing and goggles to open the cover.

Location

In the engine compartment on the right.



Fig. 51: Hot surfaces

Meaning

Caution, do not touch hot surfaces, wait for parts to cool down.

Location

In the engine compartment on the left.

https://truckmanualshub.com/



Fig. 52: Hydraulic oil tank under pressure

Meaning

Caution, the tank is hot and under pressure.

- Allow the fluids to cool down.

  Carefully and slowly open the cover only after the tank has cooled down, to release the pressure.

  Wear suitable protective clothing and goggles to open the cover.

Location

Beside the hydraulic oil opening on the rear window.



Fig. 53: Front window

Meaning

Caution, danger of severe crushing.

1 Always use the handles to open and close the front window.

2 Always lock the front window with both locks.

3 Ensure that no-one hits the window with their head as you open and close it – *see chapter 3.31 Front window (from serial no. AD06527)* on page 3-53.

Location

On the front window.

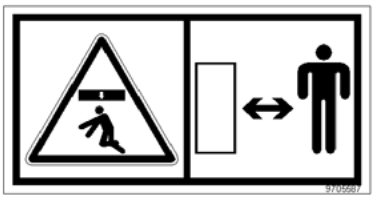


Fig. 54: Boom operation

Meaning

Caution, danger of severe or fatal injuries.

Stay clear of the machine's work range during operation.

Location

On either side of the boom.

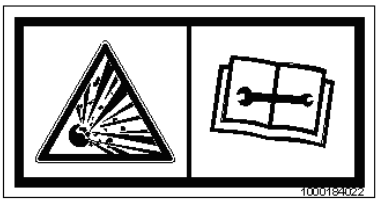


Fig. 55: Under pressure

Meaning

Accumulator is under high pressure. Always read the Operator's Manual before carrying out maintenance or repairs.

Location

Under the seat on the partition wall.

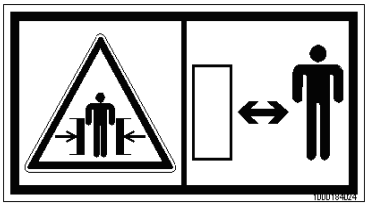


Fig. 56: Slewing range

Meaning

Indicates that persons other than the driver must keep a safe distance from the machine during operation. Stay clear of machine.

Location

On the boom swivelling console on either side of the chassis.

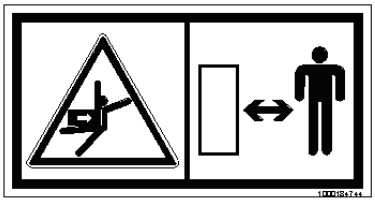


Fig. 57: Slewing range

Meaning

Caution, danger of severe crushing of body.

Stay clear of the machine's work range during operation.

Location

On the rear window.

https://truckmanualshub.com/



Fig. 58: Read the Operator's Manual

Meaning (up to serial no. AJ03263)

Read the Operator's Manual before working with the machine.

Location

Inside the cab on the right-hand trim.

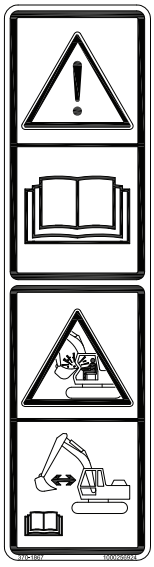


Fig. 59: Read and understand the Operator's Manual, safety distance

Meaning (from serial no. AJ03264)

Caution, danger of severe injury or damage to the machine.

- When working with the boom, keep a safe distance from the machine and the cab.
- Read the Operator's Manual and follow the instructions.

Location

On the left-hand side on the B pillar in the cab.

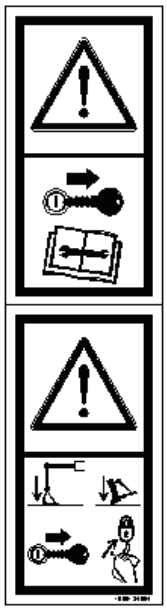


Fig. 60: Read the manual before carrying out maintenance or repairs

Meaning

Caution, danger of putting the machine into operation unintentionally.

Danger of severe or fatal injuries.

- Stop the engine before carrying out maintenance and repair work, and remove the ignition key. The key must be kept by the operator.

Caution, danger of severe or fatal injuries.

Lower the boom and the stabiliser blade to the ground before leaving the machine, stop the engine, remove the ignition key and fold up the armrest.

Location

On the left-hand side on the B pillar in the cab.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

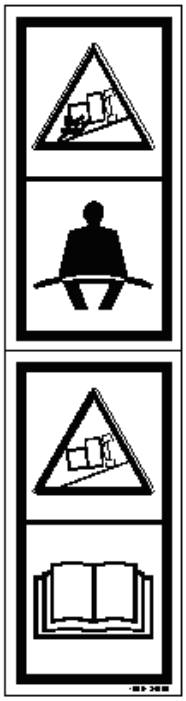


Fig. 61: Seat, fastening the seat belt

Meaning

Caution, danger of severe or fatal injuries.

- Fasten the seat belt and operate the machine only from the seat to avoid falling out of the machine.

Caution, danger of severe or fatal injuries.

- Always work ensuring machine stability, do not overload the machine and use only attachments that have been released by the manufacturer. Always work on firm ground. Follow the instructions given in the Operator's Manual.

Location

On the left-hand side on the B pillar in the cab.

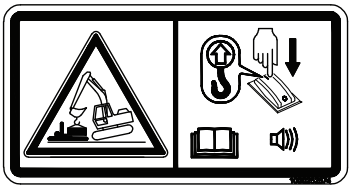


Fig. 62: Safe load indicator

Meaning (from serial no. AF05571)

Caution, the safe load indicator must always be switched on.

Stay clear of the machine's work range during operation.

Location

Beside the safe load indicator switch, on the side window.

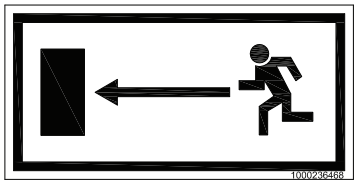


Fig. 63: Emergency exit

Meaning (option)

This label indicates the emergency exit on machines equipped with the Front Guard option.

Location

On the upper edge of the rear window in the cab.

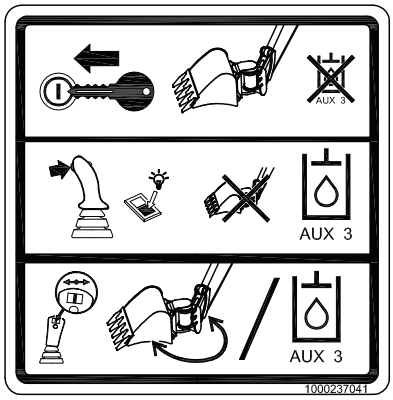


Fig. 64: Cab label

Meaning

The Powertilt function is enabled once the machine is started. The 3rd control circuit is disabled.

The 3rd control circuit is enabled with the button on the right-hand control lever. The status indicator light comes on.

The function is carried out with the slide switch on the right-hand control lever.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1.12 Fire extinguisher



Fig. 65: Fire extinguisher (up to serial no. AJ02792)



Fig. 66: Fire extinguisher (from serial no. AJ02793)

The fire extinguisher is neither included in the machine's standard equipment nor is it available as an option from Wacker Neuson.

☞ *Retrofitting a fire extinguisher according to DIN-EN 3 must be carried out by an authorised workshop.*

Installation in cab:

➥ Inside the cab at the rear left (see figure 65).

Notice!

Check the fire extinguisher at regular intervals, also ensure that it is safely mounted.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

https://truckmanualshub.com/

2 Safety instructions

2.1 Identification of warnings and dangers

Important indications regarding the safety of the staff and the machine are identified in this Operator's Manual with the following terms and symbols:



Danger!

Failure to observe the instructions identified by this symbol can result in personal injury or death for the operator or other persons.

☞ *Measures for avoiding danger.*



Caution!

Failure to observe the instructions identified by this symbol can result in damage to the machine.

☞ *Measures for avoiding danger for the machine.*



Notice!

This symbol identifies instructions for a more efficient and economical use of the machine.



Environment!

Failure to observe the instructions identified by this symbol can result in damage to the environment. The environment is in danger if environmentally hazardous material (e.g. waste oil) is not subject to proper use or disposal.

2.2 Warranty

Warranty claims can be made only if the conditions of warranty have been observed. They are included in the General Conditions of Sales and Delivery for new machines and spare parts sold by the dealers of Wacker Neuson Linz GmbH. Furthermore, all instructions in this Operator's Manual must be observed.

2.3 Disposal

All fluids, lubricants, material, etc., used on the machine are subject to specific regulations regarding collection and disposal. Dispose of different materials and consumables separately and in an environmentally friendly manner.

Disposal may be carried out by a Wacker Neuson dealer only. Also observe the national regulations regarding disposal.

https://truckmanualshub.com/



Environment!

Avoid damage to the environment. Do not allow the oil and oily wastes to get into the ground or stretches of water.

If the machine is no longer used according to its designated use, ensure that it is decommissioned or put out of operation and disposed of according to applicable regulations.

- Observe all applicable safety regulations during machine disposal.
- Machine disposal must be carried in accordance with state-of-the-art standards that apply at the time of disposal.

2.4 Designated use and exemption from liability

- The machine is intended for:
  - moving earth, gravel or rubble, for hammer operation as well as for
  - working with the attachments mentioned in chapter *Fields of application*.
  - Every other application is regarded as not designated for the use of the machine. Wacker Neuson will not be liable for damage resulting from use other than mentioned above. The user alone will bear the risk.
    Designated use also includes observing the instructions set forth in the Operator's Manual and observing the maintenance and service conditions.
- The safety of the machine can be negatively affected by carrying out machine modifications without proper authority and by using spare parts, equipment, attachments and optional equipment which have not been checked and released by Wacker Neuson GmbH. Wacker Neuson GmbH will not be liable for damage resulting from this.
- Wacker Neuson Linz GmbH shall not be liable for personal injury and/or damage to property caused by failure to observe the safety instructions and the Operator's Manual, and by the negligence of the duty to exercise due care when:
  - handling
  - operating
  - servicing and carrying out maintenance work and
  - repairing the machine. This is also applicable in those cases in which special attention has not been drawn to the duty to exercise due care, in the safety instructions, the Operator's Manuals and maintenance manuals (machine/engine).
  - Read and understand the Operator's Manual before starting up, servicing or repairing the machine. Observe all safety instructions.
- The machine may not be used for transport jobs on public roads.
- The quickhitch is only used for locking an attachment.
- Hammer operation is only allowed in specified areas.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

2.5 General conduct and safety instructions

Organisational measures

- The machine has been designed and built in accordance with state-of-the-art standards and the recognised safety regulations. Nevertheless, its use can constitute a risk to life and limb of the user or of third parties, or cause damage to the machine and to other material property.
- The machine must only be used in technically perfect condition in accordance with its designated use and the instructions set forth in the Operator's Manual, and only by safety-conscious persons who are fully aware of the risks involved in operating the machine. Any malfunctions, especially those affecting safety, must therefore be rectified immediately.
  Basic rule*:*
  Before putting the machine into operation, inspect the machine for safety in work and road operation.
- Careful and prudent working is the best way to avoid accidents.
- The Operator's Manual must always be at hand at the place of use of the machine, and must therefore be kept in its storage bin.
  Immediately complete or replace an incomplete or illegible Operator's Manual.
- In addition to the Operator's Manual, observe and instruct the operator in all other generally applicable legal and other mandatory regulations relevant to accident prevention and environmental protection.
  These compulsory regulations may also deal with handling hazardous substances, issuing and/or wearing personal protective equipment, or traffic regulations.
- With regard to specific operational features, e.g. those relevant to job organisation, work sequences or the persons entrusted with the work, supplement the Operator's Manual by corresponding instructions, including those relevant to supervising and reporting duties.
- Persons entrusted with work on the machine must have read and understood the Operator's Manual and in particular, chapter "Safety Instructions" before beginning work. This applies especially to persons working only occasionally on the machine, e.g. set-up or maintenance.
- The user/owner must check – at least from time to time – whether the persons entrusted with operation or maintenance are working in compliance with the Operator's Manual and are aware of risks and safety factors.
- The user/owner commits himself to operate and keep the machine in perfect condition, and, if necessary or required by law, to require the operating or servicing persons to wear protective clothing etc.
- In the event of safety-relevant modifications or changes on the machine or of its behaviour, stop the machine immediately and report the malfunction to the competent authority/person.
  Safety-relevant damage or malfunctions of the machine must be rectified immediately.
- Never make any modifications, additions or conversions to the machine and its super-structures, as well as to the attachments, which might affect safety without the approval of Wacker Neuson. This also applies to the installation and the adjustment of safety devices and valves, as well as to welding work on load-bearing elements.
- Spare parts must comply with the technical requirements specified by Wacker Neuson. Original spare parts can be relied to do so.
- Replace hydraulic hoses within stipulated intervals even if no safety-relevant defects have been detected.
- Before working on or with the machine, remove jewellery, such as rings, wristwatches, bracelets etc. Tie back long hair and do not wear loose-fitting garments, such as unbut-toned or unzipped jackets, ties or scarves.
  Injury can result from being caught up in the machinery or from rings catching on moving parts.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

- Keep the machine clean. This reduces:
  - Fire hazard, e.g. due to oil-soaked rags lying around.
  - Danger of injury, e.g. due to dirt or debris on the footholds, and
  - Danger of accidents e.g. due to dirt pile-up on the drive pedals.
- Observe all safety, warning and information signs and labels on the machine.
- Adhere to prescribed intervals or those specified in the Operator's Manual for routine checks/inspections and maintenance work.
- For service, inspection, maintenance or repair work, tools and workshop equipment adapted to the task on hand are absolutely indispensable.

2.6 Selection and qualification of staff, basic responsibilities

- Any work on or with the machine must be carried out by reliable staff only. Do not let unauthorised persons drive or work with the machine. Observe statutory minimum age limits.
- Employ only trained or instructed staff on the machine, and clearly and unequivocally define the individual responsibilities of the staff for operation, set-up, maintenance and repair.
- Define the machine operator's responsibilities – also with regard to observing traffic regulations. Give the operator the authority to refuse instructions by third parties that are contrary to safety.
- Do not allow persons to be trained or instructed or persons taking part in a general training course to work on or with the machine without being permanently supervised by an experienced person.
- Work on the electrical system and equipment, on the undercarriage and the steering and brake systems may be carried out only by skilled staff which has been specially trained for such work.
  Work on the hydraulic system of the machine must be carried out only by staff with special knowledge and experience in hydraulic equipment.
- Seal off the danger zone should it not be possible to keep a safe distance.
  Stop work if persons do not leave the danger zone in spite of warning. Keep out of the danger zone!

Danger zone:

The danger zone is the area in which persons are in danger due to the movements of the

- machine
- work equipment
- additional equipment or
- material
- This also includes the area affected by falling material, equipment or by parts which are thrown out.
  The danger zone must be extended by 0.5 m (20") in the immediate vicinity of
- buildings
- scaffolds or
- other elements of construction

https://truckmanualshub.com/

2.7 Safety instructions regarding operation

Normal operation

- Put the machine into operation only after you have fastened and tightened the seat belt.
- Apart from the user, no other persons are allowed to ride on the machine.
- Fold up the control lever base before releasing the seat belt in order to avoid unintentional operation.
- Avoid any operational mode that might be prejudicial to safety.
- Before beginning work, familiarise yourself with the surroundings and circumstances of the work site. These are e.g. obstacles in the working and travelling area, the soil bearing capacity and any necessary barriers separating the work site from public roads.
- Take the necessary precautions to ensure that the machine is used only when in a safe and reliable state.
  Operate the machine only if all protective and safety-oriented devices, e.g. removable safety-devices, soundproofing elements etc., are in place and fully functional.
- Check the machine at least once a day/per work shift for visible damage and defects. Report any changes (incl. changes in working behaviour) to the competent organisation/person immediately. If necessary, stop the machine immediately and lock it.
- In the event of malfunctions, stop the machine immediately and lock it. Have any defects rectified immediately.
- Start and operate the machine from the seat only.
- Carry out start-up and shut-down procedures in accordance with the Operator's Manual, and observe the indicator lights.
- Before putting the machine/attachment into operation (start-up/moving), ensure that no-one is at risk by putting the machine/attachment into operation.
- Before driving with the machine, and also after interrupting work, check whether the drive pedals, the signalling and the light systems are functional.
- Before moving the machine always check whether the supplementary equipment and the attachments have been safely stowed away or attached.
- When driving on public roads, ways and places, observe the valid traffic regulations and, if necessary, ensure beforehand that the machine is in a condition perfectly compatible with these regulations.
- Always switch on the lights in conditions of poor visibility and after dark.
- No lifting, lowering or carrying persons in the work equipment/attachments.
- Installing a man basket or a working platform is prohibited.
- When crossing underpasses, bridges and tunnels, or when passing under overhead lines always ensure that there is enough clearance.
- Always keep a safe distance from the edges of building pits and slopes.
- When working in buildings or in enclosed areas, look out for in particular:
  - Height of the ceiling/clearances
  - Width of entrances
  - Maximum load of ceilings and floors
  - Sufficient room ventilation – danger of poisoning.
- Avoid any operation that might be a risk to machine stability.
- Always drive straight ahead when driving uphill or downhill. Always keep the load on the downhill side of the machine.
  Do not exceed a maximum longitudinal inclination of 15°.
  Do not exceed a maximum lateral inclination of 10°.
  Always keep the attachments/work equipment close to the ground.
- Install a Front Guard when working in areas with a risk of objects falling from the front (e.g. demolition work).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

- Ensure that no-one is dangerously close to the machine when loading. Wear protective equipment (e.g. safety goggles, hard hat, etc.).
- On sloping terrain always adapt your drive speed to the prevailing ground conditions. Never change the drive speed on, but before a slope.
- Before leaving the seat always secure the machine against unintentional movement and unauthorised use.
  Lower the attachments to the ground.
- Before starting work check whether
  - all safety devices are properly installed and functional.
- Before moving the machine or before taking up work:
  - Ensure that visibility is sufficient.
  - Adjust your correct seat position, never adjust the seat when driving or working.
  - Fasten your seat belt.
  - Inspect the immediate area (children).
  - In the work area the user is responsible for third parties.
- Caution when handling fuel – increased danger of fire.
  - Ensure that fuel does not come into contact with hot parts.
  - Do not smoke during refuelling, and avoid fire and sparks.
  - Switch off the machine before refuelling.
  - Do not smoke.
- Never get on or off a moving machine and never jump off the machine.
- Should the lights of the machine not be sufficient for carrying out work safely, provide additional lighting of the work area.
- Installed work lights must not be switched on for travel on public roads. They can be switched on in work operation if users of public roads are not dazzled.
- The drive pedals take time getting used to them. Drive speed must be adapted to your skills and to the prevailing conditions.

2.8 Information on visibility

Before putting the machine into operation, carry out a visual check to ensure that there are neither persons nor objects or other sources of danger around the machine.

When using the machine, check the surroundings constantly in order to identify potential hazards in time.

Before using the machine, before starting work or when changing users, ensure that all visual aids (mirrors) work correctly, that they are clean and adjusted in accordance with the instructions in this Operator's Manual. The operator must observe the local regulations.

Do not make any changes or modifications that impair visibility. Otherwise the machine does not meet the requirements for conformity and licensing.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

2.9 Cab and protective structures (from serial no. AJ02793)

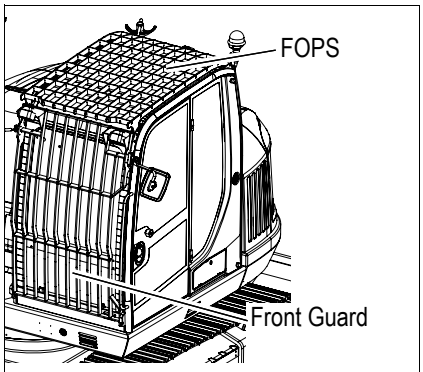


Fig. 67: Protective FOPS and Front Guard structure Indicator lights

The machine is equipped with a ROPS safety cab as a standard.
The optional protective FOPS structure protects the user against falling material.
The optional protective Front Guard structure protects the user against material from the front.

Danger!

When working in areas with a risk of material falling from above and/or the front, install a protective FOPS structure and/or a protective Front Guard structure. A shatter protection must be installed on machines equipped with a canopy if material risks falling at the front.

☞ *Otherwise machine operation is prohibited.*

☞ *Observe the following safety instructions.*

☞ *Wear protective equipment (e.g. protective clothing, safety goggles).*

Caution!

Modifying the cab and the protective structures is not allowed.
Failure to observe this can result in:

Severe or fatal injury.

☞ *No drilling, cutting or grinding.*

☞ *Do not mount any brackets.*

☞ *No welding, straightening or bending.*

☞ *Replace the complete protective structure if it is damaged, deformed and/or cracked.*

☞ *Get in touch with a Wacker Neuson dealer in case of doubt.*

☞ *Retrofit, assembly and repair work may be carried out by a Wacker Neuson dealer only.*

Caution!

The protective FOPS structure corresponds to category II and protects the user against falling material according to EN ISO 3449:2008.
The protective Front Guard structure corresponds to category II and protects the user against material from the front according to ISO 10262:1998.

☞ *Carry out only work that does not require any higher-level protection.*

Installing/removing the Front Guard

Notice!

The Front Guard may be installed/removed only by an authorised workshop.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Work range and restricted visibility

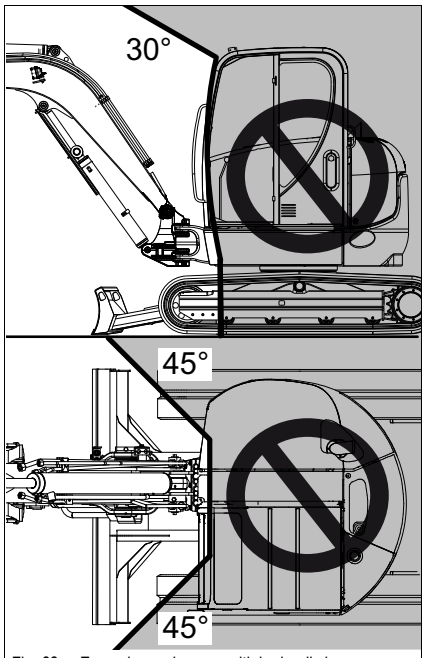


Fig. 68: Example: work range with hydraulic hammer

Danger!

The size of the work range depends on the attachment used.
– *see Operator's Manual of attachment*
– *see example: work range with hydraulic hammer Fig. 68*

Do not use the attachment outside the defined work range. Danger of injury.

Caution!

Stop working when visibility is restricted due to rain, snowfall, dust etc.
☞ *Resume work only if visibility is no longer restricted.*

2.10 Checks when reversing the machine

- Careful when reversing the machine – danger of accidents.
- Persons in the blind spot of the machine cannot seen by the user.
- Ensure that nobody is within the danger zone of the machine when changing the driving direction.
- Use the rearview mirrors to reverse with the machine.

2.11 Trailer operation

Notice!

No trailer operation with this machine.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

2.12 Applications with lifting gear

Lifting gear applications are procedures involving raising, transporting and lowering loads with the help of lifting gear and slings.

Danger!

Lifting gear applications with the machine are only allowed if the following conditions are fulfilled:

- ☞ *Maximum authorised lifting capacity of over 1000 kg (2205 lbs.) or an overturning moment of over 40000 Nm (29,500 lbf ft).*
- ☞ *The machine is equipped with an acoustic or optical warning device – see chapter 3.58 Safe load indicator (option) on page 3-98.*
- ☞ *The machine is equipped with a hose burst valve – see chapter 3.59 Safety feature "Hose burst valve" (option) on page 3-99*
- ☞ *Suitable equipment for fastening and securing loads must be available.*
- ☞ *The lift capacity table must be observed – see chapter 6 Specifications on page 6-1.*
- ☞ *Get informed on and follow the legal regulations of your country.*

Instructions on fastening loads

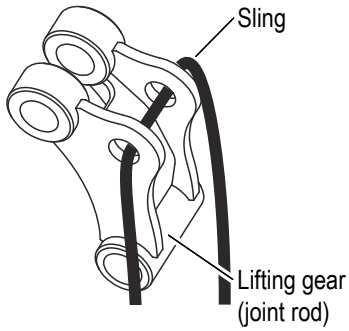


Fig. 69: Lifting gear – joint rod (option)

- The help of an accompanying person is necessary for securing and detaching the load.
- The load must be secured so as to prevent it from falling or slipping.
- Fasten the lifting gear so that it is not possible to unhook the sling unintentionally.
- Position the lifting gear ensuring the sling is not deflected by other parts.

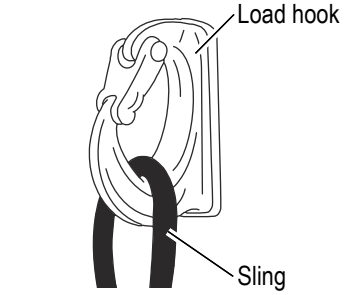


Fig. 70: Load hook

- Do not use any lifting gear and slings that are damaged or not of sufficient size.
  The lifting gear must be designed to withstand the loads that can arise in the different positions of the work equipment or parts of the boom. Lateral loads and diagonal tensile forces must also be taken into account.
  The sling must be checked regularly by a technician, at least once a year. Replace damaged slings immediately.
- Fasten lifting gear and slings avoiding danger (rotating parts, crushing or shearing) for the person securing the load. Furthermore, neither must the work equipment be affected by the lifting gear, nor must the functions of the lifting gear be affected by external influences (e.g. dirt that cannot be removed by simple means).
- Do not place slings over sharp edges.
- Always wear protective gloves, a hard hat and safety boots when working with lifting gear, slings and cables to guide the load.
- The persons attaching or securing loads may approach the boom from the side only, and only after the machine operator has given his permission. The machine operator may give his permission only after the machine is at a standstill and the work attachment no longer moves.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Prerequisite for safe use

- It is forbidden to stay under suspended loads, in the danger zone or under the machine's attachment, and near cables when guiding loads.
- The machine operator and the person attaching or securing the load must have visual contact.
- Persons guiding the load or securing it must stay in visual contact with the machine operator. Should this not be possible, ask another person to guide.
- The machine operator must guide the load the nearest possible to the ground and avoid any oscillating or swinging movements.
  - Carry out smooth, slow movements with the machine.
  - Use cables to guide the load.
  - Bear in mind the weather conditions (e.g. wind force, etc.).
- The machine may be driven with a raised load only if the path of the machine is level.
- The machine operator must not raise loads over persons.
- The machine operator may not leave his seat as long as the load is raised.

2.13 Attachments

- Prior to driving on public roads remove all attachments which cannot be secured in compliance with the legal regulations of your country.
- Attachments and counterweights affect handling and the machine's steering capability.
- Fit the attachments with the specially required devices only.
- Before uncoupling or coupling hydraulic lines (hydraulic quick couplers)
  - Stop the engine.
  - Release the pressure in the hydraulic system. In order to do so, move the control levers of the hydraulic control units back and forth a couple of times.
- Coupling attachments requires special care.
- Secure the attachments against unintentional movement.
- Operate the machine only if all protective facilities have been installed and are functional, and if all brake, light and hydraulic connections have been connected.
- If optional equipment is installed, all lighting equipment, indicator lights etc. that are required in addition must be installed and functional
- Mount attachments only if the engine is stopped and the drive is switched off.
- Especially when driving or working with machines equipped with a quickhitch for the attachments, ensure that the attachment is securely locked in the quickhitch. The lock pin must be visible on either side of the bores on the attachment. Check again before starting work.
- Fold the control lever base up before mounting attachments on the stick.
- Be careful when coupling attachments to the machine: danger of personal injury due to crushing and shearing. Ensure that nobody is between the machine and the attachment.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

2.14 Safety instructions for maintenance

- Avoid any operational mode that might be prejudicial to safety.
- Observe the adjustment, maintenance and inspection activities and intervals set forth in the Operator's Manual, including information on the replacement of parts/partial equipment.
  These activities may be carried out only by a Wacker Neuson workshop.
- The machine may not be serviced, repaired or test-driven by unauthorised staff.
- Brief operating staff/user before beginning special operations and maintenance work. Appoint someone to supervise the activities.
- In any work concerning the operation, conversion or adjustment of the machine and its safety-oriented devices, or any work related to maintenance, inspection and repair, observe the start-up and shut-down procedures set forth in the Operator's Manual, and the information on maintenance work.
- If required, secure the maintenance area appropriately.
- Prior to carrying out service, maintenance and repair work, attach warning labels, such as "Repair work – do not start machine!", to the ignition lock or to the control elements. Remove the ignition key.
- Carry out service, maintenance and repair work only if the
  - machine is positioned on firm and level ground
  - all hydraulically movable attachments and working equipment have been lowered to the ground
  - control lever base is folded up
  - engine is stopped
  - ignition key is removed and
  - the machine has been secured against unintentional movement.
- Should maintenance or repair be inevitable with the engine running:
  - Only work in groups of two.
  - Both persons must be authorised for the operation of the machine.
  - One person must be seated on the seat and maintain visual contact with the other person.
  - Observe the specific safety instructions in the work manual
  - Keep a safe distance from all rotating and moving parts, e.g. fan blades, V-belt drives, fans etc.
- Prior to carrying out assembly work on the machine, ensure that no movable parts will roll away or start moving.
- To avoid the risk of accidents, parts and large assemblies being moved for replacement purposes must be carefully attached and secured to lifting gear.
  Use only suitable lifting gear and suspension systems in a technically perfect state with adequate load-bearing capacity.
  Stay clear of suspended loads.
- Have loads fastened and crane operators guided by experienced persons only.
  The person guiding the operator must be within sight or sound of him.
- Always use specially designed or otherwise safety-oriented ladders and working platforms to carry out overhead assembly work.
  Never use machine parts or attachments/superstructures as a climbing aid.
  Wear a safety harness when carrying out elevated maintenance work. Keep all handles, steps, handrails, platforms, landings and ladders free from dirt, snow and ice.
- Clean the machine, especially connections and threaded unions, of any traces of oil, fuel or preservatives before carrying out maintenance/repair work.
  Do not use aggressive detergents.
  Use lint-free cleaning rags.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

- Before cleaning the machine with water, steam jet (high-pressure cleaner) or detergents, cover or tape up all openings which – for safety and functional reasons – must be protected against water, steam or detergent penetration. Special care must be taken with the electrical system.
- When cleaning with high-pressure cleaners, keep a minimum distance of 1 m (40 in) between insulating mats and the nozzle of the high-pressure cleaner.
- After cleaning, remove all covers and tapes applied for that purpose.
- After cleaning, examine all fuel, lubricant and hydraulic oil lines for leaks, chafe marks and damage.
  Rectify all defects without delay.
- Always tighten any screw connections that have been loosened during maintenance and repair.
- Any safety devices removed for set-up, maintenance or repair purposes must be refitted and checked immediately upon completion of the maintenance and repair work.
- Ensure that all consumables and replaced parts are disposed of safely and with minimum environmental impact.
- Do not use the work equipment as lifting platforms for persons.
- Before taking up work on machine parts dangerous for life and limb (bruising, cutting), always ensure safe blocking/support of these areas.
- Carry out maintenance and repair work beneath a raised machine, attachments or additional equipment only if a safe and secure support has been provided for (the sole use of hydraulic rams, jacks etc. does not sufficiently secure raised machines or equipment/attachments).
- Avoid contact with hot parts, such as the engine block or the exhaust system during the operation of the machine and for some time afterwards – danger of burns.
- Handle retainer pins slowly and carefully – danger of injury.
- Using starting fuel is not allowed. This applies in particular if the intake-air preheating is used at the same time – danger of explosions.
- Apply special care when working on the fuel system – increased danger of fire.
- When carrying out maintenance work, ensure that there is a fire extinguisher in the work area.
- Before carrying out (maintenance) work on the machine, remove all jewellry, such as rings, watches and bracelets. Tie back long hair, and button up or zip up loose-fitting garments.
  Injury can result from hair, jewellry or garments getting caught on moving parts.
- Always wear a hard hat and safety shoes when carrying out work or maintenance on the machine. If necessary, wear protective clothing, goggles, masks, gloves and ear protectors.
- The lock nuts may be used only once and must be replaced by new ones every time they are removed.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

2.15 Warning of special hazards

Electrical system

- Use only original fuses with the specified current rating.
  Switch off the machine immediately and rectify the malfunction if trouble occurs in the electrical system.
- Work on the electrical system may only be carried out by a technician with appropriate training, in accordance with the applicable electrical engineering rules.
- Inspect and check the electric equipment of the machine at regular intervals. Defects such as loose connections or scorched cables must be rectified immediately.
- Observe the operating voltage of the machine/attachments.
- Always remove the earthing strap from the battery when working on the electrical system or when carrying out welding work.
- Starting with a battery jumper cable can be dangerous if carried out improperly. Observe the safety instructions regarding the battery.

Working in the area of underground electric lines

- Before starting any work, the machine operator must ensure that there are no lines in the work area.
- If you are not sure, contact the person in charge at the network operator.
- If there are lines, take the following safety measures:
  - Mark the position and path of the lines unambiguously.
  - Fasten, support or secure exposed lines.
  - Safely fasten lines if vibration or shocks to these lines must be avoided.

Working near overhead electric lines

Danger!

Touching overhead electric lines carries a risk of fatal injuries.

Risk of fatal injuries due to electric shock

☞ *When working with the machine, maintain a safe distance from overhead electric lines.*

☞ *If work must be carried out close to overhead lines, the equipment/attachments must be kept well away from them.*

Rated voltage (volts)	Safety distance	
	Metres	Feet
Up to 1000 V	1 m	3.3 ft--
Over 1 kV to 110 kV	3 m	9.8 ft.
Over 110 kV to 220 kV	4 m	13.1 ft.
Over 220 kV to 380 kV	5 m	16.4 ft.
Unknown rated voltage	5 m	16.4 ft.

- If no sufficient distance can be kept to overhead electric lines, the machine operator must take other safety measures, for instance switching off the current, in agreement with the owner or operator of the lines.
- If an energised line is touched nevertheless:
  - Do not leave the machine.
  - Drive the machine out of the danger zone.
  - Warn others against approaching and touching the machine.
  - Have the live wire de-energised.
  - The user must not touch any metallic parts.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

- Do not leave the machine until the line that has been touched or damaged has been safely de-energised.

Gas, dust, steam, smoke

- Operate the machine only on adequately ventilated premises. Before starting internal combustion engines or operating fuel-operated heating systems on enclosed premises, ensure that there is sufficient ventilation.
  Observe the regulations in force at the respective site.
- Welding, burning and grinding work on the machine may only be carried out by a Wacker Neuson dealer.
- In areas with special hazards (e.g. toxic gases, caustic vapours, toxic environments), wear appropriate protective equipment (breathing filters, protective clothing).

Hydraulics

- Work on the hydraulic equipment of the machine must be carried out only by persons having specific technical knowledge and experience in hydraulic systems.
- Check all lines, hoses and screw connections regularly for leaks and obvious damage. Repair any damage and leaks immediately. Splashed oil can cause injury and fire.
- In accordance with the Operator's Manual/instructions for the respective assembly, release the pressure in all system sections and pressure lines (hydraulic system) to be opened before carrying out any implementing/repair work.
- Hydraulic and compressed-air lines must be laid and fitted properly. Ensure that no connections are interchanged. The fittings, lengths and quality of the hoses must comply with the technical requirements.

Noise

- During operation all sound baffles must be closed.
- Wear ear protectors if necessary.

Oil, grease and other chemical substances

- When handling oil, grease and other chemical substances (e.g. battery electrolyte – sulphuric acid), observe the product-related safety regulations (safety data sheet).
- Be careful when handling hot consumables – risk of burning or scalding.
- When using the machine in contaminated areas, take appropriate measures for the protection of the driver and the machine.

Using the quickhitches in water

- Apply grease to the lubrication points before using the Easy Lock offset bucket in water.
- After using the quickhitch in water, apply grease to the lubrication points to remove all water.
- Using the quickhitch in salt water is prohibited.

Battery

- When handling the battery observe the specific safety instructions and regulations relevant to accident prevention. Batteries contain sulphuric acid – caustic.
- Especially when charging batteries, as well as during normal operation of batteries, an oxyhydrogen mixture is formed in the battery cells – danger of explosion.
- In case of a frozen battery or of an insufficient electrolyte level, do not try start-up with a battery jumper cable. The battery can burst or explode.

  ☞ Dispose of the battery immediately.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Tracks

- Check track tension at regular intervals.
- Repair work on the tracks must be carried out by technical staff or by an authorised workshop only.
- Defective tracks reduce the machine's operational safety. Check the tracks regularly for:
  - Cracks, cuts or other damage.

2.16 Hammer operation

Caution!

If several sizes of hydraulic hammers are available for the machine, do not use the largest possible hydraulic hammer for the Powertilt unit.

- Contact your Wacker Neuson dealer for information on the correct equipment.

Safety instructions

- *– see chapter 2.5 General conduct and safety instructions* on page 2-3.
- If there is a risk of material coming off in fragments and splinters, e.g. when working with a hydraulic hammer, a suitable protection, e.g. a protective screen or another suitable protective facility must be installed on the machine.
- During operation, all persons must stay clear of the work area of the machine.
- Do not place the machine directly underneath the workplace during demolition, otherwise parts can fall onto the machine or the building can collapse.
- Do not carry out any demolition work under the machine. This could cause the machine to tip over.
- The machine can lose its balance and tip over if a hammer or other heavy attachment is used. Proceed as follows to carry out work both on level ground and on slopes:
  ☞ Never turn, lower or set down the attachment abruptly.
  ☞ Do not extend or retract the boom abruptly, otherwise the machine can tip over.
  ☞ *– see chapter 3.17 Working on slopes* on page 3-30
- Do not use the impact force of the attachment to carry out demolition work. Demolished parts can cause personal injury or damage to property or the equipment.
- Stop work immediately if a hydraulic hose moves back and forth in an unusual manner. This could be a cause for a pressure accumulator defect. Contact your Wacker Neuson dealer and have the error repaired immediately.
- All windows and doors must be closed.
- Wear a hard hat, safety goggles and ear protectors.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Working with a hammer

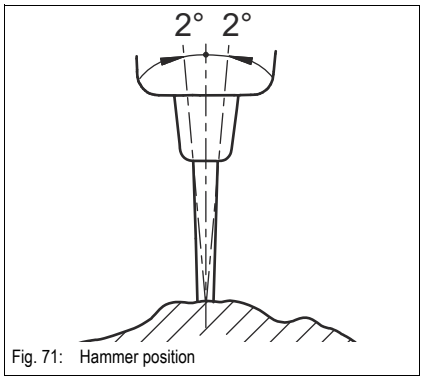


Fig. 71: Hammer position

Caution!

Bear in mind the following for hammer operation:

- ☞ *Keep the hammer perpendicular to the surface (max. deviation to all sides is 2°).*
- ☞ *After you have driven the hammer into the material, do not try to fragment the material with movements to the sides.*
- ☞ *Never move the hammer as you drive it into the material.*
- ☞ *Do not operate the hammer in the same spot uninterruptedly for more than 15 seconds.*
- ☞ *If the applied impact force does not break the material, move the hammer to the edge or start again in another place in order to break the material.*
- ☞ *Do not put the hammer into operation if a ram is fully extended or retracted.*
- ☞ *Never use the hammer horizontally or upwards.*
- ☞ *Do not use the hammer for catching or collecting material.*
- ☞ *Press the hammer firmly against the material to avoid hammer operation without any resistance.*
- ☞ *Do not use the hammer to raise loads.*
- ☞ *Do not hit the hammer against rocks, concrete, etc..*
- ☞ *Do not raise the machine with the boom.*
- ☞ *Do not carry out any movements with the machine during hammer operation.*
- ☞ *Working with the rams and/or the boom fully extended is not allowed.*
- ☞ *Do not swivel the Powertilt unit beyond 30° during hammer operation, otherwise the load on the machine's boom increases enormously.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

2.17 Transport and towing

Towing

- Tow away only in accordance with the Operator's Manual.
- For towing the machine observe the prescribed transport position, admissible speed and itinerary.

Transport

- Load and transport only in accordance with the Operator's Manual.
- Use only suitable means of transport of adequate capacity/payload.
- Use suitable mounting points and load-securing devices.
- Safely secure the machine on means of transport:.
  - In the event of an accident or evasive manoeuvre, the machine must not be able to move either laterally, forwards, backwards or upwards.
- The recommissioning procedure must be strictly in accordance with the Operator's Manual.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3 Operation

This chapter describes the controls, and contains information on the function and handling of the indicator lights and controls in the cab.

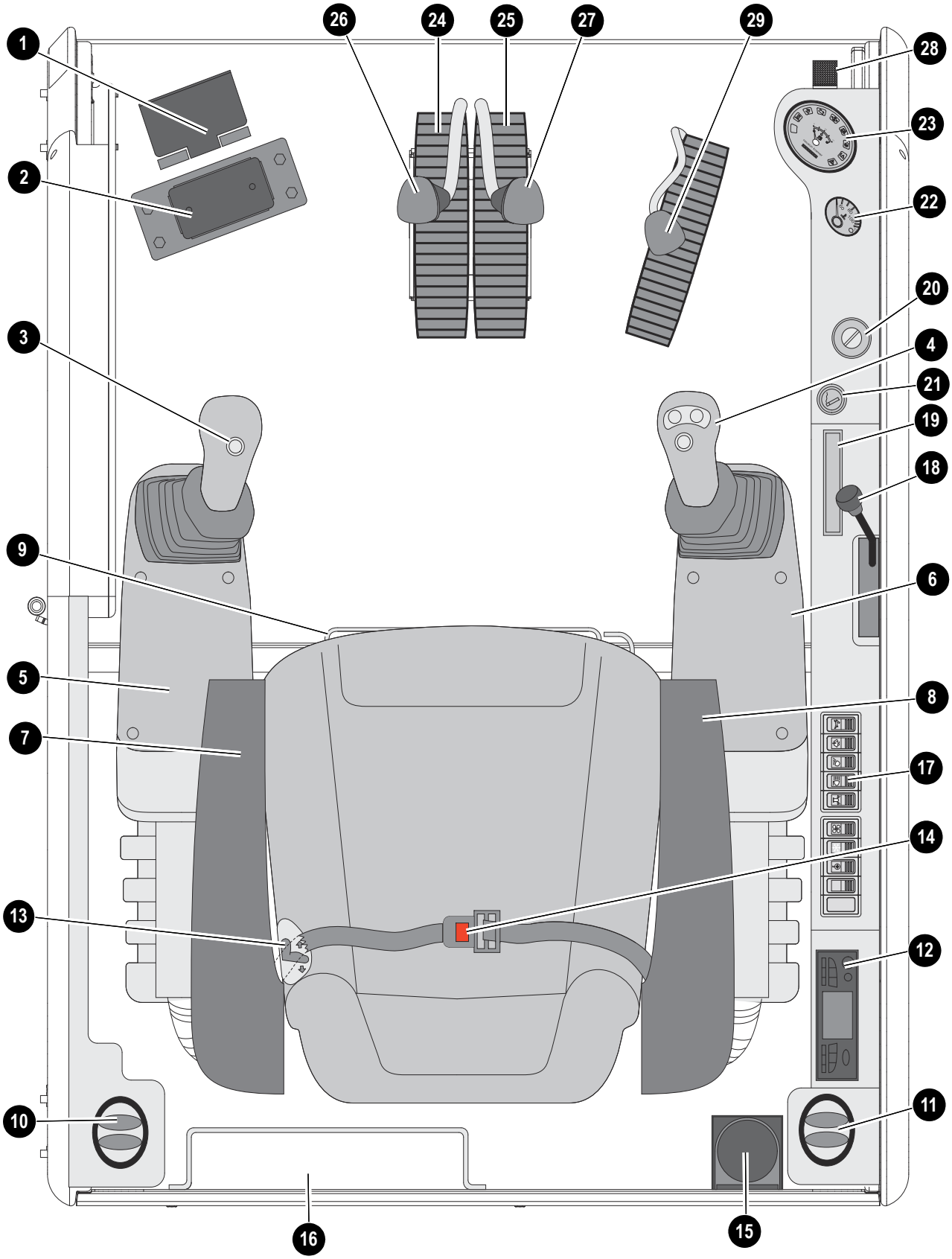
The pages stated in the table refer to the description of the controls.

A combination of digits, or a combination of digits and letters (e.g. 40/**18** or 40/**A**) used for identifying the control elements, means:
fig. no. 40/control element no. 18 or position **A** in fig. no. 40

Figures carry no numbers if they are placed to the left of the text.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.1 Cab 75Z3/8003 (up to serial no. AH00610)

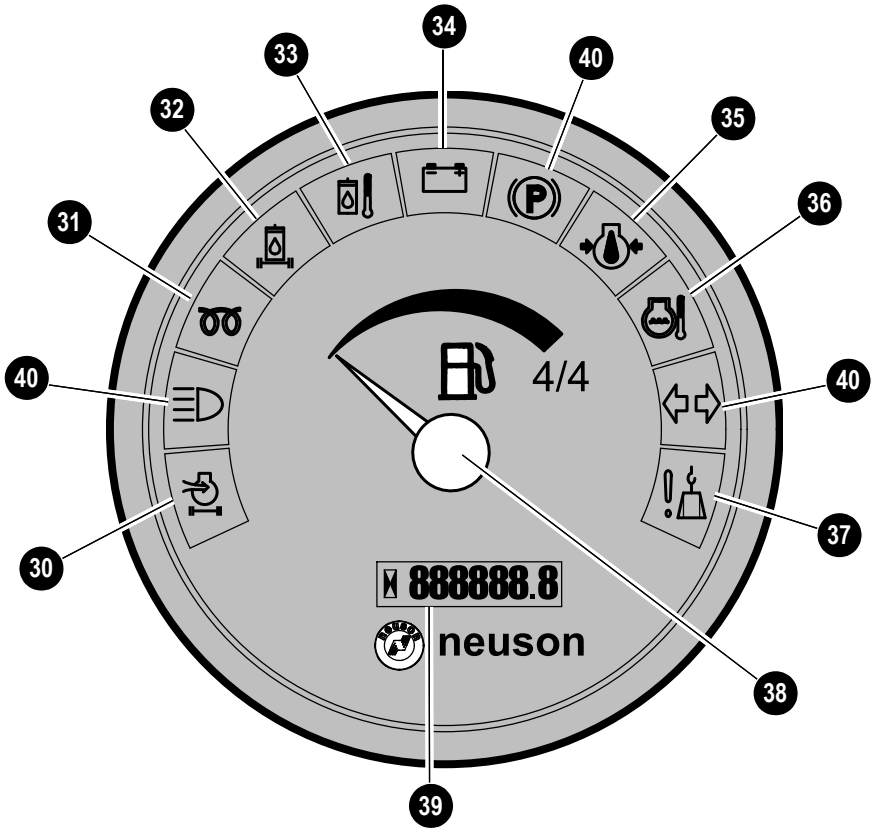


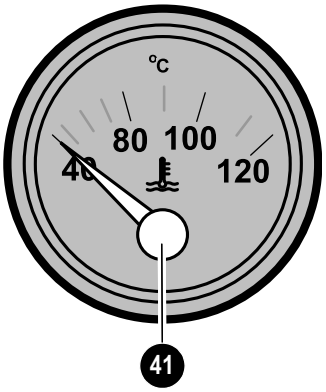
https://truckmanualshub.com/

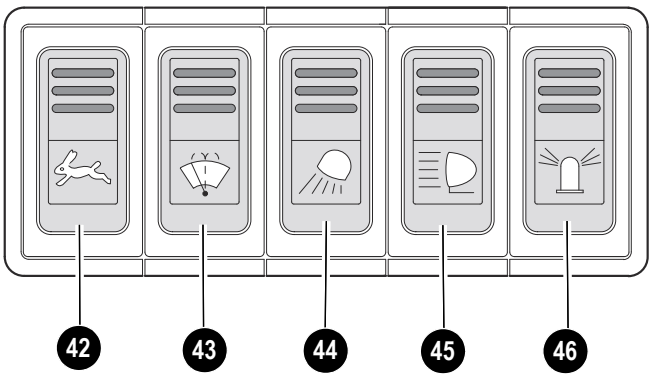
Pos.	Description	For more information see page
1	Cover for hammer pedal	
2	Hammer pedal	*3-73*
3	Control lever (left)	*3-78*
4	Control lever (right)	*3-78*
5	Control lever base (left)	*3-73*
6	Control lever base (right)	
7	Armrest (left)	
8	Armrest (right)	
9	Lever (horizontal seat adjustment)	*3-41, 3-44*
10	Air vent (rear window, on the left)	
11	Air vent (rear window, on the right)	
12	Radio (option)	
13	Seat (backrest adjustment)	*3-41, 3-44*
14	Seat belt (lock)	*3-47*
15	Cup holder	
16	Document storage bin	
17	Switch panel	*3-12*
18	Throttle	*3-20*
19	Fuse box	*6-3*
20	Preheating start switch	*3-20*
21	Cigarette lighter	
22	Coolant temperature indicator (up to serial number AH00610)	
23	Round display element	
24	Drive pedal (left)	*3-28*
25	Drive pedal (right)	*3-28*
26	Drive lever (left)	*3-28*
27	Drive lever (right)	*3-28*
28	Vario warning light (8003 option)	
29	Stabiliser blade lever/pedal	

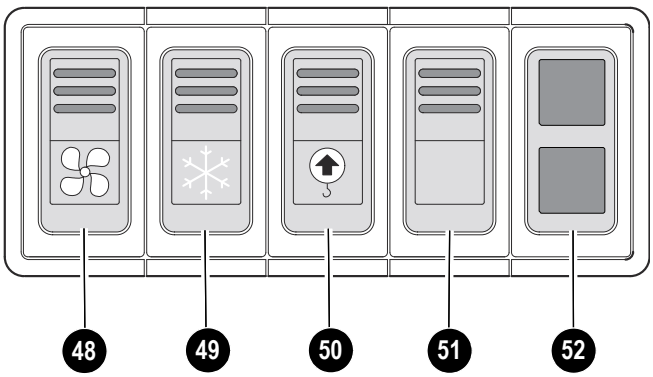
https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.2 Control elements 75Z3/8003 (up to serial no. AH00610)







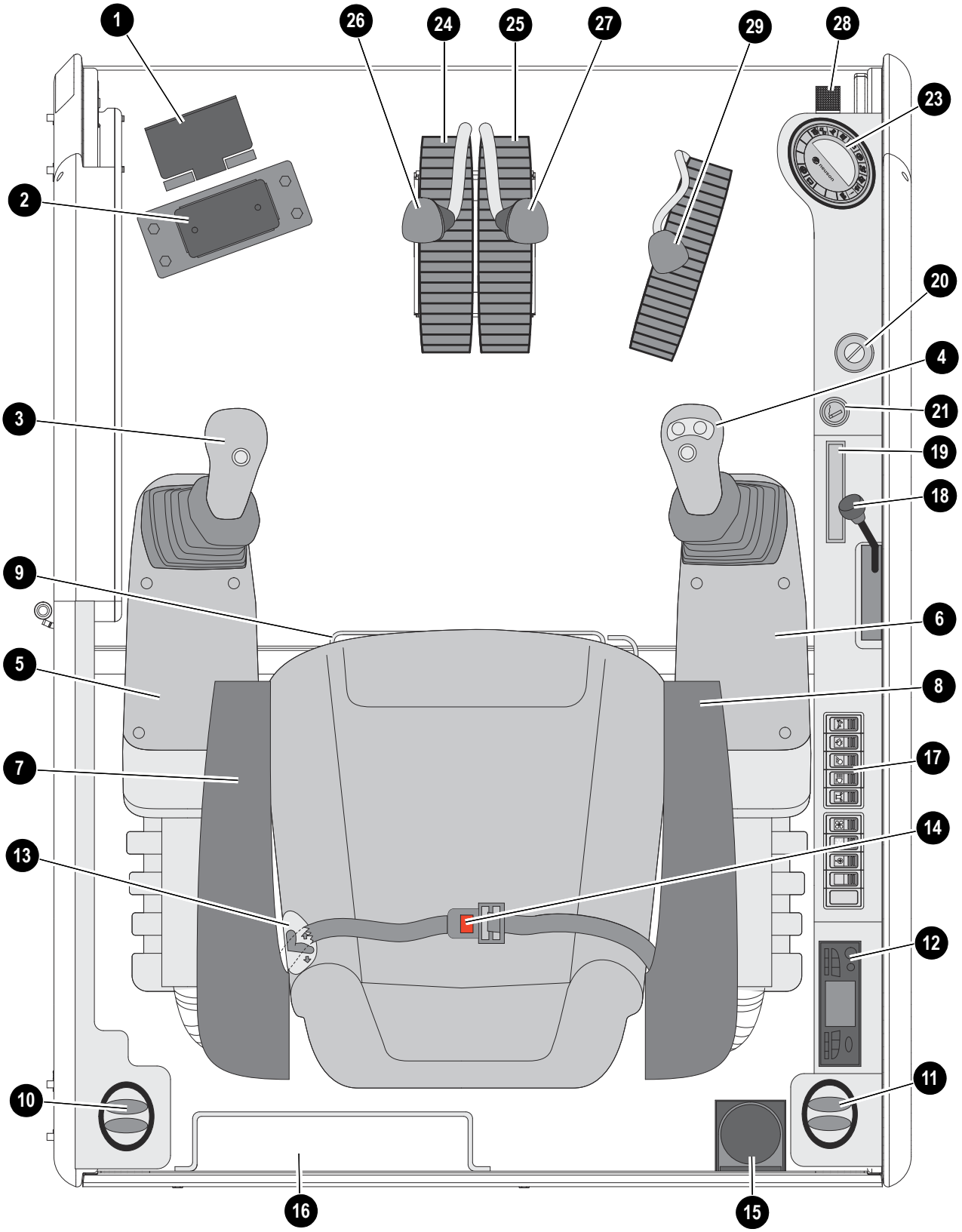


https://truckmanualshub.com/

Pos.	Description	For more information see page
30	Air filter indicator light (red)	*3-14*
31	Cold starter indicator light (yellow)	*3-15*
32	Hydraulic oil filter indicator light (red)	*3-14*
33	Not assigned	
34	Alternator charge function indicator light (red)	*3-14*
35	Engine oil pressure indicator light (red)	*3-14*
36	Indicator light (red) – coolant temperature too high	*3-14*
37	Indicator light (red) – safe load indicator	*3-15*
38	Fuel level indicator	*3-15*
39	Hour meter	*3-15*
40	Not assigned	
41	Coolant temperature indicator	*3-16*
42	High speed	*3-29*
43	Washer system	*3-40*
44	Working light	*3-34*
45	Roof lights (option)	*3-35*
46	Rotating beacon (option)	*3-36*
47	Automatic engine speed setting (not assigned)	
48	Ventilation	*3-37*
49	Air conditioning (option)	*3-39*
50	Safe load indicator (option)	*3-107*
51	Not assigned	
52	Proportional controls (option)	*3-80*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.3 Cab 75Z3/8003 (serial nos. AH00611 to AH02749)

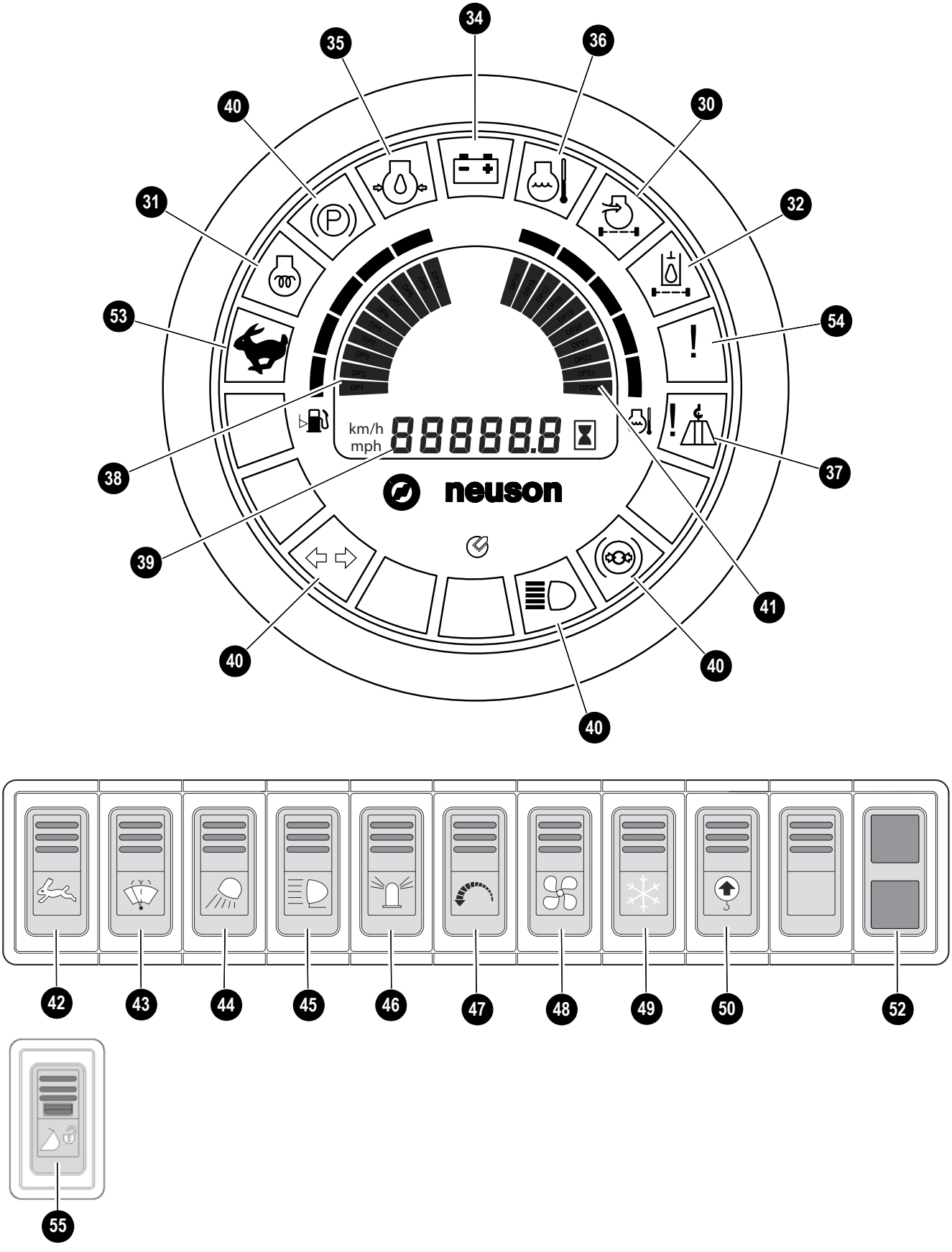


https://truckmanualshub.com/

Pos.	Description	For more information see page
1	Cover for hammer pedal	
2	Hammer pedal	*3-73*
3	Control lever (left)	*3-78*
4	Control lever (right)	*3-78*
5	Control lever base (left)	*3-73*
6	Control lever base (right)	
7	Armrest (left)	
8	Armrest (right)	
9	Lever (horizontal seat adjustment)	*3-41, 3-44*
10	Air vent (rear window, on the left)	
11	Air vent (rear window, on the right)	
12	Radio (option)	
13	Seat (backrest adjustment)	*3-41, 3-44*
14	Seat belt (lock)	*3-47*
15	Cup holder	
16	Document storage bin	
17	Switch panel	*3-12*
18	Throttle	*3-20*
19	Fuse box	*6-3*
20	Preheating start switch	*3-20*
21	Cigarette lighter	
22	Coolant temperature indicator (up to serial number AH00610)	
23	Round display element	
24	Drive pedal (left)	*3-28*
25	Drive pedal (right)	*3-28*
26	Drive lever (left)	*3-28*
27	Drive lever (right)	*3-28*
28	Vario warning light (8003 option)	
29	Stabiliser blade lever/pedal	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.4 Control elements 75Z3/8003 (serial nos. AH00611 to AH02749)

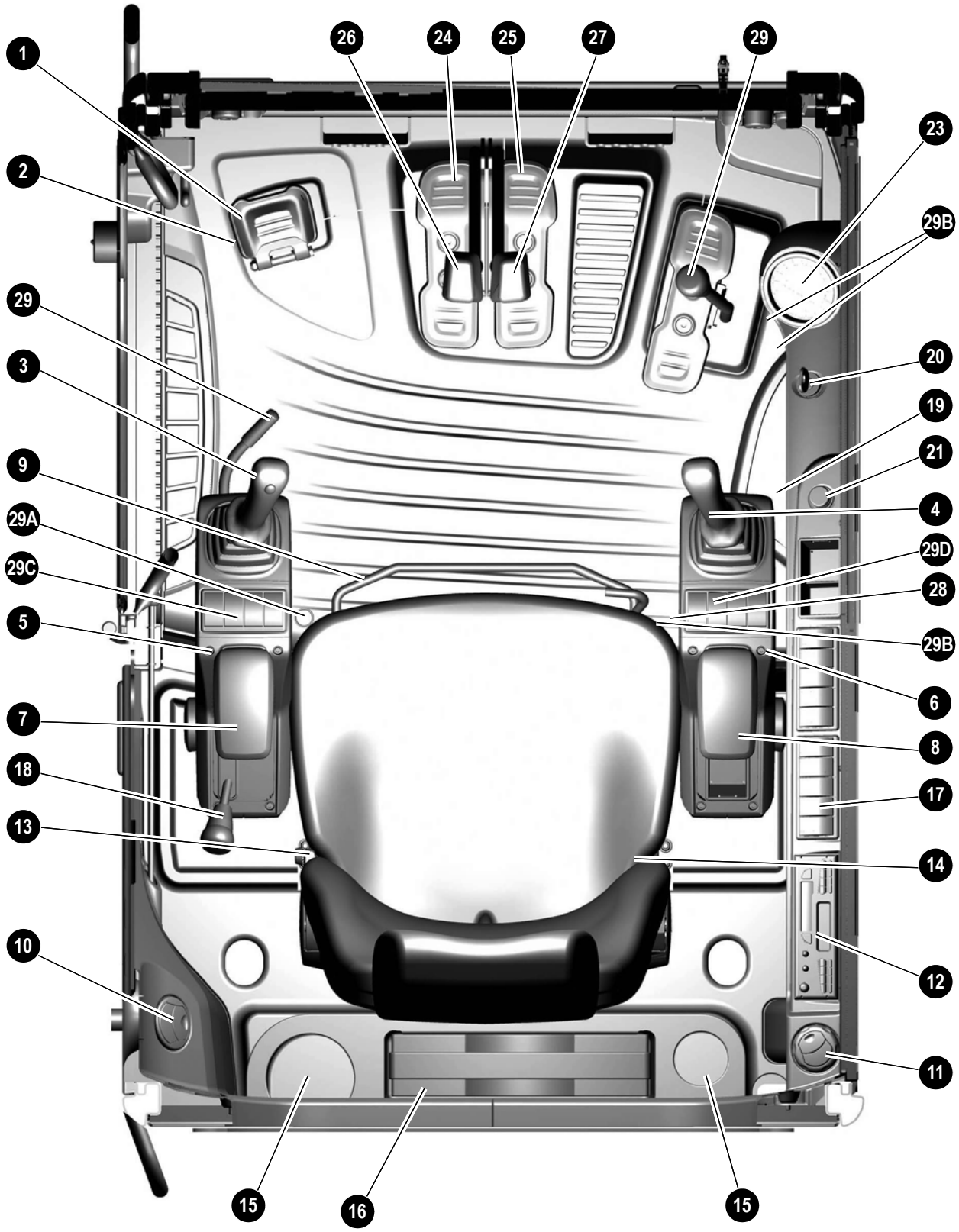


https://truckmanualshub.com/

Pos.	Description	For more information see page
30	Air filter indicator light (red)	*3-14*
31	Cold starter indicator light (yellow)	*3-15*
32	Hydraulic oil filter indicator light (red)	*3-14*
33	Not assigned	
34	Alternator charge function indicator light (red)	*3-14*
35	Engine oil pressure indicator light (red)	*3-14*
36	Indicator light (red) – coolant temperature too high	*3-14*
37	Indicator light (red) – safe load indicator	*3-15*
38	Fuel level indicator	*3-15*
39	Hour meter	*3-15*
40	Not assigned	
41	Coolant temperature indicator	*3-16*
42	High speed	*3-29*
43	Washer system	*3-40*
44	Working light	*3-34*
45	Roof lights (option)	*3-35*
46	Rotating beacon (option)	*3-36*
47	Automatic engine speed setting	*3-21*
48	Ventilation	*3-37*
49	Air conditioning (option)	*3-39*
50	Safe load indicator (option)	*3-107*
51	Not assigned	
52	Proportional controls (option)	*3-80*
53	Indicator light (green) – high speed enabled	*3-29*
54	Indicator light (red) – engine error	*3-15*
55	Hydraulic quickhitch system (option)	*3-92*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.5 Cab 75Z3 2/8003 2 (from serial no. AJ02793)

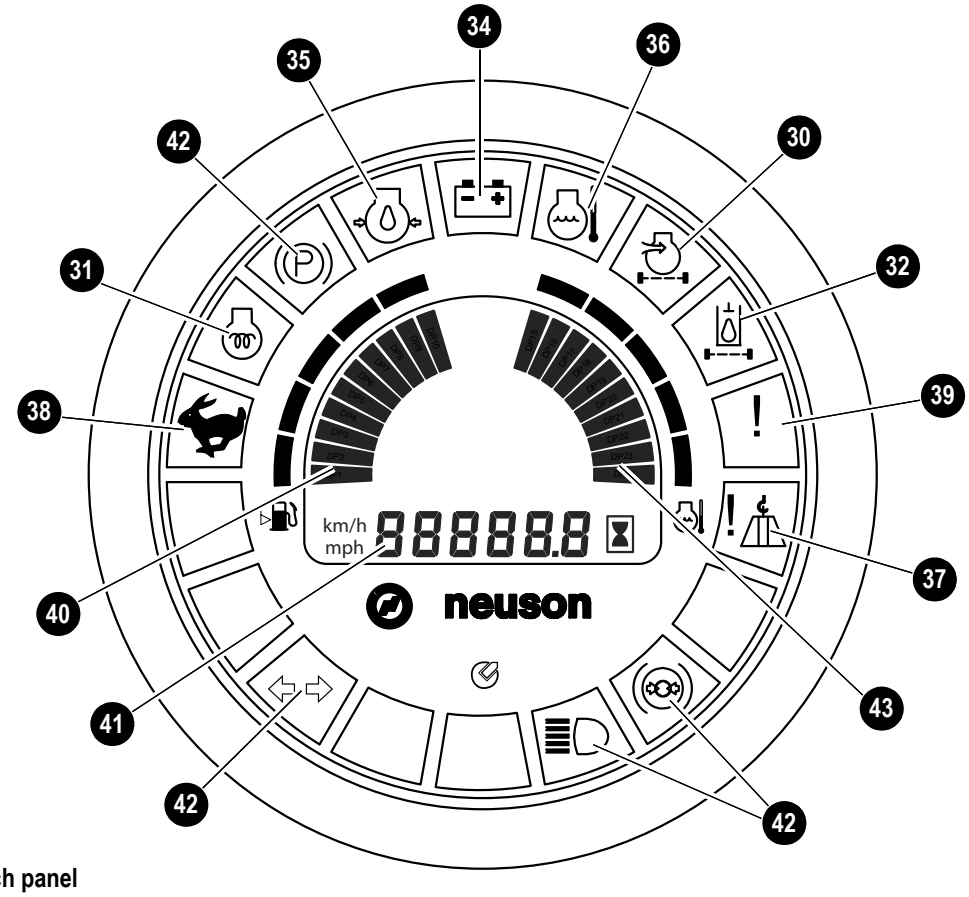


https://truckmanualshub.com/

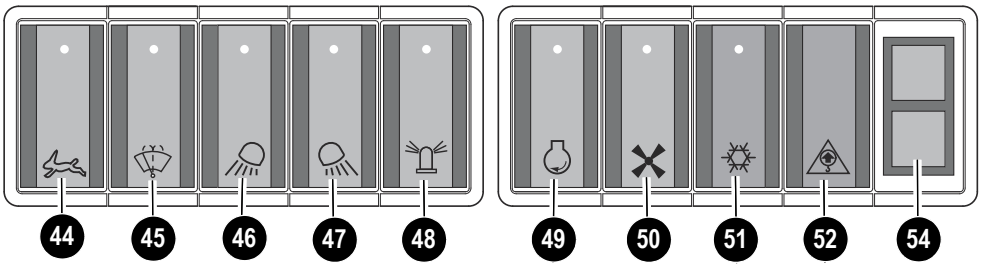
Pos.	Description	For more information see page
1	Cover for hammer pedal	
2	Hammer pedal	*3-73*
3	Control lever (left)	*3-73*
4	Control lever (right)	*3-75*
5	Control lever base (left)	*3-64*
6	Control lever base (right)	
7	Armrest (left)	
8	Armrest (right)	
9	Lever (horizontal seat adjustment)	*3-41, 3-44*
10	Air vent (rear window, on the left)	
11	Air vent (rear window, on the right)	
12	Radio (option)	
13	Seat (backrest adjustment)	*3-41, 3-44*
14	Seat belt (lock)	*3-47*
15	Cup holder	
16	Document storage bin	
17	Switch panel	*3-12*
18	Throttle	*3-20, 3-32*
19	Fuse box	*6-3*
20	Preheating start switch	*3-20*
21	Cigarette lighter	
22	Coolant temperature indicator (up to serial number AH00610) (not assigned)	
23	Round display element	
24	Drive pedal (left)	*3-28*
25	Drive pedal (right)	*3-28*
26	Drive lever (left)	*3-28*
27	Drive lever (right)	*3-28*
28	Vario warning light (8003 option) (not assigned)	
29	Stabiliser blade lever/pedal	
29A	Foot-operated tip switch for hydraulic quickhitch system (option)	
29B	Air vent	
29C	Switch panel on left-hand control lever base	
29D	Switch panel on right-hand control lever base	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

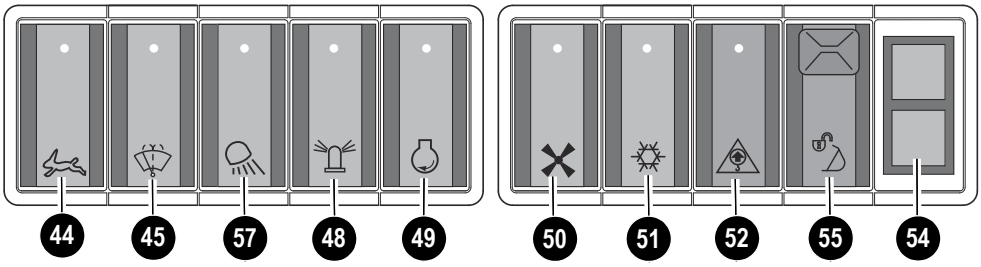
3.6 Control elements 75Z3 2/8003 2 (from serial no. AJ02793)



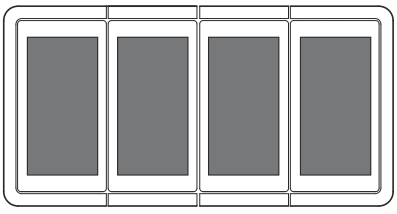
Right-hand switch panel



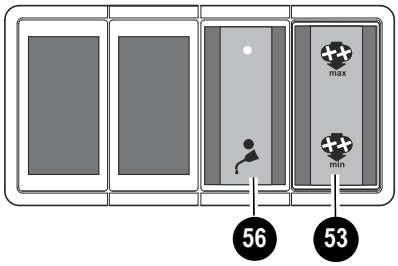
Right-hand switch panel (maximum assignment)



Switch panel on left-hand control lever base (not assigned)



Switch panel on right-hand control lever base



Quantity and position of switches depends on machine

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Pos.	Description	For more information see page
30	Air filter indicator light (red)	*3-14*
31	Cold starter indicator light (yellow)	*3-15*
32	Hydraulic oil filter indicator light (red)	*3-14*
33	Not assigned	
34	Alternator charge function indicator light (red)	*3-14*
35	Engine oil pressure indicator light (red)	*3-14*
36	Indicator light (red) – coolant temperature too high	*3-14*
37	Indicator light (red) – safe load indicator	*3-15*
38	Indicator light (green) – high speed enabled	*3-29*
39	Indicator light (red) – engine error	*3-15*
40	Fuel level indicator	*3-15*
41	Hour meter	*3-15*
42	Not assigned	
43	Coolant temperature indicator	*3-16*
44	High speed	*3-29*
45	Washer system	*3-40*
46	Working light	*3-34*
47	Roof lights (option)	*3-35*
48	Rotating beacon (option)	*3-36*
49	Automatic engine speed setting	*3-21*
50	Ventilation	*3-37*
51	Air conditioning (option)	*3-39*
52	Safe load indicator (option)	*3-107*
53	Pump flow rate of auxiliary hydraulics (8003 from serial number 8003 AJ02782)	*3-107*
54	Proportional controls (option)	*3-80*
55	Hydraulic quickhitch system (option)	*3-92*
56	Central lubrication system (option)	*5-37*
57	Roof lights (1st position)/working light (2nd position)	*3-35*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.7 Indicator lights and warning lights: overview



Hydraulic oil filter indicator light (red)

Indicates inadmissibly high pressure in the hydraulic return line to the tank. In this case:

☞ *Stop and park the machine.*

☞ *Have the hydraulic oil return filter checked and, if necessary, replaced by an authorised workshop*

☞ *The indicator light can come on briefly if the hydraulic oil is cold, but goes out again once operating temperature is reached.*



Air filter indicator light (red)

Comes on if air filter is contaminated

☞ *Stop the machine*

☞ *Stop the engine immediately and check the outside and inside filters*



Engine oil pressure indicator light (red)

Comes on if the engine oil pressure is too low. In this case:

☞ *Stop and park the machine.*

☞ *Stop the engine immediately and check the oil level*

The indicator light comes on when the ignition is turned on and goes out as soon as the engine runs.



Alternator charge function indicator light (red)

The V-belt or the charging circuit of the alternator is faulty if the indicator light comes on with the engine running. The battery is no longer charged.



Caution!

The coolant pump no longer runs if the V-belt is faulty. Danger of engine overheating or breakdown.
If the indicator light comes on with the engine running:

☞ *Stop the engine immediately and*

☞ *Have the cause repaired by an authorised workshop.*



Coolant temperature indicator light (red)

Comes on if the coolant temperature is too high.

☞ *Stop and park the machine.*



Danger!

Never open the radiator and never drain coolant if the engine is warm since the cooling system is under high pressure

–

Danger of burns

☞ *Wait at least 10 minutes after stopping the engine.*

☞ *Wear protective gloves and clothing.*

☞ *Open the cap to the first notch and release the pressure.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/



Cold starter indicator light (yellow)

Comes on if the key in the preheating start switch is in position **2**.

A glow plug preheats the air in the combustion chamber of the engine when the key is in this position.



Safe load indicator (option) light (red)

Comes on after reaching the authorised payload or load torque.

☞ *Reduce the load until the indicator light goes out.*



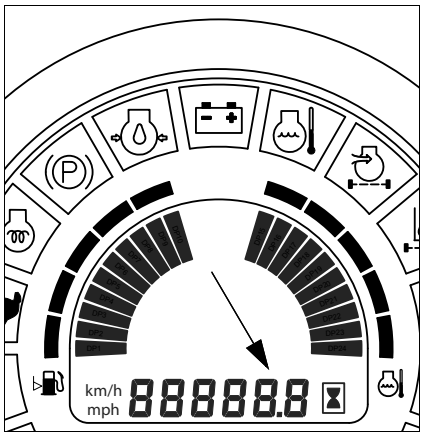
High speed indicator light (green)

☞ Comes on with high speed enabled.



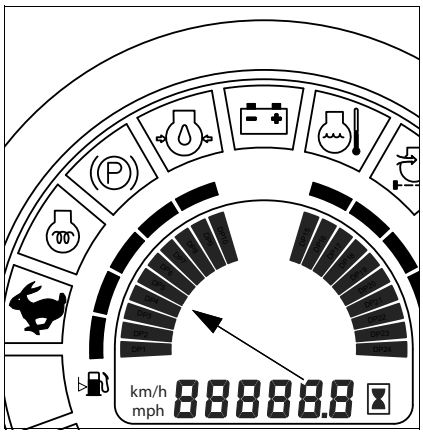
Indicator light (red) – engine error

Comes on in case of an engine error – *see chapter 4.2 Engine error codes:* on page 4-5.



Hour meter

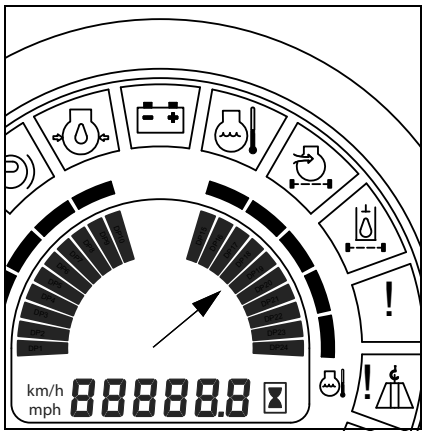
Counts the engine service hours with the engine running.



Fuel level indicator

Indicates the remaining amount of fuel in the tank.

https://truckmanualshub.com/



Coolant temperature indicator

Indicates the current coolant temperature of the machine.

Danger!

Never open the radiator and never drain coolant if the engine is warm since the cooling system is under high pressure

–

Danger of burns

☞ *Wait at least 10 minutes after stopping the engine.*

☞ *Wear protective gloves and clothing.*

☞ *Open the cap to the first notch and release the pressure.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.8 Putting into operation

Safety instructions

- Only use the steps and handles provided when entering and leaving the cab.
- Never use the controls or movable lines and cables as handles.
- Never get on or off a moving machine! Never jump off the machine.
- Refer to the corresponding lift capacity tables for the boom.

Putting the machine into operation for the first time

Important information

- The machine may be put into operation by authorised staff only
  – *see chapter 2.6 Selection and qualification of staff, basic responsibilities* on page 2-4 and – *see chapter 2 Safety instructions* on page 2-1 of this Operator's Manual.
- The staff must have read and understood this Operator's Manual before putting the machine into operation.
- The machine may only be used in technically perfect condition in accordance with its designated use and the instructions set forth in the Operator's Manual, and only by safety-conscious persons who are fully aware of the risks involved in operating the machine.
- Go through the "Start-up" checklist in the following chapter.

Running-in period

Handle the machine carefully during its first 50 operating hours.

The future performance and service life of the machine are heavily dependent on the observance of the following recommendations during the running-in period.

- Do not change engine speed abruptly.
- Avoid using the machine under heavy loads and/or at high speeds.
- Avoid abrupt acceleration, braking and changing driving direction.
- Do not run the engine at high speed for extended periods.
- Strictly observe the maintenance schedules in the appendix
  – *see chapter 5.22 Maintenance plan (overview)* on page 5-57.

Check lists

The checklists below are intended to assist you in checking and monitoring the machine before, during and after operation.

These checklists cannot claim to be exhaustive; they are merely intended as an aid for you in fulfilling your duties as a conscientious operator.

The checking and monitoring jobs listed below are described in greater detail in the following chapters.

If the answer to one of the following questions is NO, first rectify the cause of the fault before the machine can be put into operation.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Start-up checklist

Check the following points before putting the machine into operation:

No.	Question	✔
1	Enough fuel in the tank? (➠ *5-3*)	
2	Coolant level OK? (➠ *5-10*)	
3	Remove water in the diesel fuel prefilter (➠ *5-6*)	
4	Engine oil level OK? (➠ *5-7*)	
5	Oil level in hydraulic tank OK? (➠ *5-29*)	
6	Water level in washer tank OK? (➠ *3-40*)	
7	V-belt condition and tension checked? (➠ *5-25*)	
8	Lubrication points greased? (➠ *5-42*)	
9	Tracks checked for cracks, cuts etc. ? (➠ *5-33*)	
10	Lights, signals, indicators, warning lights and indicator lights OK? (➠ *3-34*)	
11	Dirt (e.g. mud, snow, ice, etc.) removed from all windows, mirrors, lights, footholds, drive pedals and control levers?	
12	Are all mirrors functional and adjusted correctly? Are other persons required to guide you?	
13	Control lever base folded up? (➠ *3-64*)	
14	Attachment safely locked? (➠ *3-90*)	
15	Engine and tank covers safely locked? (➠ *3-57*)	
16	Especially after cleaning, maintenance or repair work: ➥ Rags, tools and other loose objects removed?	
17	Correct seat position? (➠ *3-41*)	
18	Seat belt fastened? (➠ *3-47*)	

Operation checklist

After starting the engine and during operation, check and observe the following points:

No.	Question	✔
1	Indicator lights for engine oil pressure and alternator charge function gone out? (➠ *3-14*, *3-14*)	
2	Temperature indicator for engine coolant in normal range? (➠ *3-14*, *3-16*)	
3	Do the drive pedals and control levers work correctly? (➠ *3-28*)	
4	Anyone dangerously close to the machine?	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Parking checklist

Check and observe the following points when parking the machine:

No.	Question	✔
1	Attachments lowered to the ground? (➠ *3-72*)	
2	Stabiliser blade lowered to the ground?	
3	Control lever base folded up? (➠ *3-64*)	
3	Cab locked, especially if the machine cannot be supervised? (➠ *3-62*)	
When parking on public roads:		
4	Machine adequately secured? Machine also secured with chocks under the tracks to prevent it from rolling away?	
When parking on slopes:		
5	Machine adequately secured? Machine also secured with chocks under the tracks to prevent it from rolling away?	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.9 Driving the machine

Preheating start switch

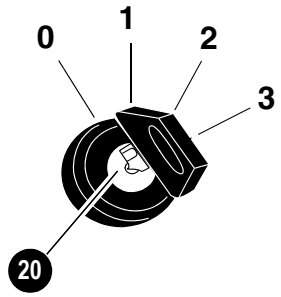


Fig. 72: Preheating start switch

Position	Function	Power consumer
0	Insert or remove the ignition key	None
1	ON/drive position	Feed pump switched on ➥ Indicator lights come on All functions are operational ➥ Indicator lights come on ➥ Shrill sound
2	Preheats the engine (10 – 15 seconds)	Intake manifold preheating
3	Starts the engine	➥ Starter is actuated ➥ Indicator lights must go out

Throttle

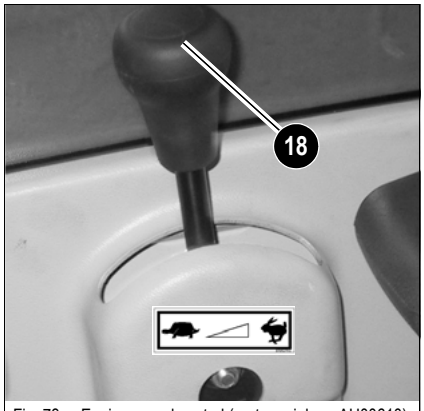


Fig. 73: Engine speed control (up to serial no. AH00610)

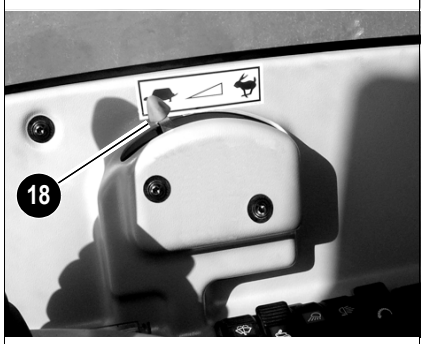


Fig. 73: Engine speed control (up to serial no. AH02749)

☞ *Speed can be set continuosly with throttle **18**.*

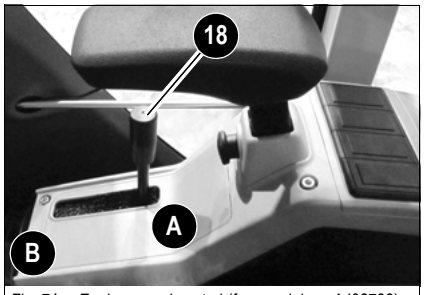


Fig. 74: Engine speed control (from serial no. AJ02793)

☞ *Speed can be set continuosly with throttle* **18**.

- Position **A**: idling speed
- Position **B**: max. engine speed

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.10 Automatic engine speed setting

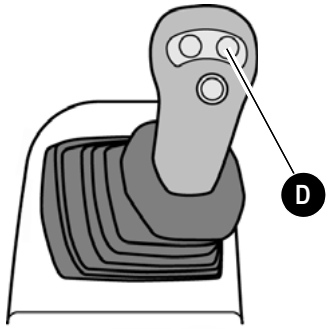


Fig. 75: Engine speed control (up to serial no. AH00610)

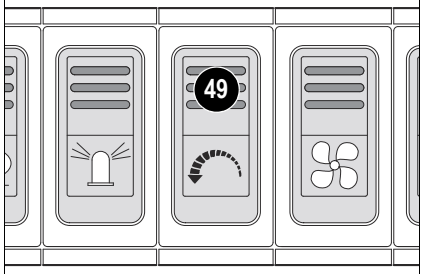


Fig. 75: Automatic engine speed setting (up to serial no. AH02749)

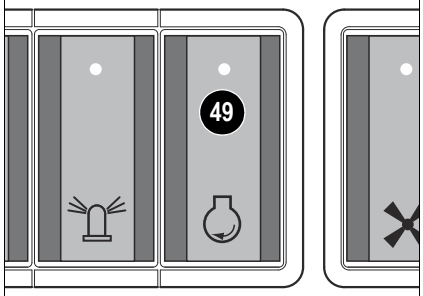


Fig. 75: Automatic engine speed setting (from serial no. AJ02793)

Up to serial no. AH00610 (option)

Engine speed control with the right-hand control lever (option):

☞ *Press button **D** on the right-hand control lever.*

☞ *Speed can now be set continuosly with throttle **18**.*

☞ *Pressing button **D** on the control lever sets the engine speed back to idling speed even if the throttle lever is in maximum position*

☞ *Pressing button **D** again on the control lever automatically sets the engine speed back to the speed set previously with the throttle.*

From serial no. AH00611 (standard)

Diesel engine speed is automatically reduced to idling after 5 seconds if no hydraulic functions are carried out and if the automatic engine speed setting (option) is enabled.

As soon as a hydraulic function is carried out with the control levers, diesel engine speed is automatically increased again to the engine speed adjusted with the throttle.

Automatic engine speed setting		
ON	Press switch **49** down	Indicator light in switch **49** comes on
OFF	Press switch **49** up	Indicator light in switch **49** goes out

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.11 Before starting the engine

Notice!

All controls must be within easy reach. You must be able to move the drive levers to their limit positions.

Notice!

Operate the machine only on adequately ventilated premises. Ensure sufficient ventilation on enclosed premises.

☞ *Adjust seat position and rearview mirror – see chapter 3.24 Seat (standard) on page 3-41.*

☞ *Fasten your seat belt – see chapter 3.26 Seat belt on page 3-47.*

☞ *Fold up the left-hand control lever base.*

☞ *Check whether all levers and pedals are in neutral position.*

☞ *Move the throttle to the centre position (between minimum and maximum) if the engine is cold.*

☞ Remove dirt (e.g. mud, snow, ice, etc.) from all windows, mirrors, lights, footholds, drive pedals and control levers.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Starting the engine: general

- The starter cannot be actuated if the engine is already running (start repeat interlock).
- Do not run the starter for more than 10 seconds.
- Wait about 1 minute so the battery can recover before trying again.

Procedure

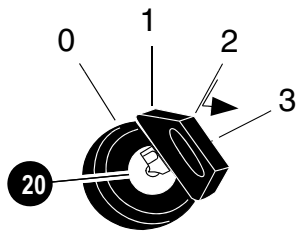


Fig. 76: Preheating start switch

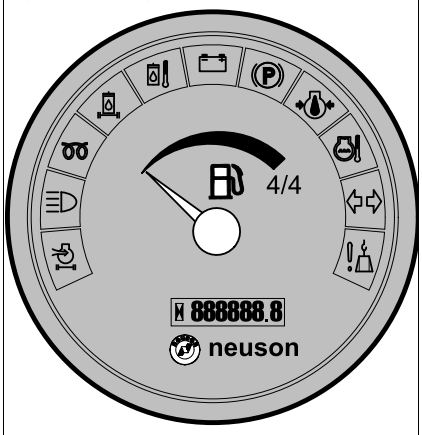


Fig. 77: Indicator lights up to serial number AH00610

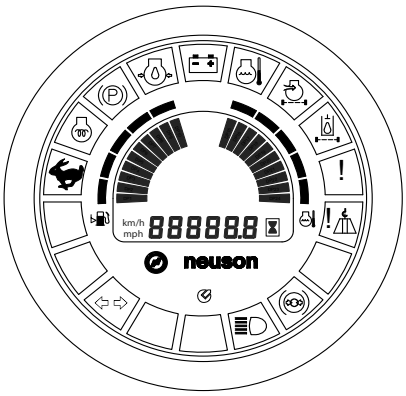


Fig. 76: Indicator lights from serial number AH00611

Caution!

Actuating the preheating system too long can damage the preheater.

☞ *Never preheat the engine more than 20 seconds*

After you have completed the starting preparations:

☞ *Insert the ignition key in preheating start switch **20**.*

☞ *Turn the ignition key to position "**1**".*

☞ *Check whether all indicator lights come on.*

☞ *Replace defective indicator lights immediately.*

☞ *Turn the ignition key to position "**2**" and hold it in this position for about 5 seconds.*

➥ The intake air is preheated.

☞ *Turn the ignition key to position "**3**" and hold it in this position until the engine starts.*

➥ If the engine does not start after 10 seconds.

☞ Stop starting the engine and try again after 30 seconds.

➥ If the engine still does not start after the second try.

☞ Contact an authorised workshop for troubleshooting.

➥ As soon as the engine runs:

☞ *Release the ignition key.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.12 Starting with the drive interlock (option)

Drive interlock (up to serial no. AH02749)

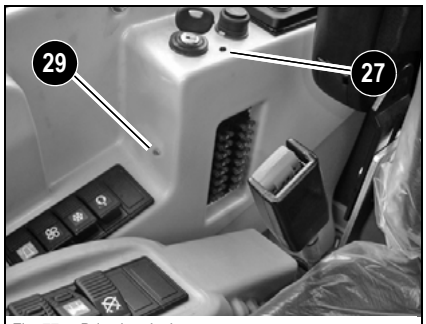


Fig. 77: Drive interlock

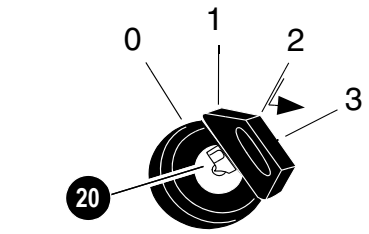


Fig. 77: Preheating start switch

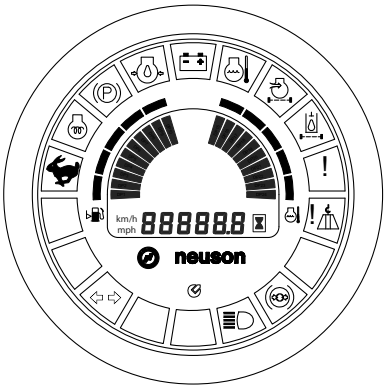


Fig. 77: Indicator lights

After you have completed the starting preparations:

☞ *Approach the transponder key to about 2 cm (0.78 in) from the emitter/receiver unit **29**.*

☞ *The machine can be started as soon as the red indicator light **27** goes out.*

☞ *Insert the ignition key in preheating start switch **20** within 30 seconds and*

☞ *Turn the ignition key at least to position "**1**.*

☞ *Check whether all indicator lights come on.*

☞ *Have defective indicator lights immediately replaced by an authorised workshop.*

☞ *Turn the ignition key to position **2** and hold it in this position for about 3 – 5 seconds*

➥ The intake air is preheated.

☞ *Turn the ignition key to position **3** and hold it in this position until the engine starts.*

➥ If the engine does not start after 10 seconds.

☞ Interrupt the start procedure and try again after about 1 minute.

➥ If the engine still does not start after the second try.

☞ Contact an authorised workshop for troubleshooting.

➥ As soon as the engine runs:

☞ *Release the ignition key.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Drive interlock – internal transponder (from serial no. AJ02793)

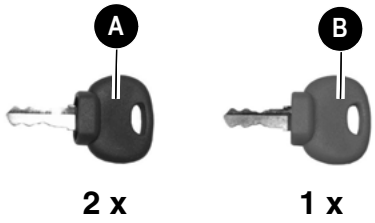


Fig. 78: Drive interlock key

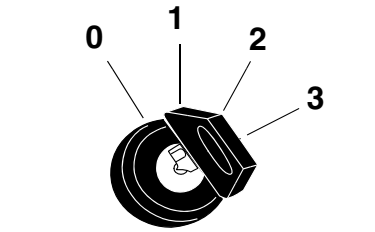


Fig. 79: Ignition lock positions

A = operator's key (blue key)

For starting the machine. Scope of delivery includes 2 keys.

B = master key (red key)

Notice!

Store the master key in a safe place. It is only used for coding new keys.
All keys are deleted if the key remains in position **1** for more than 20 seconds.

The machine can be started without carrying out any further settings.

Coding a new key

- Insert master key **B** in the ignition lock.
- Turn the key to position **1** for a maximum 5 seconds.
- Turn the key to position **0** and remove master key **B.**
- Now insert the new key or the key requiring coding in the ignition lock and turn it to position **1** within 15 seconds.
- This action registers the key.

The procedure is automatically cancelled if no key requiring coding is detected within 15 seconds. Several keys requiring coding can be inserted one after another in the ignition lock. Each key must then remain at least 1 second in position **1**. Coding can be carried out for a maximum 10 keys.

Deleting coded keys

Deleting coded keys is necessary whenever a coded key is lost.

- Insert master key **B** in the ignition lock.
- Leave the key in position **1** for a minimum 20 seconds.
- All coded keys are deleted after 20 seconds, and all existing keys can be re-coded.

The master key code is not deleted during deletion.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.13 Jump-starting the engine (supply battery)



Safety instructions

- Never jump-start the engine if the battery of the machine is frozen – danger of explosion.
  ☞ Dispose of a frozen battery.
- The machine must not touch the jump-starting vehicle when connected with jump leads – risk of sparking.
- The external power source must deliver 12 V; higher supply voltages will damage the electrical system of the vehicles.
- Use only authorised jump leads which conform to the safety requirements and which are in perfect condition.
- The jump lead connected to the positive **+** terminal of the starting battery must never be brought into connection with electrically conductive vehicle parts – *danger of short circuit.*
- Route the jump leads so they cannot catch on rotating components in the engine compartment.

Procedure

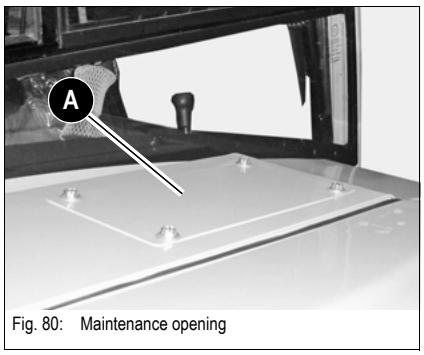


Fig. 80: Maintenance opening

Notice!

The battery is accessed via maintenance opening **A** outside the machine to the right of the cab.

☞ *Drive the jump-starting vehicle close enough to the machine so that the jump leads can reach to connect the two batteries.*

☞ *Let the engine of the jump-starting vehicle run.*

☞ *First connect one end of the red jump lead (+) to the + terminal of the flat battery, then connect the other end to the + terminal of the starting battery.*

☞ *Connect one end of the black jump lead (–) to the – terminal of the starting battery.*

☞ *Connect the other end of the black jump lead (–) onto a solid metal component fimly mounted on the engine block or onto the engine block itself. Do not connect it to the negative terminal of the flat battery, as otherwise explosive gas emerging from the battery can ignite if sparks are formed.*

☞ *Start the engine of the machine with the flat battery.*

Once the engine has started:

☞ *With the engine running, disconnect both jump leads in exactly the reverse order (first the – terminal, then the + terminal).*

➥ This prevents sparking in the vicinity of the battery.

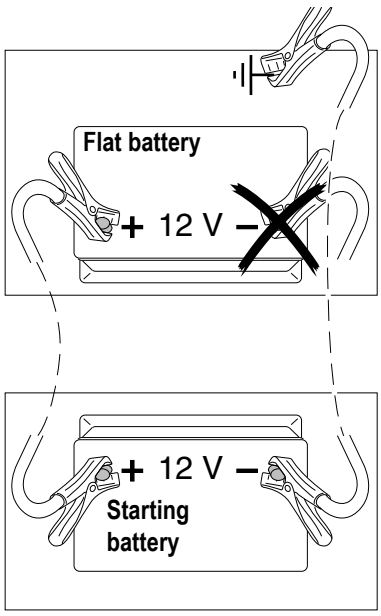


Fig. 81: Starting aid with jump leads

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.14 Starting at low temperatures

☞ *Turn the ignition key to position **2** and hold it in this position for about 3 – 5 seconds.*

➥ Engine is preheated.

☞ *Turn the ignition key to position **3** and hold it in this position until the engine starts.*

➥ If the engine does not start after 10 seconds.

☞ Interrupt the start procedure and try again after about 1 minute.

➥ If the engine still does not start after the second try.

☞ *Contact an authorised workshop for troubleshooting.*

☞ *Release the ignition key.*

If the engine has started:

Notice!

In general, a battery delivers less energy in cold conditions. Therefore ensure that the battery is always well charged.

3.15 When the engine has started

☞ *Check whether all indicator lights have gone out*

☞ *Let the engine warm up.*

At cold temperatures:

☞ *Increase the engine speed slowly.*

☞ *Do not run the engine at full load until it has reached its operating temperature.*

Let the engine warm up

After the engine has started, allow it to warm up at slightly increased idling speed until it reaches its operating temperature of 71 °C (160 °F) (coolant). Run the engine without load during the warm-up phase (fold up the left-hand control lever base). During the warm-up phase, check for unusual noise, exhaust colour, leaks, malfunctions or damage. In case of malfunctions, damage or leaks, park and secure the machine, and find out the cause for the damage and have it repaired.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.16 Special instructions for driving on public roads

The machine is subject to the:

- Applicable legal regulations of your country

Also observe the applicable regulations for accident prevention of your country.

Drive position

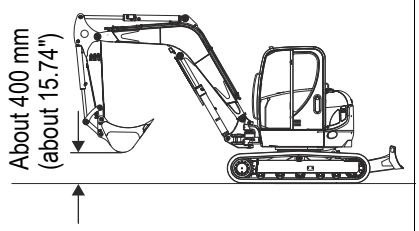


Fig. 82: Drive position

- Adjust the seat, head rest and armrest to the user's weight and size.
- Set the machine to drive position:
  - Position the machine as shown.
  - Position the boom at the centre and raise it about 400 mm (15.74 in) off the ground.

Notice!

When driving, raise the stabiliser blade sufficiently high off the ground to avoid ground contact on rough terrain.

Drive levers

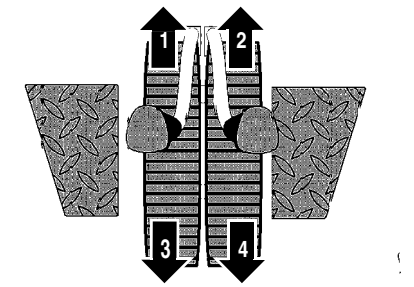


Fig. 83: Drive levers/drive pedals (up to serial no. AH02749)

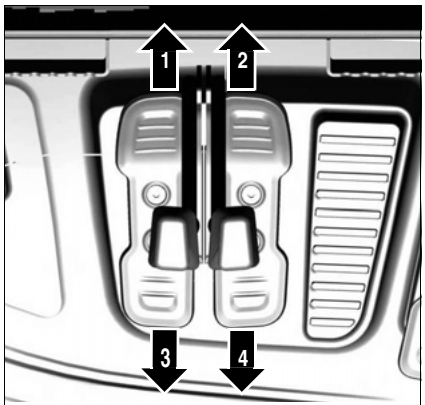


Fig. 84: Drive levers/drive pedals (from serial no. AJ02793)

Danger!

Rotating through 180° inverts the drive lever functions (the stabiliser blade is at the rear).

Danger of accidents.

☞ *Bear in mind the stabiliser blade's position.*

The stabiliser blade side is the front side.

Raise the boom and the stabiliser blade.

The machine can be moved either with the drive levers or with the pedals.

Position	Function	
1 2	Push forwards Push forwards	Machine moves forwards
3 4	Pull backwards Pull backwards	Machine moves backwards
3 2	Pull backwards Push forwards	Machine turns to the left
1 4	Push forwards Pull backwards	Machine turns to the right

Forwards or reverse drive speed depends on the position of the drive levers or the drive pedals, and of the position of the high-speed switch.

Notice!

Ensure that both tracks move as you change direction in order to avoid unnecessary abrasion.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

High speed

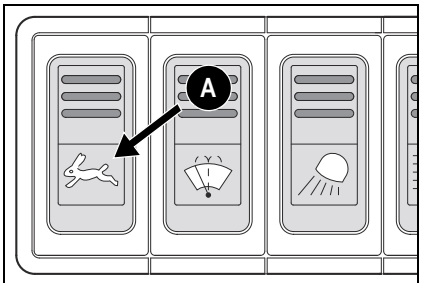


Fig. 85: High speed switch (up to serial no. AH02749)

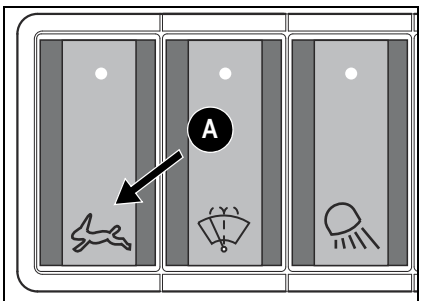


Fig. 86: High speed switch (from serial no. AJ02793)

The machine has two drive speeds which can be selected as follows:

☞ *Press switch **A**,*
– see chapter 3.6 Control elements 75Z3 2/8003 2 (from serial no. AJ02793) on page 3-12

➥ The machine now moves at higher speed.

➥ Indicator light 38 in the round display element comes on
– see Control elements 75Z3 2/8003 2 (from serial no. AJ02793) on page 3-12.

The drive gear shifts to second speed after high speed is selected, the machine moves at higher speed. In case of increased resistance (grading, changing direction, travelling uphill), the drive gear shifts to the lower speed. The machine automatically shifts back to second speed is soon as there is no resistance.

Notice!

Reduced tractive power in high speed can affect machine handling when cornering.

Moving off

Notice!

The machine will not move off unless the left-hand control lever is folded down.

After starting the engine:

☞ *The alternator charge indicator light goes out.*

☞ *Press the drive pedal slowly.*

➥ Machine moves off.

Hydraulic brake

The pedals automatically return to their initial positions as soon as they are released, which creates sufficient hydraulic braking effect.
When driving downhill, the automatic hydraulic brake prevents the machine from “racing”. The machine does not run any faster than the admissible drive speed.

Mechanical brake

The parking brake is designed as a negative-action and hydraulically actuated multi-disc brake.
This brake is automatically applied after some time as soon as the drive levers are in neutral position.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.17 Working on slopes

Follow these safety instructions carefully when driving on slopes, in order to avoid accidents.

- Check track tension to prevent the tracks from coming off.
- Drive on slopes only on firm ground.
- Raise the boom about 20 – 30 cm (0.79 – 1.18 in) off the ground and position it straight ahead at the centre of the machine. Lower the boom immediately in an emergency, in order to stop the machine more easily.
- Place the cab with the front side upwards as you drive uphill.
- Place the cab with the front side downwards as you drive downhill.
- Bear in mind the following instructions when driving downhill or uphill:
  - Keep the drive lever near the neutral position
  - Carry out slow and smooth drive movements
  - Avoid sudden drive movements
  - Reduce the engine speed
  - Do not use high speed
- Avoid reversing when driving downhill.
- Drive slowly on slippery ground (e.g. meadows, leaves, wet steel plates and ice). The machine can slip even if the ground is level. If the engine stops as you drive across a slope, immediately put the control levers to neutral position and start the engine again.
- If the tracks slip as you drive uphill and if it is not possible to move with the force of the tracks alone, do not apply pressure with the boom to move the machine.

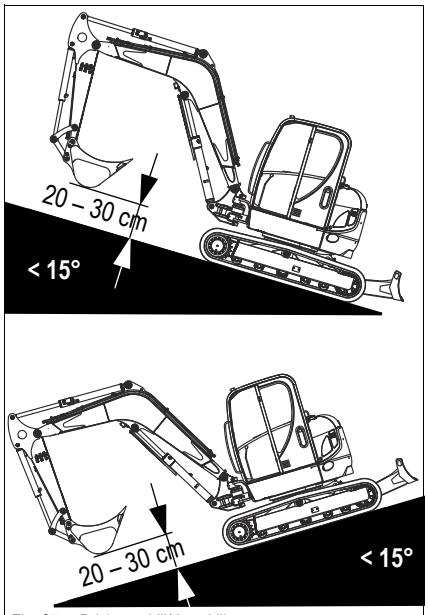
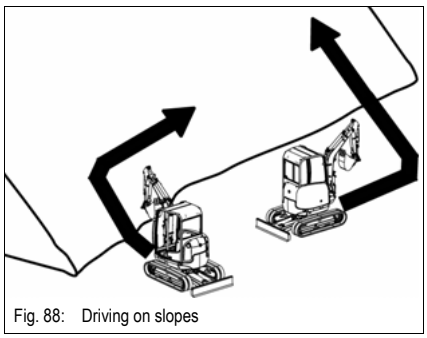


Fig. 87: Driving uphill/downhill

Caution!

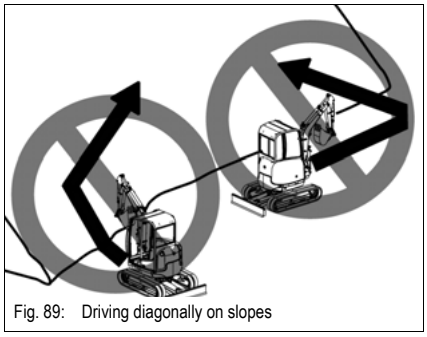
Danger of tipping over.

- Always drive straight ahead when driving uphill or downhill. Always keep the boom on the downhill side of the machine.
- When changing position, do not exceed a maximum longitudinal inclination of 15° and a maximum lateral inclination of 10°.


Fig. 88: Driving on slopes

Notice!

Change your driving direction on level ground. This may take more time but is decisively safer.


Fig. 89: Driving diagonally on slopes

Caution!

Driving diagonally on slopes is forbidden.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

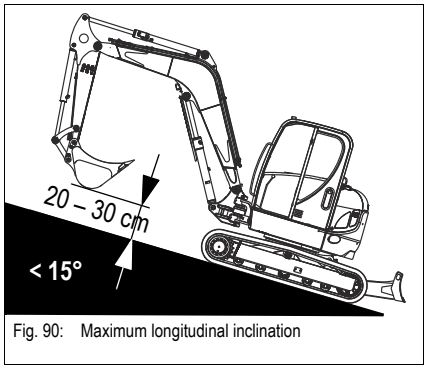


Fig. 90: Maximum longitudinal inclination

- Do not exceed a maximum longitudinal inclination of 15°.
- This applies for instance to driving on:
  - Slopes
  - Hollows
  - Obstacles

Caution!

Danger of tipping over.

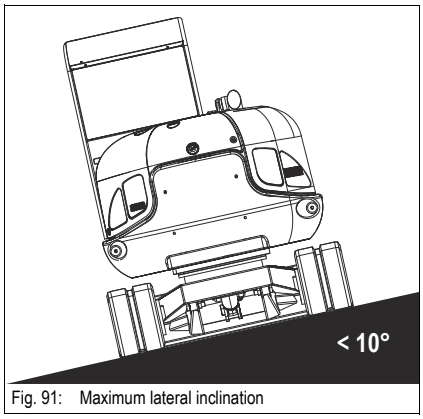


Fig. 91: Maximum lateral inclination

- Do not exceed a maximum lateral inclination of 10°.
- This applies for instance to driving on:
  - Slopes
  - Hollows
  - Obstacles

Caution!

Danger of tipping over.

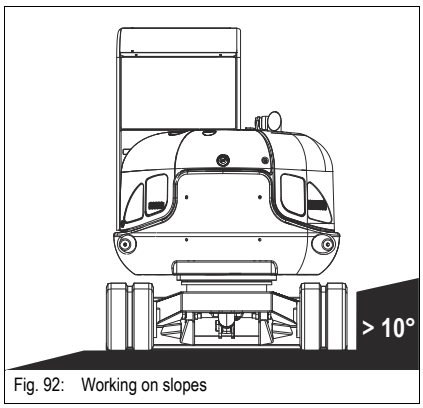


Fig. 92: Working on slopes

- Do not turn or swivel the upper carriage and the equipment when driving downhill or uphill with a full bucket.
  - This may be carried out only on a level surface to ensure safe machine operation.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.18 Stabiliser blade operation

Danger!

The stabiliser blade lever is cannot be blocked: in case of unintentional operation –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Do not touch the control lever for the stabiliser blade if it is not required for working.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Ensure that no-one is in the danger zone when working with the stabiliser blade.*

☞ *Once work with the stabiliser blade is over, lower it to the ground.*

Caution!

Lowering the stabiliser blade too deeply into the ground can create a high resistance.

☞ *Slightly raise the stabiliser blade.*

☞ *The clearance between the stabiliser blade and the ground should be about 1 cm (0.39 in).*

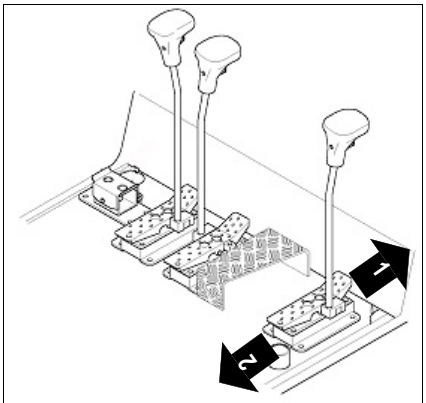


Fig. 93: Stabiliser blade operation (up to serial no. AH02749)

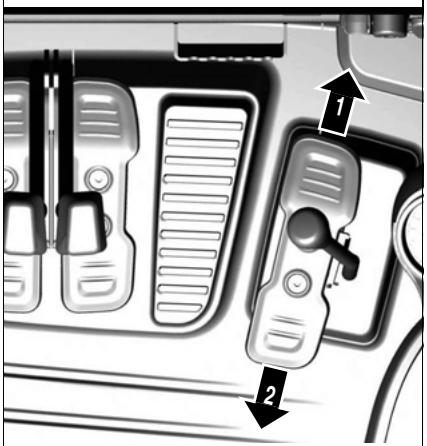


Fig. 93: Stabiliser blade operation (from serial no. AJ02793)

Position	Function	
1	Push forwards	Stabiliser blade is lowered
2	Pull backwards	Stabiliser blade is raised

The stabiliser blade can also be operated with the pedal.

Notice!

Check the position of the stabiliser blade before driving the machine.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.19 Parking the machine

Danger!

Always park the machine on firm ground –

Danger of accidents

☞ Stop the machine on firm, level and horizontal ground.

☞ Position the boom straight ahead at the centre of the machine and lower it.

☞ Lower the stabiliser blade to the ground.

Caution!

Never stop the engine under full load, otherwise it can be damaged due to overheating.

☞ *Let the engine run at idling speed with no load for at least 5 minutes before you switch it off.*

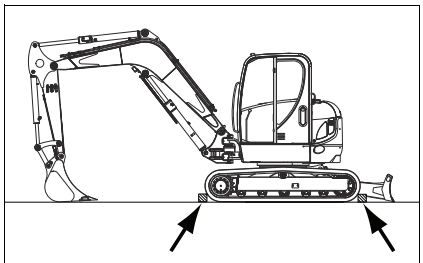


Fig. 94: Parking the machine

- Stop the engine.
- Operate the joystick repeatedly to release the pressure in the hydraulic system.
- Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.
- Fold the control lever base up.
- Close the windows and the door.
- Leave the cab.
- Close and lock all covers.
- Secure the tracks accordingly (e.g. chocks, etc.).

Notice!

Secure the machine against unauthorised operation.

- Fold the control lever base up.
- Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.
- Lock the cab.

Parking the machine on slopes

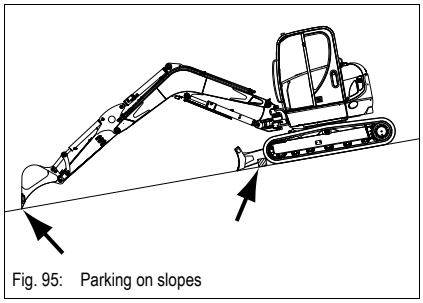


Fig. 95: Parking on slopes

- Lower the bucket *into* the ground on the downhill side of the machine.
- Place the stabiliser blade downhill and lower it to the ground.
- Secure the tracks accordingly (e.g. chocks, etc.) so the machine cannot move.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.20 Light system

Working light

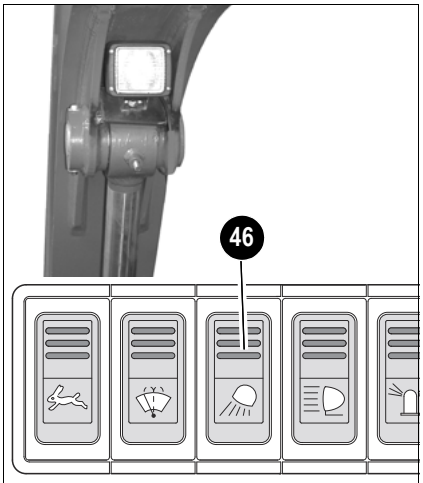


Fig. 96: Working light (up to serial no. AH02749)

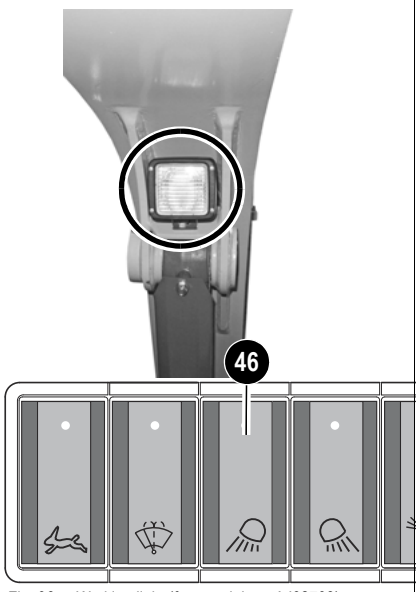


Fig. 96: Working light (from serial no. AJ02793)

The switch panel for the light system is located on the instrument panel.

Working light		
ON	Press switch **46** down	The working light comes on, the indicator light in switch ***46*** comes on
OFF	Press switch **46** up	The working light goes out, the indicator light in switch ***46*** goes out

Notice!

Switch on the working light in poor light conditions or during the night.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Front and rear roof lights (option) (up to serial no. AH02749)

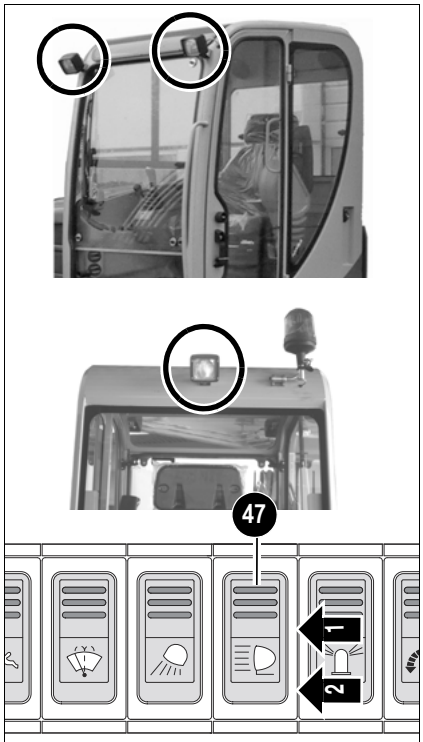


Fig. 97: Roof lights (up to serial no. AH02749)

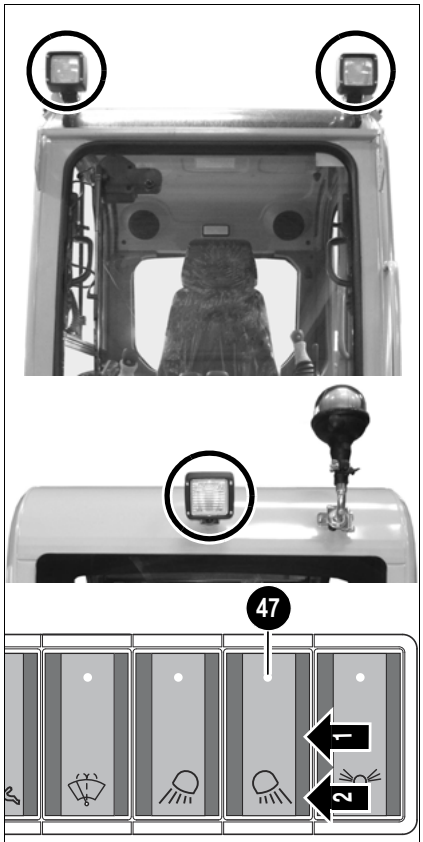


Fig. 98: Roof lights (from serial no. AJ02793)

Danger!

The roof lights can dazzle motorists on public roads.

☞ *Use them during work operation only if no-one can be dazzled.*

Roof lights (option)		
1st position	Press switch **47** to the **1st** position	The front roof lights come on, Indicator light in switch comes on
2nd position	Press switch **47** to the **2nd** position	Both front roof lights, and the rear roof light, come on
OFF	Press switch **47** up	All roof lights are switched off, Indicator light in switch goes out

Notice!

Switch on the lights in poor light conditions or during the night.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Rotating beacon (option)

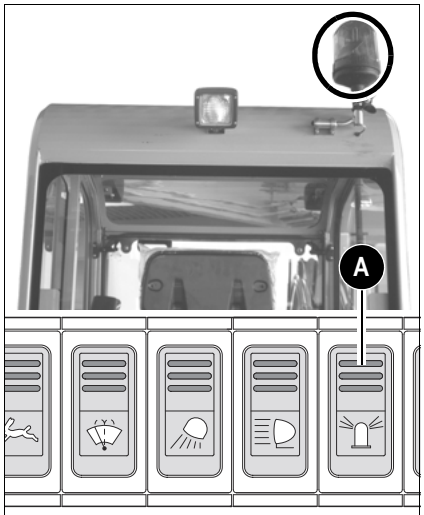


Fig. 99: Rotating beacon switch (up to serial no. AH02749)

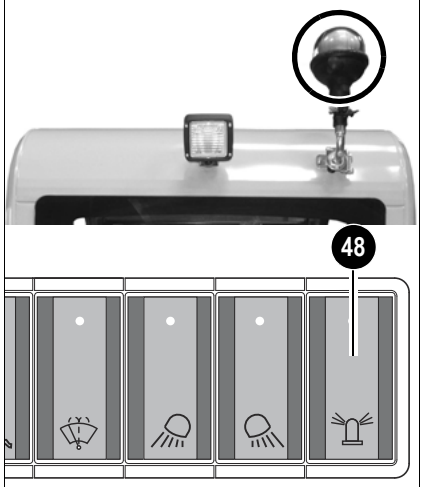


Fig. 99: Rotating beacon switch (from serial no. AJ02793)

Rotating beacon (option)		
ON	Press switch **48** down	The rotating beacon comes on
OFF	Press switch **48** up	The rotating beacon is switched off

Notice!

Observe the legal regulations of your country for operating the rotating beacon.

Interior light

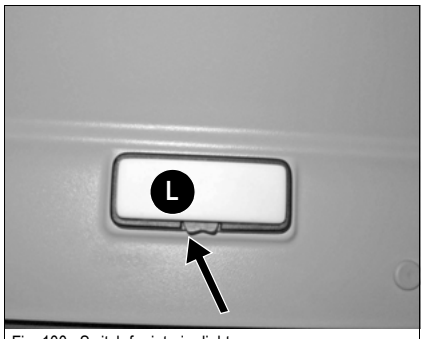


Fig. 100: Switch for interior light

Interior light		
ON	Press the switch to position **L**	The interior light comes on
OFF	Press the switch to the centre position or to the right	The interior light goes out

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.21 Cab heating and ventilation

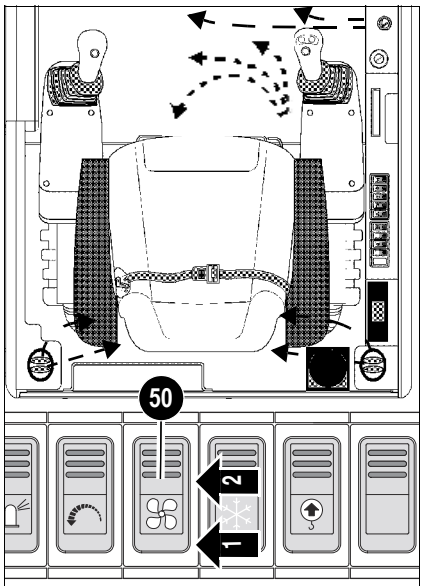


Fig. 101: Air circulation in cab (up to serial no. AH02749)

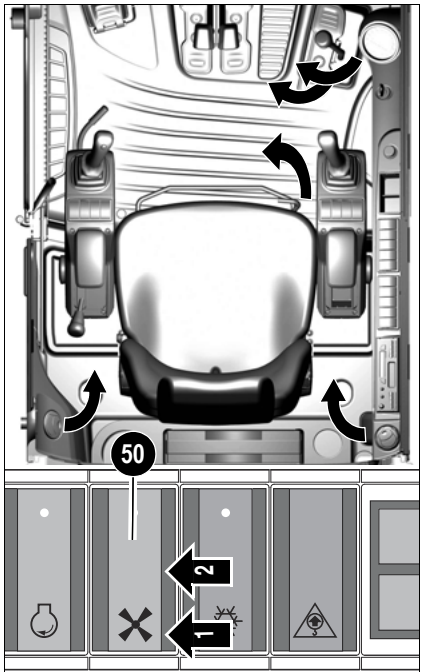


Fig. 102: Air circulation in cab (from serial no. AJ02793)

- The cab is fitted with five air nozzles. Each nozzle can be closed and directed separately.
- Open or close the nozzles as required to vent or heat the cab.
- Do not place flammable or explosive material or objects near the nozzles.
- Air the cab from time to time.

Notice!

The best defrosting results for the front window are achieved by opening both nozzles at the front right and in the leg room.

- Direct the nozzles to the front window.

Ventilation (fresh air)		
1st position	Press switch **50** down one step	Low fan speed
2nd position	Press switch **50** down two steps	High fan speed
OFF	Press switch **50** all the way down	Fan is switched off

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Summer/winter operation (up to serial no. AD04617)

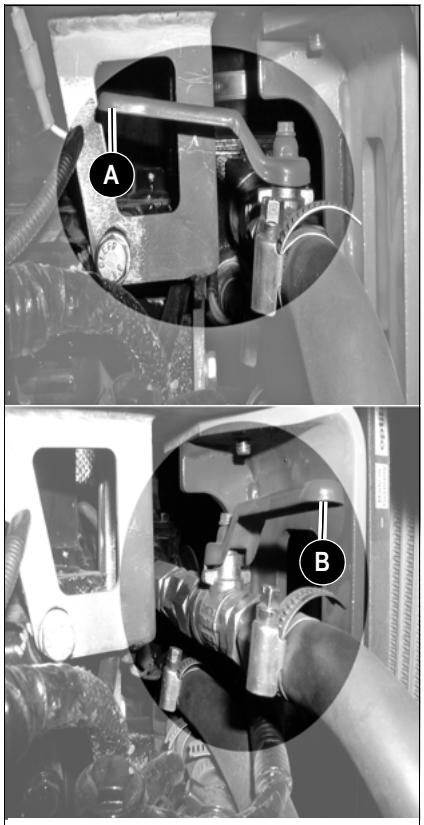


Fig. 103: Summer/winter operation

Danger!

Always stop the engine for switching over from summer to winter operation and vice versa

Danger of personal injury

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Open the engine cover only if the engine is at a standstill.*

☞ *Open the engine compartment.*

☞ *Turn the ball-type cock as described, to summer or winter operation.*

Position	Function	
A	Summer operation	Air conditioning
B	Winter operation	Heating water circuit open

☞ *Close the engine compartment – see Engine cover on page 3-57.*

Notice!

Summer and winter operation does not depend on the season, adjust according to personal requirements.

Heating controls (from serial no. AD04618)

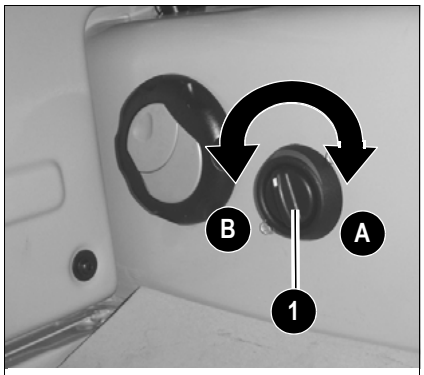


Fig. 104: Heating controls (up to serial no. AH02749)

Cooling:

☞ *Turn heater valve **1** towards **A** until you reach the required temperature.*

Heating:

☞ *Turn heater valve **1** towards **B** until you reach the required temperature.*

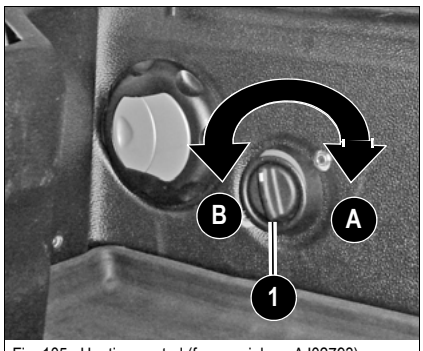


Fig. 105: Heating control (from serial no. AJ02793)

Notice!

In order to reach the required temperature quickly, we recommend carrying out only small step-by-step changes of the setting on control valve **1**.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.22 Air conditioning (option)

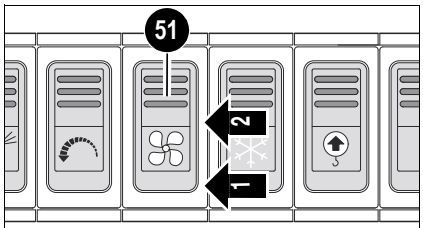


Fig. 106: Air conditioning (up to serial no. AH02749)

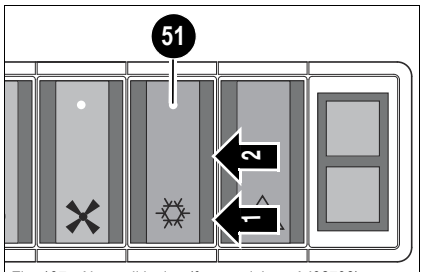


Fig. 107: Air conditioning (from serial no. AJ02793)

- In order to achieve best cooling results:

☞ *Open both nozzles on the left and right behind the seat and direct them to the roof. Keep all other nozzles closed*
– see chapter 3.21 Cab heating and ventilation on page 3-37.

➥ This setting ensures good air circulation in the cab as the cool air flows to the cab floor.

- Air the cab from time to time.

Air conditioning		
OFF	Press switch **51** up	
1st position	Press ventilation switch **51** to **1st** position (down)	Low fan speed
2nd position	Press ventilation switch **51** to **2nd** position (down)	High fan speed

Notice!

Let the air conditioning system run once a month for at least 10 – 15 minutes, to ensure the system's full capability and the durability of the seals.

Recirculated air mode

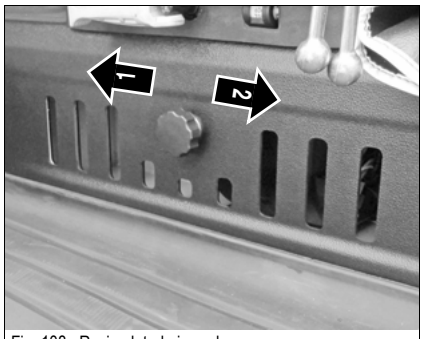


Fig. 108: Recirculated air mode

Position	Function	
1	Release the button and slide to the left	Recirculated-air mode switched on
2	Release the button and slide to the right	Recirculated-air mode switched off

In recirculated-air mode, the air in the cab is taken in and cooled, and a small amount of fresh air is added. If recirculated-air mode is switched off, only fresh air is used for heating, ventilating or cooling the cab.

Notice!

Open the windows and the door so the hot air can escape. Then switch on air conditioning, and close the windows and the doors. Keep all windows and doors closed to achieve best cooling results.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.23 Wiper/wash system

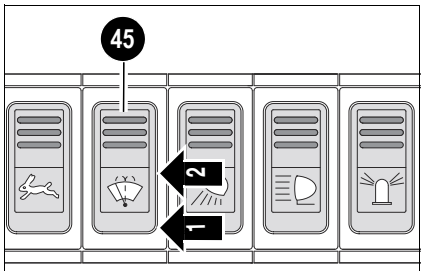


Fig. 109: Front wiper switch (up to serial no. AH02749)

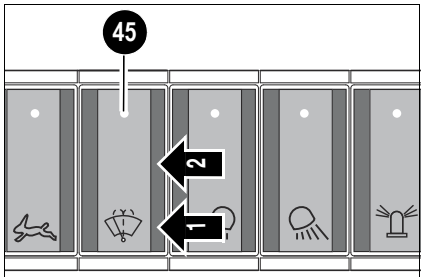


Fig. 110: Front wiper switch (from serial no. AJ02793)

Front window wiper		
OFF	Press switch **45** up	Front wiper returns to base position
1st position	Press switch **45** to the **1st** position (down)	Front wiper is on
2nd position	Press switch **45** to the **2nd** position (down)	Pump sprays washer water on the window

Notice!

Do not actuate the washer system with the front window folded up. Do not actuate the washer system if the tank is empty, otherwise this can damage the electric pump.

Tank for washer system



Fig. 111: Tank for washer system

The filler inlet of tank **A** is located in the engine compartment in front of the radiator.

Notice!

Fill with clean tap water only.
Add a suitable cleaning agent if required.
In winter:
add antifreeze for washer systems to the clean tap water.
Refer to the antifreeze instructions for further information on concentrations.
The rubber diaphragm in the non-return valve in the housing conglutinates **if stored in a dry condition over a longer period of time**. In order to restore this valve's function, moisten this non-return valve, dip it briefly in water and then blow air through it.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.24 Seat (standard)

Danger!

Never change the seat position when driving or working – *see Before starting the engine* on page 3-22

Danger of accidents

☞ *Adjust the seat before moving the machine.*

Caution!

Adjusting the backrest can damage the rear window.

☞ *Ensure that the backrest does not touch the rear window as you adjust backrest inclination.*

☞ *Select a seat position which will not damage the window when working with the machine.*

Notice!

Adjust the seat to the operator's weight before putting the machine into operation. Adjust the seat suspension correctly to ensure a high level of ride comfort.

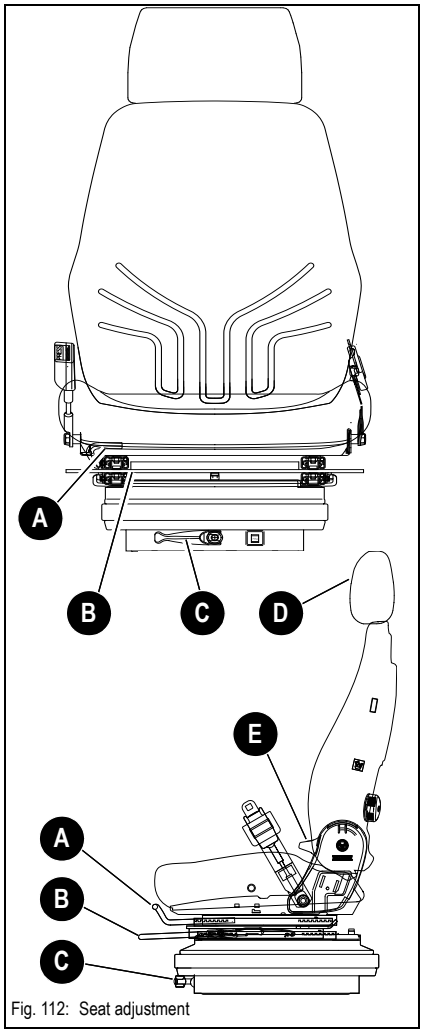


Fig. 112: Seat adjustment

Pos.	Function
A	Seat depth adjustment
B	Horizontal adjustment
C	Weight adjustment
D	Head-rest adjustment
E	Backrest adjustment

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Seat depth adjustment

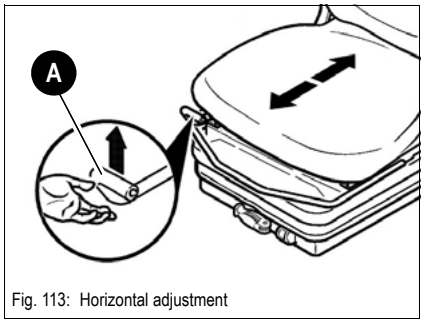


Fig. 113: Horizontal adjustment

Sit down on the seat.

☞ *Pull lever **A** upwards and at the same time*

☞ Move the seat surface forwards or backwards.

☞ *The lever must engage in the required position.*

Horizontal adjustment

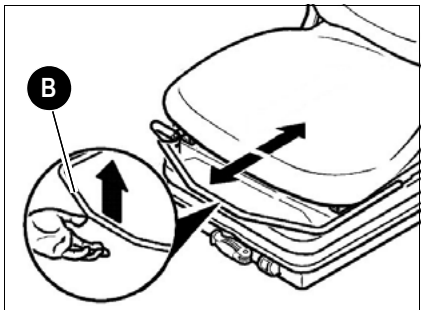


Fig. 114: Horizontal adjustment

Sit down on the seat.

☞ *Pull lever **B** upwards and at the same time*

☞ Move the seat forwards or backwards.

☞ *The lever must engage in the required position.*

Weight adjustment

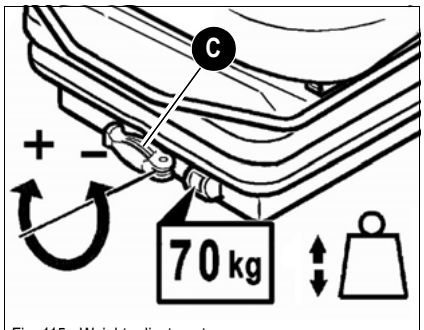


Fig. 115: Weight adjustment

Sit down on the seat.

To adjust to a higher weight:

☞ Turn lever **C** to the left.

To adjust to a lower weight:

☞ Turn lever **C** to the right.

Adjusting the head rest

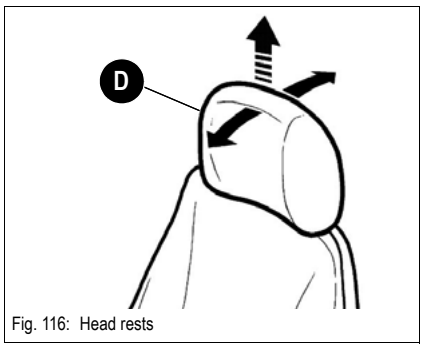


Fig. 116: Head rests

☞ *Head rest **D** can be adjusted vertically by raising or lowering it in notched positions.*

☞ *Inclination can be adjusted by pressing the head rest forwards or backwards.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Backrest adjustment

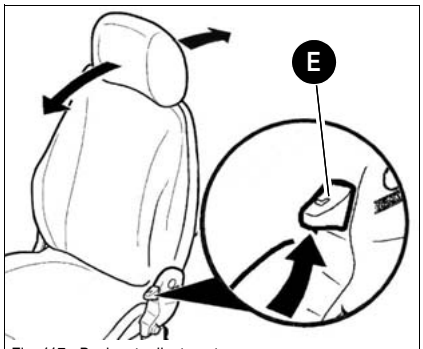


Fig. 117: Backrest adjustment

Sit down on the seat.

☞ *Adjust by pulling lever **E** in the direction of the arrow.*

☞ *Lean back to push the backrest into the required position.*

☞ *The lever must engage in the required position.*

Height adjustment

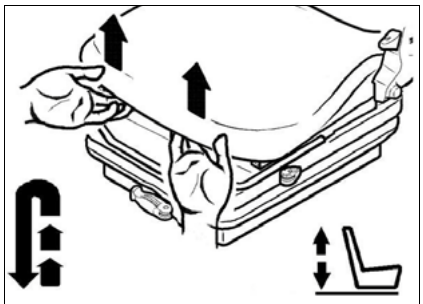


Fig. 118: Height adjustment

Upwards:

☞ *Raise the seat with force.*

☞ *Raise the seat as required until it engages audibly.*

Downwards:

☞ *Raise the seat as far as it will go and lower it to the base position.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.25 Seat (air suspension option)

Danger!

Never change the seat position when driving or working

Danger of accidents

☞ *Adjust the seat before moving the machine*
– see Before starting the engine on page 3-22

Caution!

Adjusting the backrest can damage the rear window.

☞ *Ensure that the backrest does not touch the rear window as you adjust backrest inclination.*

☞ *Select a seat position which will not damage the window when working with the machine.*

Notice!

Adjust the seat to the operator's weight before putting the machine into operation. Adjust the seat suspension correctly to ensure a high level of ride comfort.

Notice!

Adjust weight and height only with the ignition switched on or the machine started.

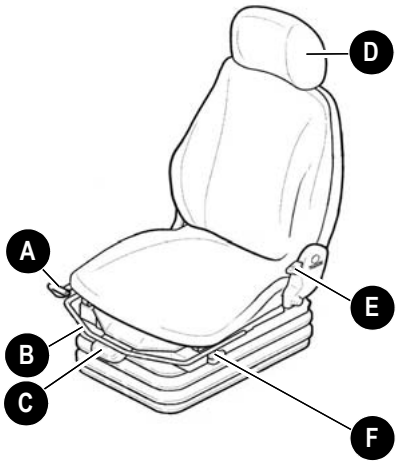


Fig. 119: Seat adjustment

Pos.	Function
A	Seat depth adjustment
B	Horizontal adjustment
C	Weight/height adjustment
D	Head-rest adjustment
E	Backrest adjustment
F	Horizontal suspension

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Seat depth adjustment

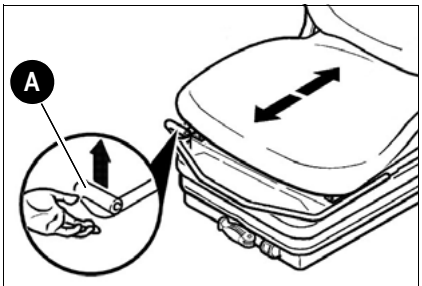


Fig. 120: Horizontal adjustment

Sit down on the seat.

☞ *Pull lever **A** upwards and at the same time*

☞ Move the seat surface forwards or backwards.

☞ *The lever must engage in the required position.*

Horizontal adjustment

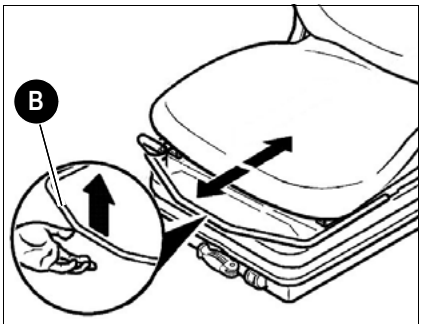


Fig. 121: Horizontal adjustment

Sit down on the seat.

☞ *Pull lever **B** upwards and at the same time*

☞ Move the seat forwards or backwards.

☞ *The lever must engage in the required position.*

Weight adjustment

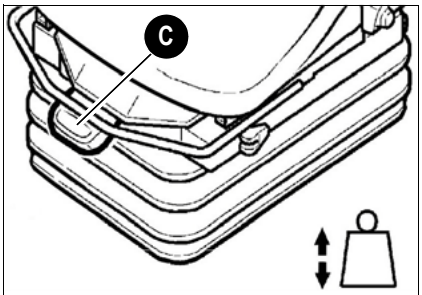


Fig. 122: Weight adjustment

Sit down on the seat.

☞ *Actuate or press lever **C** briefly and then release it.*

☞ Do not move when adjusting.

Height adjustment

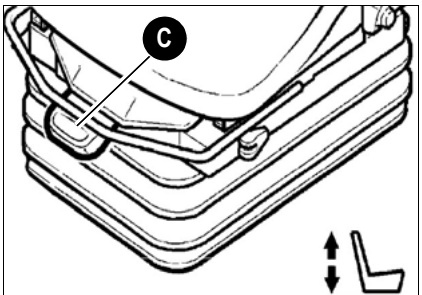


Fig. 123: Height adjustment

Sit down on the seat.

☞ *Fully raise or press lever **C**.*

☞ Move the seat to the required position.

If the upper or lower limit is reached, height is automatically adjusted to ensure minimum spring travel.

Notice!

Do not actuate more than one minute in order not to damage the compressor.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Adjusting the head rest

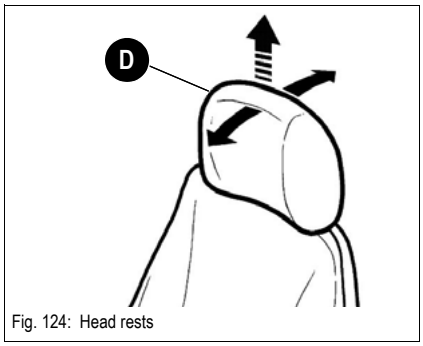


Fig. 124: Head rests

☞ *Head rest **D** can be adjusted vertically by raising or lowering it in notched positions.*

☞ *Inclination can be adjusted by pressing the head rest forwards or backwards.*

Backrest adjustment

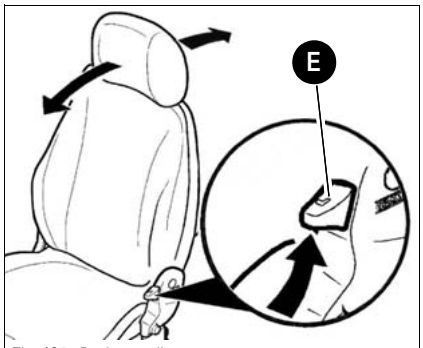


Fig. 125: Backrest adjustment

Sit down on the seat.

☞ *Adjust by pulling lever **E** in the direction of the arrow.*

☞ *Lean back to push the backrest into the required position.*

☞ *The lever must engage in the required position.*

Horizontal suspension

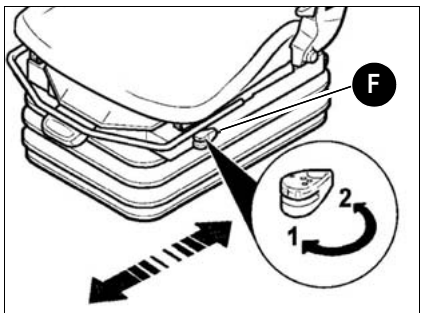


Fig. 126: Horizontal suspension

Shocks in driving direction are absorbed more easily.

☞ *Slide the seat fully back to enable the horizontal suspension.*

Pos.	Function
1	Horizontal suspension OFF (point towards front window)
2	Horizontal suspension ON (point towards rear window)

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.26 Seat belt

Danger!

Driving or working with the seat belt unbuckled is forbidden

Danger of severe injury

☞ *Always buckle up before moving or working with the machine.*

- Do not fasten a twisted seat belt.
- Seat belt must run over the hips – not over the stomach – and must always be applied tightly.
- Do not place the seat belt over hard, edged or fragile items (tools, metre rule, glasses, pen) carried inside your clothes.
- Never buckle up 2 persons with one seat belt.
- Check the condition of the seat belt regularly. Have damaged seat belt elements immediately replaced by a workshop.
- Always keep the seat belt clean, as coarse dirt can impair proper functioning.
- Seat belt buckle must not be obstructed by foreign bodies (paper or similar); otherwise the buckle latch cannot lock into place.

After an accident the belt strap is stretched and no longer serviceable, even if no optical defects can be detected.
In a further accident, the seat belt

Will not provide adequate protection

☞ *Replace the seat belt after every accident.*

☞ *Have fastening points and seat fixture checked for bearing capacity.*

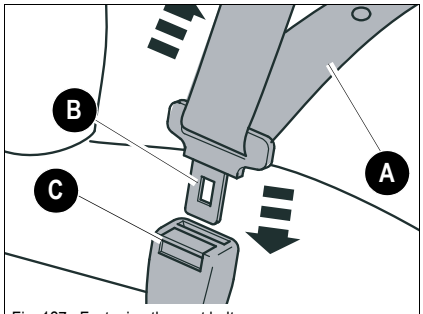


Fig. 127: Fastening the seat belt

Seat belt **A** is for the user's safety during work.

Fastening the seat belt:

☞ *Hold belt on buckle latch **B** and run it slowly and steadily over the hips to buckle **C**.*

☞ *Insert buckle latch **B** into buckle **C** with an audible click* (pull test)

☞ *Tighten the seat belt by pulling at its end.*

➥ The seat belt must always be tightly in place over the hips.

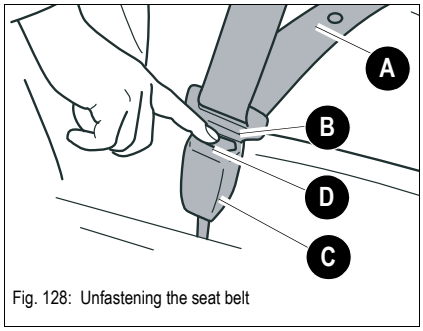


Fig. 128: Unfastening the seat belt

Unfastening the seat belt:

☞ *Hold the seat belt.*

☞ *Press red switch **D** on buckle **C**.*

➥ Latch **B** is released from buckle **C** by spring pressure

☞ *Slowly return the seat belt to the retractor.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

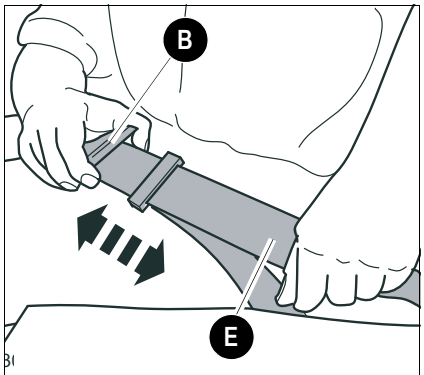


Fig. 129: Longer/shorter seat belt adjustment

Longer/shorter lap belt adjustment:

☞ *Hold buckle latch **B** at a right angle to the seat belt and pull the seat belt to the required length.*

☞ *To shorten the lap belt, just pull the free end **E** of the belt.*

3.27 Retracting lap belt (option)

Danger!

Driving or working with the seat belt unbuckled is forbidden

Danger of severe injury

- Do not fasten a twisted seat belt.
- Seat belt must run over the hips – not over the stomach – and must always be applied tightly.
- Do not place the seat belt over hard, edged or fragile items (tools, metre rule, glasses, pen) carried inside your clothes.
- Never buckle up 2 persons with one seat belt.
- Check the condition of the seat belt regularly. Have damaged seat belt elements immediately replaced by a workshop.
- Always keep the seat belt clean, as coarse dirt can impair proper functioning.
- Seat belt buckle must not be obstructed by foreign bodies (paper or similar); otherwise the buckle latch cannot lock into place.

After an accident the belt strap is stretched and no longer serviceable, even if no optical defects can be detected.
In a further accident, the seat belt

Will not provide adequate protection

☞ *Replace the seat belt after every accident.*

☞ *Have fastening points and seat fixture checked for bearing capacity.*

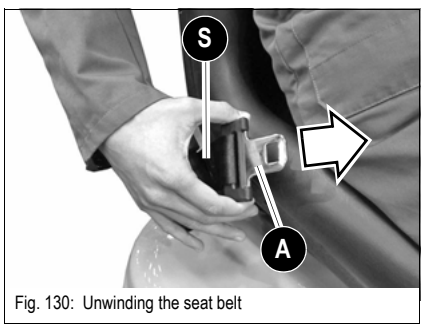


Fig. 130: Unwinding the seat belt

Seat belt **S** is for the user's safety during work.

Fastening the seat belt:

☞ *Hold belt on buckle latch **A** and run it slowly and steadily over the hips to buckle **B**.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

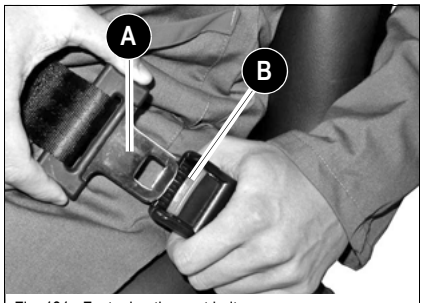


Fig. 131: Fastening the seat belt

☞ *Insert buckle latch **A** into buckle **B** with an audible click (pull test).*

☞ *Tighten the seat belt by pulling at its end.*

➥ The seat belt must be tightly in place over the hips.

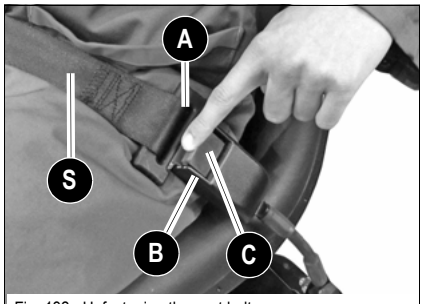


Fig. 132: Unfastening the seat belt

Unfastening the seat belt:

☞ *Hold the seat belt.*

☞ *Press switch **C** on buckle **B**.*

➥ Latch **A** is released by spring pressure.

☞ *Roll up the seat belt slowly.*

3.28 Mirrors (option)

Safety instructions

Danger!

Adjust all mirrors as indicated in the Operator's Manual.

Danger of personal injury

☞ *Use safety-oriented ladders and work platforms for adjustment work on the machine.*

☞ *Never use machine parts or attachments/superstructures as a climbing aid.*

☞ *Do not adjust the mirrors when driving the machine.*

☞ *Immediately replace damaged or broken mirrors.*

☞ *Additional equipment or attachments must not impair visibility.*

Danger!

In spite of the visual aids (mirrors), not the entire area around the machine can be seen.

Danger of accidents

☞ *Follow the safety instructions.*

☞ *Check the surroundings constantly.*

☞ *Put the machine into operation/drive it only if visibility is sufficient (have another person guide you if necessary).*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Danger!

Convex mirrors enlarge, reduce or distort the field of view.

☞ *Bear this in mind when adjusting and using such mirrors (objects appear to be nearer, estimating distances is possible only to a certain extent).*

Caution!

Set the machine to road travel position before adjusting the mirrors
– *see chapter Drive position* on page 3-28.

Adjusting the mirrors

Notice!

We recommend having the mirrors adjusted by a second person.

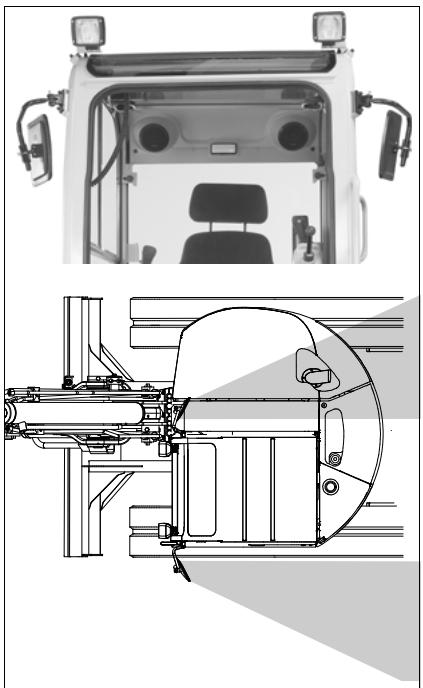


Fig. 133: Left and right-hand outside mirrors of cab

Left and right-hand outside mirrors of cab

Adjust the mirrors in order to:

- Ensure sufficient visibility from the seat onto the drive and work area.
- Ensure maximum visibility to the rear.
- Ensure visibility of the rear left edge of the machine in the left-hand mirror.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.29 Emergency exit

You can enter and exit the cab through the side and front windows in an emergency.

Danger!

The front and the right-hand side of the machine have neither footholds nor handles for safely entering or exiting the cab.

Danger of personal injury

☞ *Enter and exit the cab through the side and front windows in an emergency only.*

Opening the side window completely:

☞ *– see Opening the side window on page 3-57*

Opening the front window completely:

☞ *– see Front window (up to serial no. AD06526) on page 3-52*

Emergency exit on machines equipped with protective Front Guard structures (option)

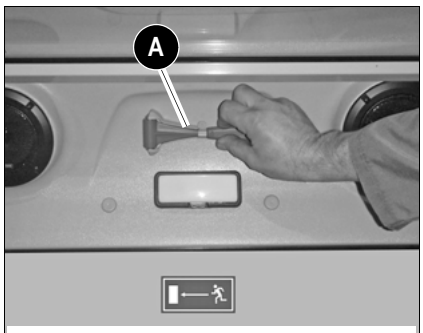


Fig. 134: Emergency exit if equipped with Front Guard

The rear window can be used as an emergency exit if the door is blocked. The rear window is broken with emergency hammer **A** fastened over the rear window.

Danger!

Careful when breaking the rear window –

Danger of personal injury

☞ *Use the rear window as an exit only in an emergency.*

☞ *Remove all glass splinters before leaving the cab.*

☞ *Dispose of glass splinters correctly.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.30 Front window (up to serial no. AD06526)

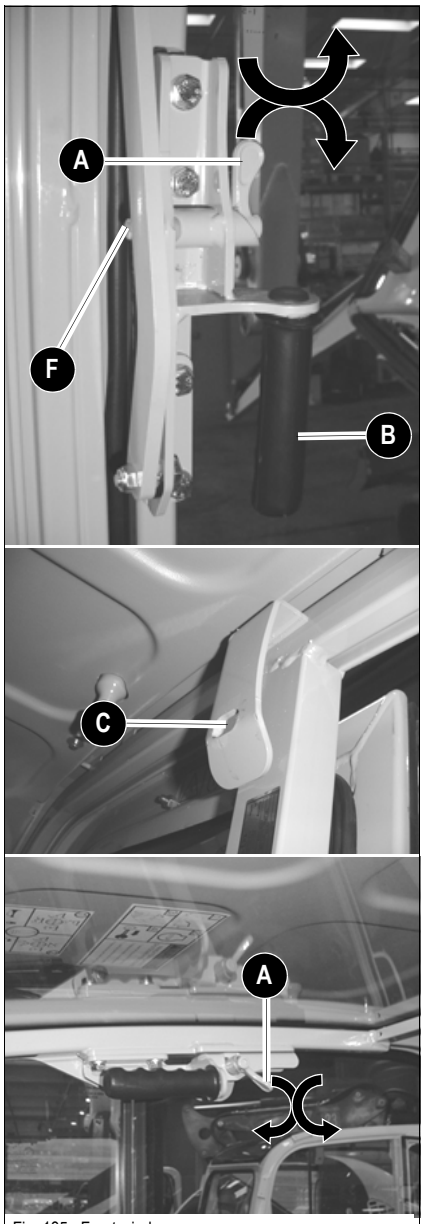


Fig. 135: Front window

Danger!

Careful when opening the front window –

Danger of crushing

☞ *Stay clear (extremities, clothing) of the window run.*

☞ *Always pull the front window upwards with both handles **B**.*

☞ *Always let levers **A** lock into place on either side in locks **F**.*

Opening the front window

- Either side of the front window is fitted with a lever.

☞ *Push levers **A** down on either side.*

☞ *Pull the front window upwards with handles **B**.*

➥ The front window must lock into rails **C** on either side.

☞ *Lock with levers **A** on either side in **C**.*

☞ Pull levers **A** to the rear to do this.

☞ Check whether both levers **A** are actually locked in rails **C**.

Lowering the front window

☞ *Push levers A forwards on either side.*

☞ *Pull the front window downwards with handles **B**.*

☞ *Lock the front window again by means of levers **A** in lock **F**.*

☞ Pull levers **A** upwards to do this.

☞ Check whether both levers **A** are actually locked in rails **F**.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.31 Front window (from serial no. AD06527)

Danger!

Careful when opening the front window –

Danger of crushing

☞ *Stay clear (extremities, clothing) of the window run.*

☞ *Ensure that no-one hits the window with their head as you open and close it.*

☞ *Always pull the front window upwards with both handles **B**.*

☞ *Always let levers **A** lock into place on either side in the locks.*

Opening the front window

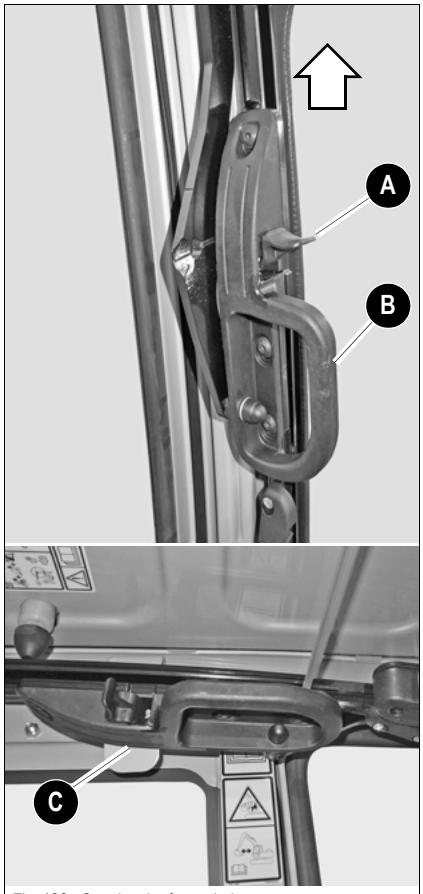


Fig. 136: Opening the front window

- The front window is fitted with handles **B** and small levers on either side.

☞ *Push levers **A** down on either side.*

☞ *Pull the front window upwards with both handles **B**.*

➥ The front window must lock into rails **C** on either side.

☞ *Lock levers **A** on either side in guide **C**.*

☞ Check whether both levers **A** are actually locked in rails **C**.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Closing the front window

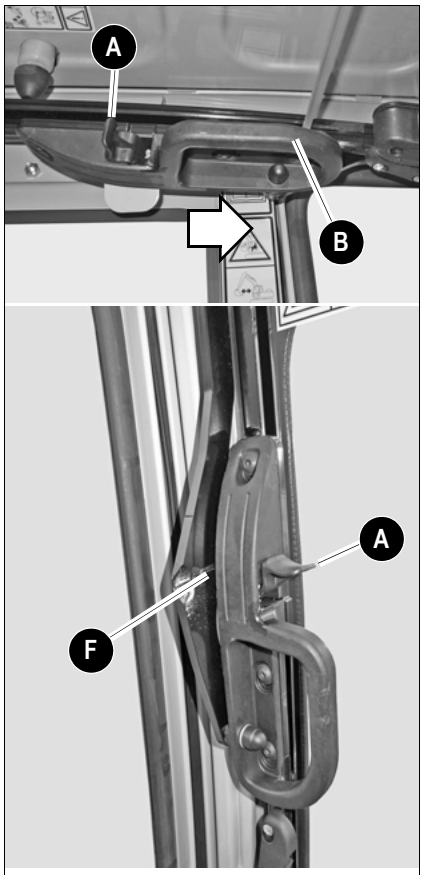


Fig. 137: Closing the front window

☞ *Press levers **A** on the left and right, and pull the front window downwards with both handles **B**.*

☞ *Press the levers **A** on either side and make them engage in lock **F**.*

☞ Check whether both levers **A** are actually locked in rails **F**.

Opening the lower front window

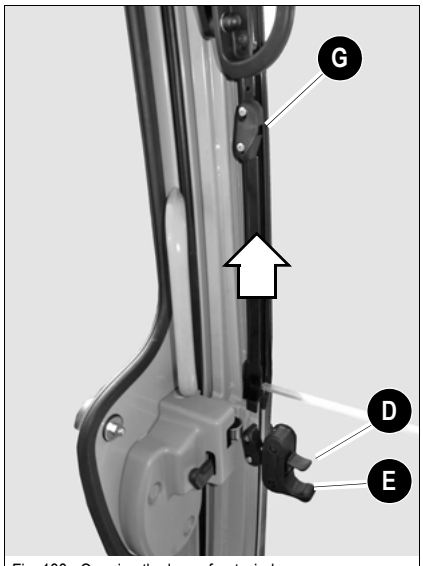


Fig. 138: Opening the lower front window

☞ *Press levers **D** on the left and right, and pull the front window upwards with both handles **E**.*

☞ *Let levers **D** lock into place in both recesses **G**.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Closing the lower front window

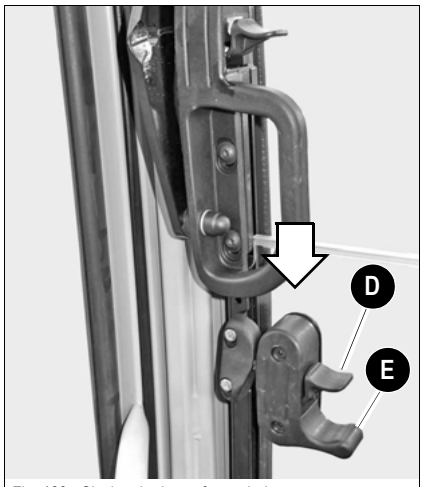


Fig. 139: Closing the lower front window

☞ *Keep levers **D** on the left and right pressed and pull the front window downwards with both handles **E**.*

☞ *Release levers **D** and make them lock into place on either side.*

Opening the whole front window

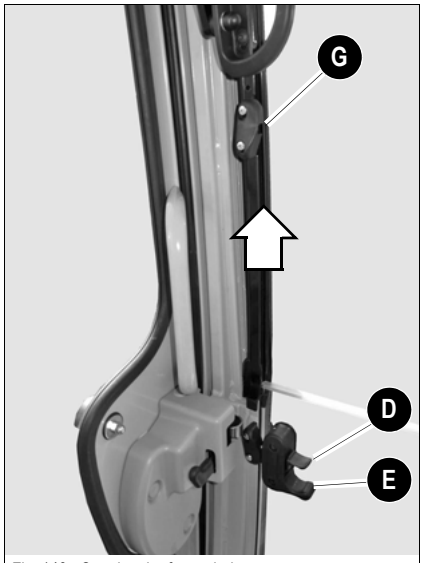


Fig. 140: Opening the front window

☞ *Press levers **D** on the left and right, and pull the lower front window upwards with both handles **E**.*

☞ *Make levers **D** lock into both recesses **G**.*

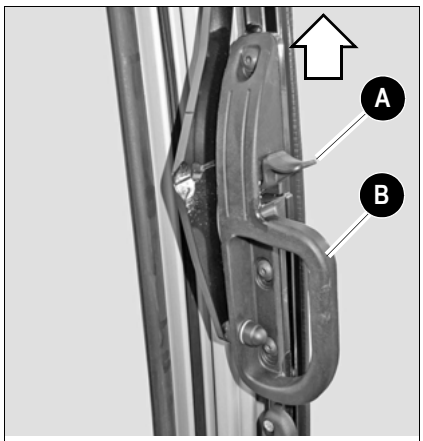


Fig. 141: Opening the front window

☞ *Keep levers **A** pressed on the left and right, and pull the entire front window upwards with both handles **B**.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

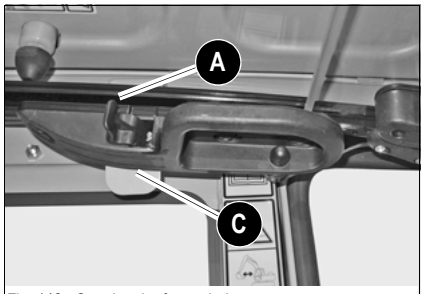


Fig. 142: Opening the front window

☞ *Release levers **A** and make them lock into place in both recesses **C**.*

Closing the whole front window

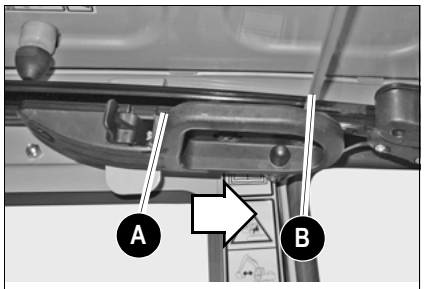


Fig. 143: Closing the front window

☞ *Press levers **A** on the left and right, and pull the front window downwards with both handles **B**.*

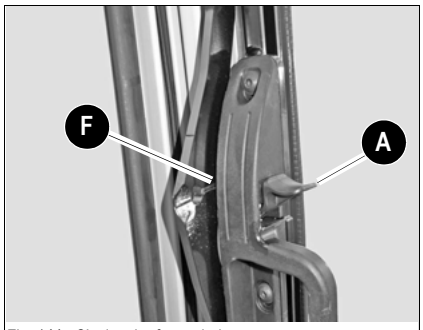


Fig. 144: Closing the front window

☞ *Press the levers **A** on either side and make them engage in lock **F**.*

☞ Check whether both levers **A** are actually locked in rails **F**.

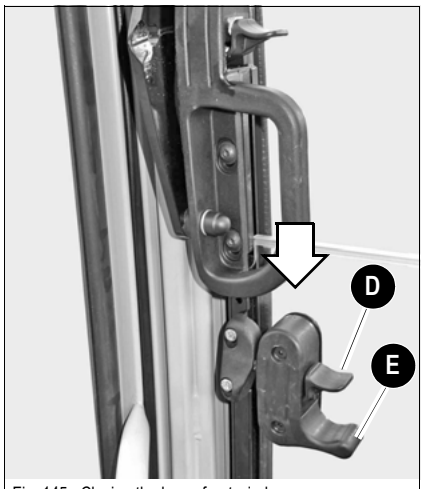


Fig. 145: Closing the lower front window

☞ *Keep levers **D** on the left and right pressed and pull the lower front window downwards with both handles **E**.*

☞ *Release levers **D** and make them lock into place on either side.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Opening the front window to a gap

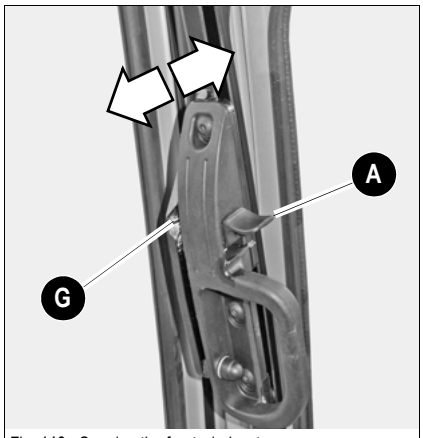


Fig. 146: Opening the front window to a gap

Open

☞ *Press levers **A** on either side and pull the front window to the inside.*

☞ *Release levers **A** and make them lock into place in both recesses **G**.*

Close

☞ *Press levers **A** on either side.*

☞ *Close the front window and let it lock into place on either side.*

3.32 Opening the side window

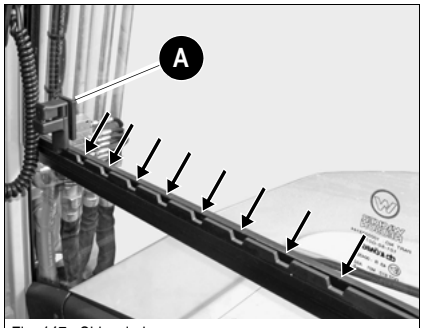


Fig. 147: Side window

☞ *Press button **A** up.*

☞ At the same time, move the window to one of the positions marked with arrows.

3.33 Engine cover

Danger!

Open the engine cover only at engine standstill.

Rotating and moving parts – danger of injury.

Ensure that no-one is injured by the open engine cover.

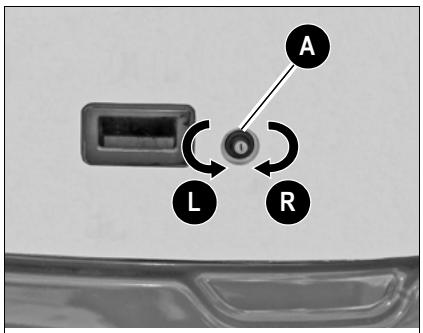


Fig. 148: Engine cover lock

Opening:

☞ *Press lock **A**.*

☞ *Pull the engine cover upwards.*

Closing:

☞ *Firmly press down the engine cover until lock **A** engages with an audible click.*

Locking and unlocking:

Lock the engine cover with the ignition key of the preheating start switch.

☞ *Turn the ignition key in lock **A** to the **left** (**L**).*

➥ Engine cover locked.

☞ *Turn the ignition key in lock **A** to the **right** (**R**).*

➥ Engine cover unlocked.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.34 Battery master switch

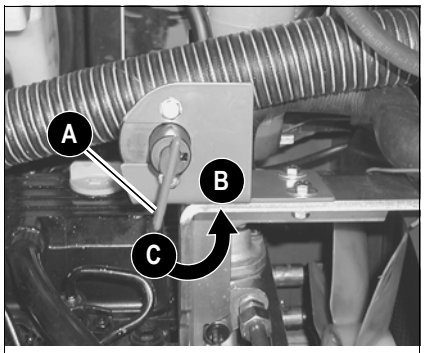


Fig. 149: Battery master switch (up to serial no. AH00610)

The battery master switch is located in the engine compartment.

Notice!

Do not disconnect the battery while the engine is running.
The power supply is interrupted directly after the battery, by means of key **A** of the battery master switch.
Actuate the battery master switch:

- Before working on the electrical system.
- Before carrying out welding work.
- As an antitheft precaution.

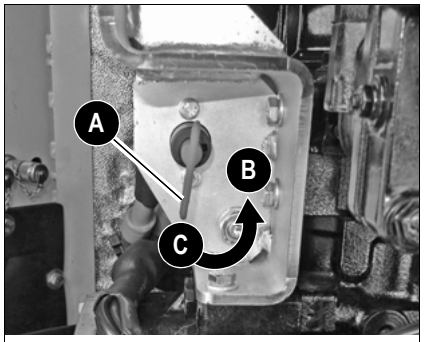


Fig. 150: Battery master switch (from serial no. AH00611)

Interrupting power supply:

☞ *Turn key **A** of the battery master switch to position **B** and remove it.*

Switching on power supply:

☞ *Insert key **A** in the battery master switch.*

☞ *Turn key **A** down to the notched position **C**.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.35 Tilting the cab

Danger!

Careful when tilting the cab –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Always tighten lock nuts **A** and **C** when operating the machine.*

☞ *Park the machine on level and horizontal ground.*

☞ *Lower the boom and the stabiliser blade.*

☞ *Stay clear from underneath the cab as you tilt it.*

Danger!

Always lock the door:

Danger of accidents

☞ *Always close and lock the door when tilting the cab.*

☞ *Remove loose objects from the cab.*

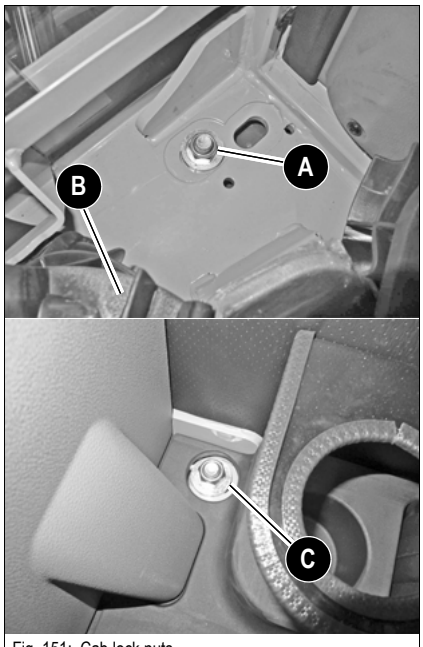


Fig. 151: Cab lock nuts

Preparations for tilting the cab:

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base (left) up.*

Slackening the lock nuts

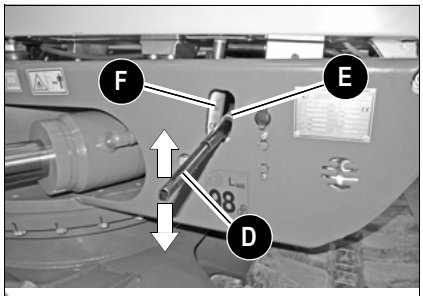
☞ *Raise floor mat **B**.*

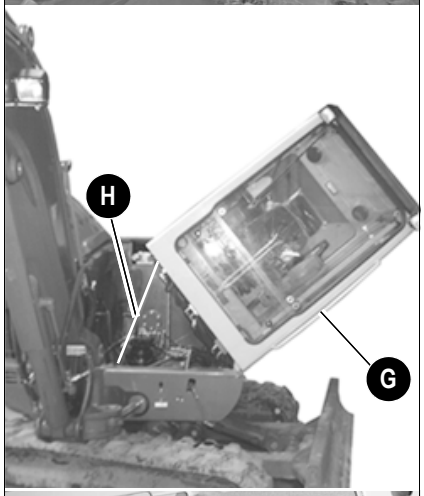
☞ *Remove lock nuts **A** and **C** with a suitable tool.*

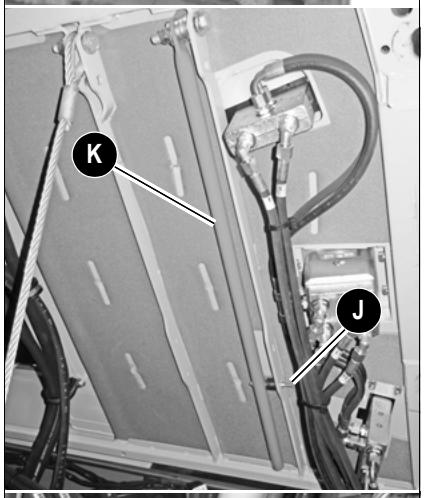
➥ Lock nut **A** is located at the front right of the cab.

➥ Lock nut **C** is located at the rear right of the cab.

https://truckmanualshub.com/







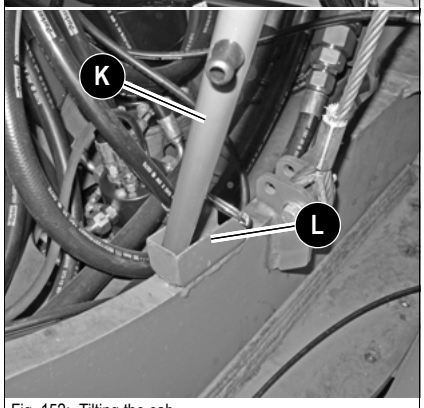


Fig. 152: Tilting the cab

Tilting the cab:

☞ *Insert tube **D** on valve **F**.*

☞ *Turn tube **D** clockwise (to the right).*

☞ *Insert tube **D** onto guide **E** and pump as far as it will go (jack function).*

➥ The cab is raised as far as the pump will go.

☞ *Place yourself beside the machine and pull handle **G** until the cab is completely tilted beyond the centre of motion.*

➥ The cab is secured with safety cable **H**.

Notice!

Do not let the cab fall into the safety cable with all its weight.

☞ *Pull tilt rod **K** out of bracket **J**.*

➥ Slide tilt rod **K** in guide **L** and secure it with the split pin.

Tilting the cab down:

Caution!

Ensure that the piston of the lift pump is fully extended and that the valve is closed before lowering the cab.

☞ *Turn valve **F** of the lift pump clockwise (to the right).*

☞ *Remove the split pin from guide* **L**.

➥ Press tilt rod **K** into bracket **J**.

☞ *Use handle **G** to lower the cab until it is back on the pump.*

☞ *Insert tube **D** on valve **F**.*

☞ *Slowly turn tube **D** counterclockwise (to the left).*

➥ The cab is lowered by its own weight.

Caution!

Once the cab is fully lowered by its own weight, do not close the valve of the lift pump, otherwise the cab bearing can be severely damaged.

☞ *Leave valve **F** open after you have lowered the cab.*

Caution!

Check tilt rod **K**, the split pin, safety cable **H**, and the fastening of the safety cable at regular intervals for cracks and cuts.

☞ *Have defective parts replaced immediately.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Replacing and mounting the lock nuts

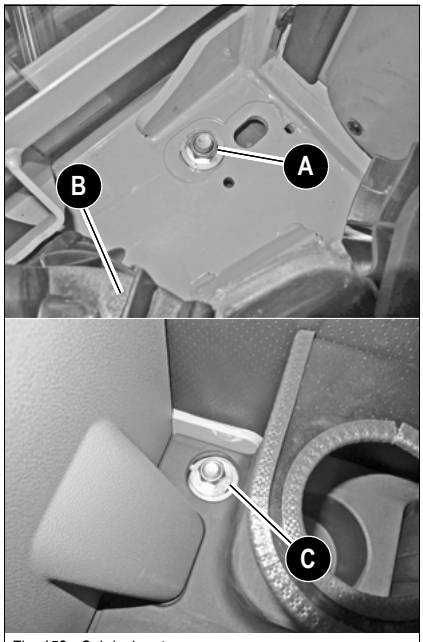


Fig. 153: Cab lock nuts

Notice!

Replace the lock nuts every time they are loosened.

☞ *Replace the lock nuts.*

☞ *Tighten the new lock nuts **A** and **C** to 87 Nm (64 lbf ft).*

☞ *Put floor mat **B** back in place.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.36 Door

Danger!

Close/secure the door and the side window when driving and working with the machine –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Close the door before moving the machine*

Door 75Z3

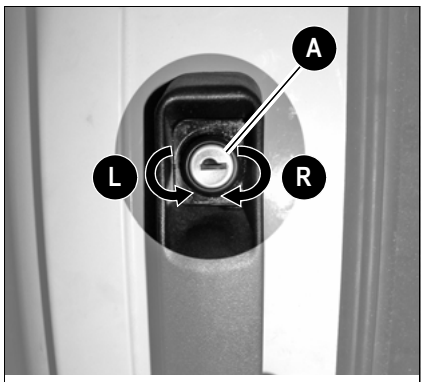


Fig. 154: Outside door opener and lock (75Z3)

Opening the door from the outside:

☞ *Press door lock **A**.*

Locking the door:

☞ *Turn the key in door lock **A** to the **left** (L).*

☞ The door is locked.

Unlocking the door:

☞ *Turn the key in door lock **A** to the **right** (R).*

☞ The door is unlocked.

Door 8003

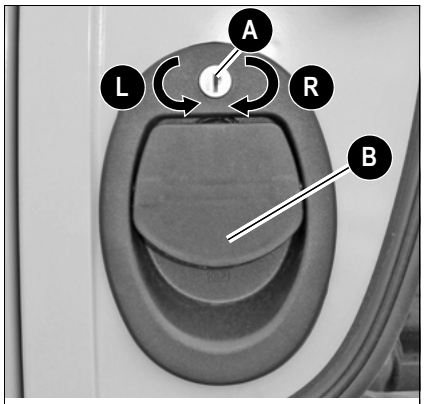


Fig. 155: Outside door opener and lock (8003)

Opening the door from the outside:

☞ *Press door handle **B**.*

Locking the door:

☞ *Turn the key in door lock **A** to the **left** (L).*

☞ The door is locked.

Unlocking the door:

☞ *Turn the key in door lock **A** to the **right** (R).*

☞ The door is unlocked.

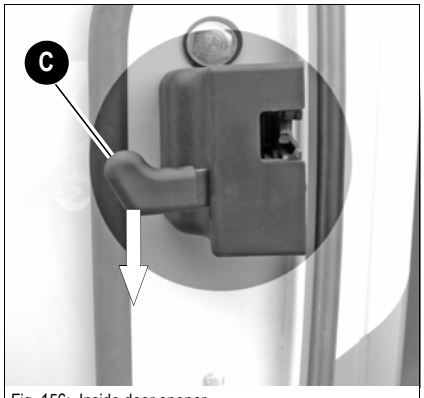


Fig. 156: Inside door opener

Opening the door from the inside:

☞ *Press down lever **C** on the inside left on the door lock.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

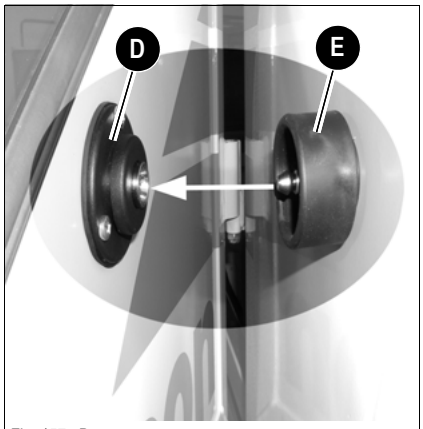


Fig. 157: Door arrester

Securing an open door:

☞ *Press the door against bracket **D** of arrester **E** with an audible click.*



Fig. 158: Releasing the door arrester

Releasing the door opener:

☞ *Pull button **F** to release the door from the arrester.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.37 Exit through the door (up to serial no. AH02749)

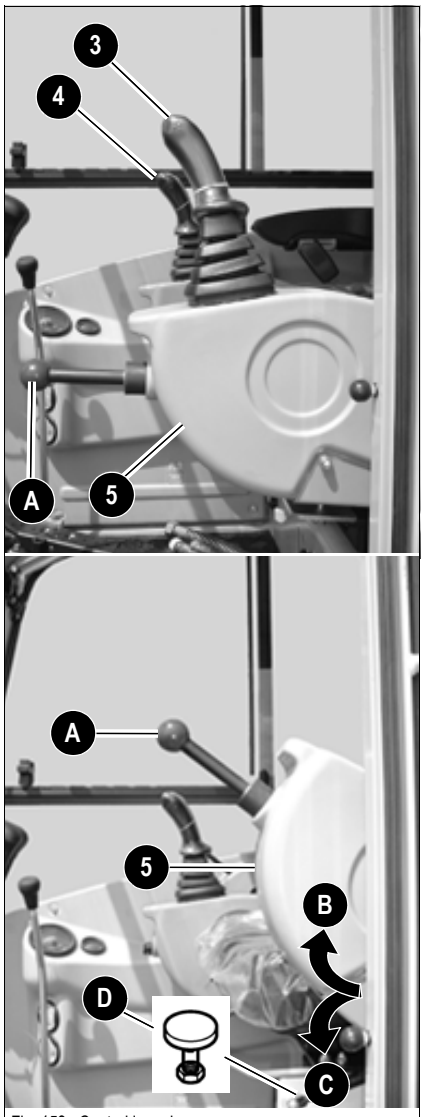


Fig. 159: Control lever base

Danger!

Careful when entering and leaving the cab –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Before exiting the cab, stop and secure the machine – see chapter 3.19 Parking the machine on page 3-33.*

- Lower the boom.
- Stop the engine.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Move control levers **3** and **4** in all directions repeatedly.

☞ *Raise control lever base **5** with handle **A** to position **B**.*

➥ The gas strut keeps the control lever base in the top position.

Caution!

Do not use handle **A** on the control lever base, the outside mirror (option) or its bracket as a support to ease your entrance to the cab.

☞ *Use the entrance handles on the cab.*

☞ *Fold control lever base **5** down to position **C** once you are in the cab.*

➥ The gas strut keeps the control lever base in the lower position.

Notice!

Do not adjust the height of the control lever base to ensure that the contacts between the safety switch and the control lever base are not affected.
If work is carried out on the control lever base, check the safety switch and stop bolt **D** under all circumstances.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.38 Exit through the door (from serial no. AJ02793)

Danger!

Careful when entering and leaving the cab –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Before exiting the cab, stop and secure the machine*
– see chapter 3.19 Parking the machine on page 3-33.

- Lower the boom.
- Stop the engine.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Move control levers **1** and **2** in all directions repeatedly.

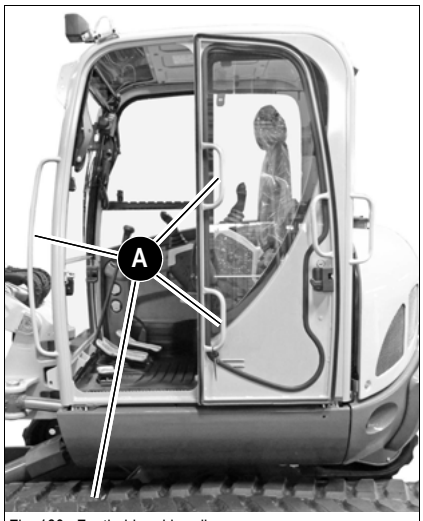


Fig. 160: Foothold and handles

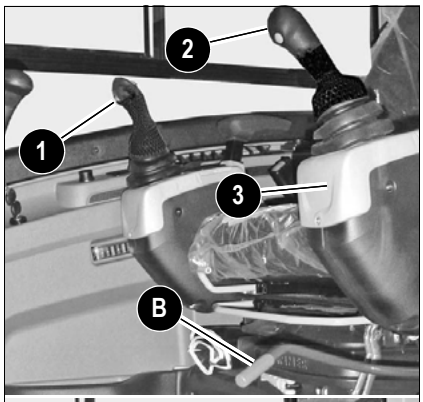
Caution!

Do not use handle **B** on the control lever base, the outside mirror (option) or its bracket as a support to ease your entrance or exit from the cab:

☞ *Use handles **A** and footholds on the cab.*

Notice!

When entering or leaving the cab, the door must be locked in the arrester.
– see Door on page 3-62.



☞ *Raise control lever base **3** with handle **B** to position **C**.*

➥ A torsion spring keeps the control lever base in the top position.

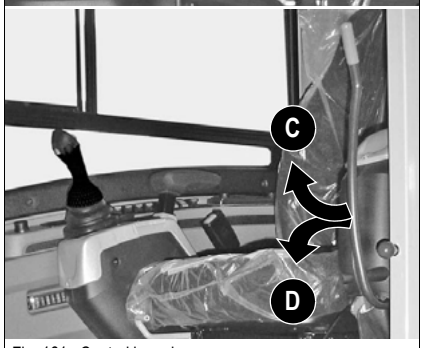


Fig. 161: Control lever base

☞ *Fold control lever base **3** down to position **D** once you are in the cab.*

➥ A torsion spring keeps the control lever base in the lower position.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.39 Armrest adjustment (75Z3/8003 up to serial no. AH02749)

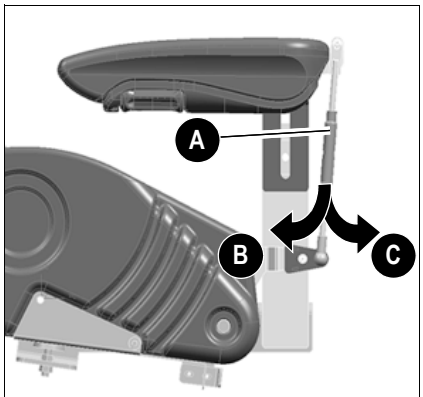


Fig. 162: Armrest

Caution!

Ensure that the armrest does not touch the control lever as you fold it up.

☞ *Adjust the armrest to prevent it from touching the control lever.*

☞ *Turn tubular turnbuckle nut **A** to the left **B**.*

➥ The armrest can be lowered.

☞ *Turn nut **A** to the right **C**.*

➥ The armrest can be raised.

3.40 Armrest adjustment (75Z3/8003 from serial no. AJ02793)

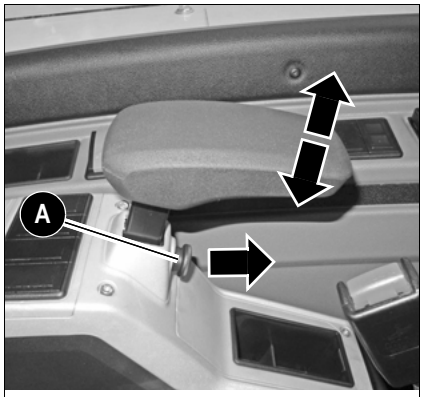


Fig. 163: Armrest

☞ *Slacken lock pin **A**.*

➥ Hold the armrest (it is pre-tensioned by a spring).

☞ *Pull out lock pin **A** and let the armrest engage in the required position.*

☞ *Tighten lock pin **A**.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.41 Towing the machine

Danger!

Keep out of the danger zone of the machine –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Ensure that no-one is dangerously close to the machine.*

- Ensure that the machine can be towed safely.
- A tractor vehicle of the same weight category must be used as a minimum.
- Use towing bracket **A** for towing the machine.

Caution!

The maximum admissible load of the towing bracket is 65000 N (14612 lbf).

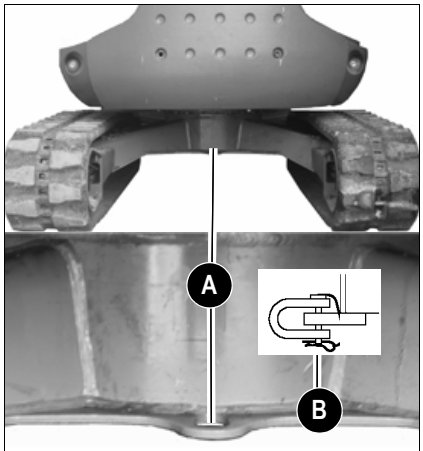


Fig. 164: Towing bore

- Use the towing bracket only for towing the machine.
- Secure shackle **B** with the shackle pin and a lock pin.
- Mount a towing bar or cable of adequate size to the towing bore.
- Pull the machine slowly.
- Tow the machine only until the ground conditions allow the machine to move on its own.

Caution!

Do not tow a defective machine, otherwise the drive can be damaged

☞ *The machine must be loaded with a crane – see Crane handling the machine on page 3-68.*

Notice!

- The manufacturer's warranty shall not apply to accidents or damage caused by towing the machine.
- Using towing bracket **A** to pull other machines or to tow equipment is not allowed.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.42 Crane handling the machine

Danger!

Incorrect **crane and lifting gear operation** –

Danger of accidents

☞ *All equipment (crane, lifting gear, etc.) required for loading must be:*

- certified, suitable and of adequate size
- positioned and fastened correctly
- free of damage and wear
- Necessary recurrent inspections must not be overdue

☞ *Observe all international, national and possible in-house regulations and guidelines on loading.*

☞ *Have crane operators guided only by experienced persons that know the required crane signals.*

☞ *The person guiding the crane operator must be within sight or sound of him.*

Danger!

Incorrect **fastening of lifting gear** on the machine –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Have only experienced persons attach lifting gear.*

☞ *Use only the lifting points provided to this effect and marked accordingly for attaching lifting gear.*

☞ *Carry out a visual check to ensure that all lifting points are in good condition.*

☞ *If the machine is raised by means of the cab, a crane-handling bracket or similar, check the screws and nuts of these components for tightness and correct torque before attaching lifting gear to them.*

☞ *Use only suitable lifting gear (e.g. hooks, shackles) on the machine.*

☞ *Do not place the lifting gear over sharp edges.*

☞ *Ensure that the lifting gear has the required lengths.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Danger!

Incorrect **crane-handling** of machine –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Wear protective equipment (safety boots, protective gloves, hard hat, etc.).*

☞ *Before raising the machine, ensure that:*

- all instructions under “Crane handling the machine” have been followed
- the machine is accessible and not stuck
- the lifting gear has been attached correctly
- there is no-one in the machine
- the loading area is sealed off and that there is no-one in it
- the weather conditions make it possible to load the machine safely (wind, visibility, etc.)

☞ *Always stay clear of suspended loads.*

☞ *It is essential that you follow the safety instructions at the beginning of this chapter and any other safety instructions relevant in your country.*

☞ *Check the cab for damage.*

Environment!

Do not crane-handle defective machines with leaks.

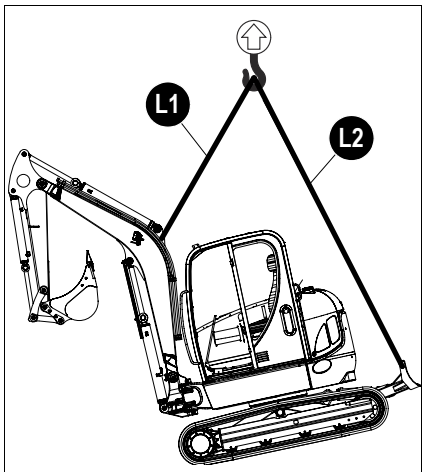


Fig. 165: Craning operation

- Read and follow all instructions indicated before.
- Safely lock the attachment.
- Empty or clean and remove the attachment.
- Remove all dirt from the machine.
- Stop the machine on firm, level and horizontal ground.
- Raise the boom completely.
- Pull the stick towards the machine.
- Move the attachment inwards.
- Raise the stabiliser blade.
- Position the boom straight ahead at the centre of the machine.
- Stop the engine.
- Operate the joystick repeatedly to release the pressure in the hydraulic system.
- Fold the control lever base up.
- Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.
- Remove all loose objects from inside the machine.
- Close the windows and the door.
- Leave the cab.
- Close and lock all covers.
- Mount the lifting gear at the point on the boom provided for lifting the machine.
- Mount the lifting gear at the points on the stabiliser blade provided for lifting the machine.
- Slowly raise the machine until there is no more contact with the ground.
- Wait until the machine does swing any more and is completely steady.
- If the balance and the condition and position of the lifting gear is correct, slowly raise the machine to the required height and load it.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Required lengths **L1** and **L2** of the lifting gear:

Machine	Length	Dimension
75Z3	L1	1893 mm (74.5 in)
	L2	4630 mm (182.3 in)
8003	L1	1600 mm (63 in)
	L2	4780 mm (188.2 in)

3.43 Loading and transporting the machine

Safety instructions

- The transport vehicle must be of adequate size – refer to *Chapter 6 "Specifications"* for the machine's dimensions and weights.
- Remove dirt (e.g. mud, snow, ice, etc.) from the tracks so that the machine can be safely driven onto the ramp.
- Secure the machine against unintentional movement
  – see chapter 3.19 Parking the machine on page 3-33.

Danger!

The machine must be loaded and transported properly –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Read the safety instructions at the beginning of this chapter and follow any other safety instructions relevant in your country.*

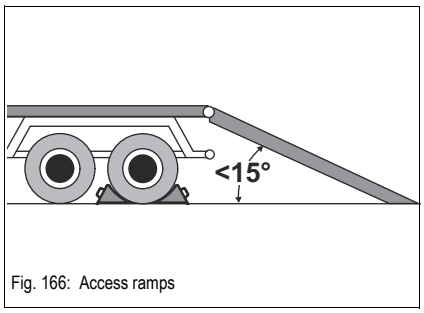


Fig. 166: Access ramps

- Secure the transport vehicle with chocks to prevent it from rolling.
- Place the access ramps at the smallest possible angle. Do not exceed a slope of 15°. Use access ramps with an antiskid surface only.
- Ensure that the loading area is clear and access to it is not obstructed – e.g. by superstructures.
- Ensure that the access ramps and the tracks of the machine are free of dirt (oil, grease, ice, etc.).
- Start the engine of the machine.
- Raise the boom enough so that it will not touch the access ramps.
- Carefully drive the machine onto the middle of the transport vehicle.
- Move the machine to transport position.
- Lower the boom to the loading area.
- Stop the engine.
- Fold the control lever base up.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Leave the cab.
- All covers must be closed.
- Secure the machine against unintentional movement.

Notice!

The manufacturer's warranty shall not apply to accidents or damage caused by loading or transporting the excavator.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.44 Tying down the machine

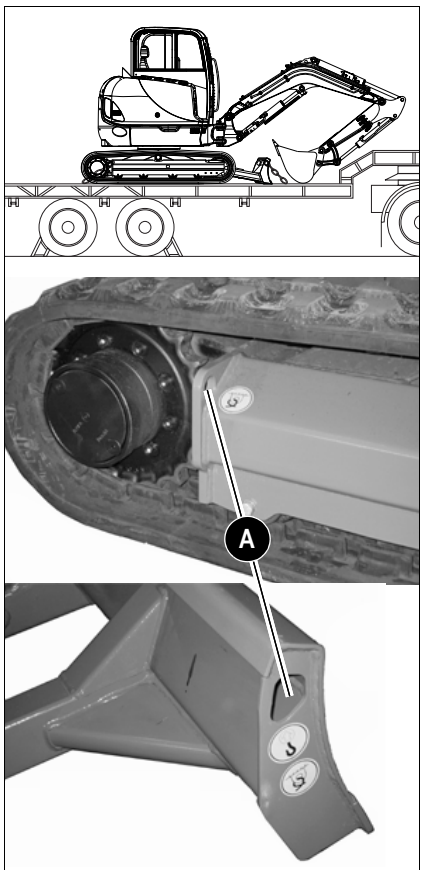


Fig. 167: Tying down the machine

Danger!

The machine must be loaded and transported properly –

Danger of accidents

☞ *It is essential that you read the safety instructions at the beginning of this chapter and follow any other safety instructions relevant in your country.*

- Ensure that the authorised maximum height is not exceeded.
- Secure the tracks of the machine at the front, rear and at the sides.
- Lower the stabiliser blade and the boom.
- Firmly tie down the machine at the eye hooks **A** onto the platform, with belts or chains of adequate size.
- Before transporting the machine through heavy rain:
  close the outlet of the exhaust silencer with a simple cap or suitable adhesive tape.
- Ensure that the user of the transport vehicle knows the overall height, width and weight of his transport vehicle (incl. machine) before departure, as well as the legal transport regulations of the country or countries where transport is to take place.

3.45 Driving signal (option)

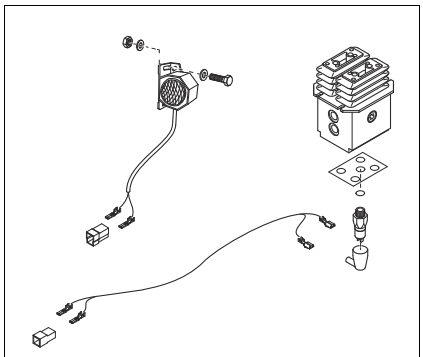


Fig. 168: Driving signal (option)

Danger!

Careful when reversing or driving forwards –

Danger of accidents

☞ *There must be nobody within the danger zone of the machine when changing the driving direction.*

☞ *Do not rely on the drive signal under any circumstances when changing driving direction.*

The warning device consists of a signal transmitter that emits an acoustic signal when driving forwards or backwards.

This signal sounds until the levers are moved to neutral position.

Have the signal transmitter repaired by an authorised workshop if it does not sound when driving.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.46 Working with the machine

General safety instructions

- Never drive up to the edge of a pit from outside – danger of cave-in.
- Never undermine the foundations of walls – danger of collapse.
- Do not work underneath projecting earth. Stones or the projecting earth can fall onto the machine.
- Do not excavate deeply under the front side of the machine. The ground under the machine could collapse and cause it to tip over.
- In order to leave the cab more easily under especially difficult circumstances, position the tracks perpendicularly to the roadside or to the uphill slope with the drive pinion behind the user.
- Do not carry out demolition work below the machine, otherwise it can lose its balance and tip over.
- When working on roofs or similar structures, check the resistance and the structure itself before starting work. The building can collapse, causing severe injury and damage.
- In general the machine is more liable to tilt if the boom is positioned laterally than if it is positioned at the front or rear of the machine.
- Do not move the attachment across the heads of workers or across the cabs of trucks or of other means of transport. Material can fall out, or the attachment can knock against the truck and cause severe injury or damage.
- Operation of the machine by unauthorised staff is prohibited.
- Look out for high-voltage cables, underground cables, gas and water pipes during excavation work.
- The hydraulic system of the machine is still pressurised even when the engine is not running. Thererfore release the pressure in the sections of the system and hydraulic lines which are to be opened before starting setup or repair work, e.g. fitting/removing an attachment with hydraulic functions.
  – *see* *Lowering the boom with the engine stopped* on page 3-76.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.47 Control levers/ISO controls: overview

Notice!

Moving the control lever quickly causes the attachment to move quickly. Slow actuation of the control lever moves the attachment slowly.

Danger!

Unintentional operation of the control levers –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Always carry out smooth control movements.*

Left-hand control lever

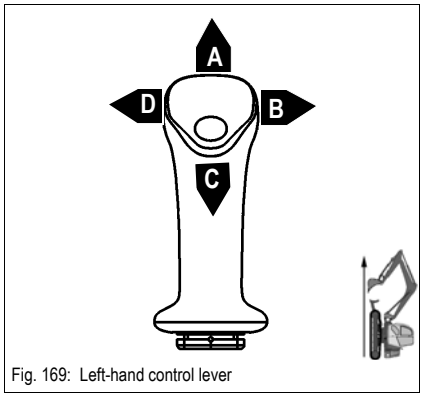


Fig. 169: Left-hand control lever

Position	Lever	Function
A	Forwards	Stick is extended
B	To the right	Upper carriage rotates to the right
C	Backwards	Stick is retracted
D	To the left	Upper carriage rotates to the left

Hammer pedal lock (up to serial no. AH02749)

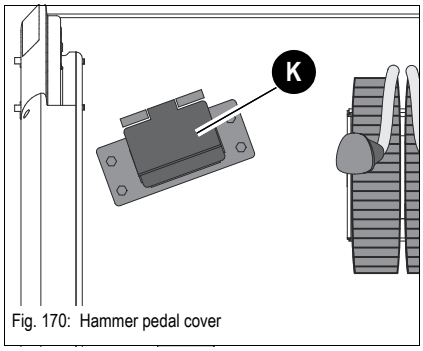


Fig. 170: Hammer pedal cover

Danger!

Do not press the pedal unintentionally –

Danger of personal injury.

☞ In order to avoid unintentional actuation of the pedal, fold cover **K** towards the seat once operation is over.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Boom/triple articulation boom operation (up to serial no. AH02749)

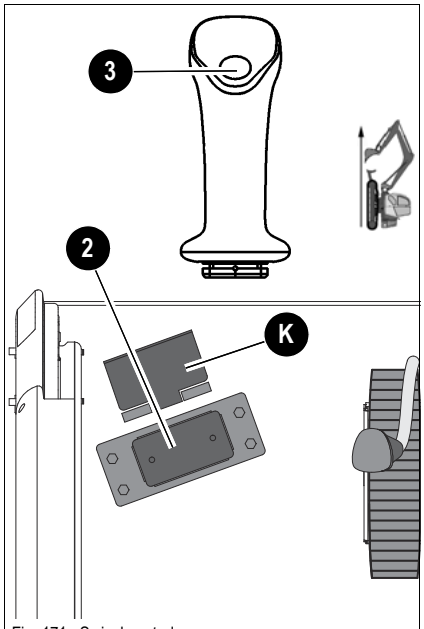


Fig. 171: Swivel controls

Swivelling the boom to the left

☞ *Fold cover **K** towards the front window.*

☞ *Press and hold button **3** on the left-hand control lever.*

☞ Press hammer pedal **2** to the left at the same time.

Swivelling the boom to the right

☞ *Press and hold button **3** on the left-hand control lever.*

☞ Press hammer pedal **2** to the right at the same time.

☞ *Fold cover **K** towards the seat once operation is over.*

Triple articulation boom (option for 8003)

☞ *Fold cover **K** towards the front window.*

☞ *Press hammer pedal **2** forwards.*

➥ The ram of the triple articulation boom is extended.

☞ *Press hammer pedal **2** backwards.*

➥ The ram of the triple articulation boom is retracted.

☞ *Fold cover **K** towards the seat once operation is over.*

Notice!

With triple articulation boom option, the hammer pedal slides in driving direction and is not installed as shown in *Fig. 171*.

Hammer pedal lock (from serial no. AJ02793)

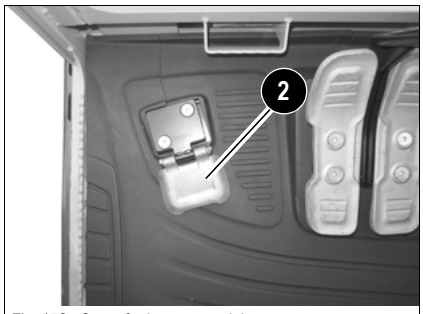


Fig. 172: Cover for hammer pedal

Danger!

Do not press the pedal unintentionally –

Danger of personal injury.

☞ In order to avoid unintentional actuation of the pedal, fold hammer pedal **2** towards the seat once operation is over.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Boom/triple articulation boom operation (from serial no. AJ02793)

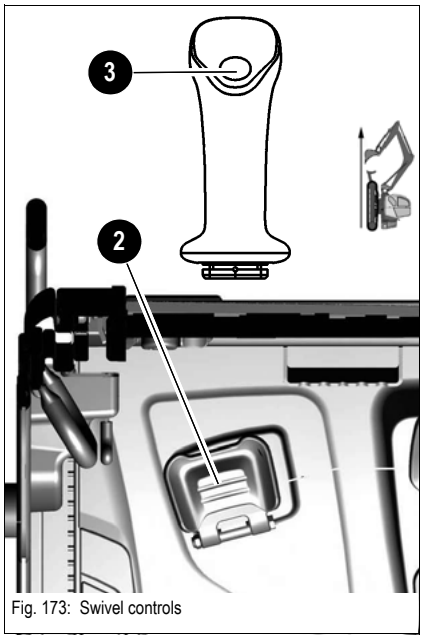


Fig. 173: Swivel controls

Swivelling the boom to the left

☞ *Fold hammer pedal **2** towards the front window.*

☞ *Press and hold button **3** on the left-hand control lever.*

☞ Press hammer pedal **2** to the left at the same time.

Swivelling the boom to the right

☞ *Press and hold button **3** on the left-hand control lever.*

☞ Press hammer pedal **2** to the right at the same time.

☞ *Fold hammer pedal **2** towards the seat once operation is over.*

Triple articulation boom (option for 8003)

☞ *Fold hammer pedal **2** towards the front window.*

☞ *Press hammer pedal **2** to the left.*

➥ The ram of the triple articulation boom is retracted.

☞ *Press hammer pedal **2** to the right.*

➥ The ram of the triple articulation boom is extended.

☞ *Fold hammer pedal **2** towards the seat once operation is over.*

Right-hand control lever

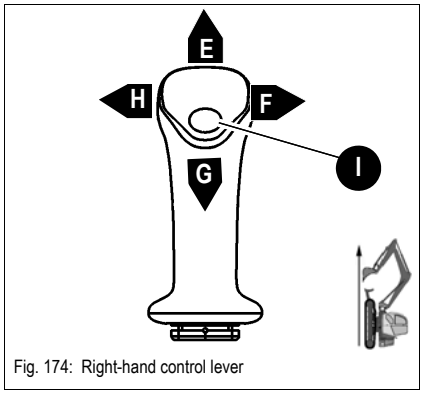


Fig. 174: Right-hand control lever

Position	Lever	Function
E	Forwards	Boom is lowered
F	To the right	Dumps out the bucket
G	Backwards	Boom is raised
H	To the left	Dumps in the bucket

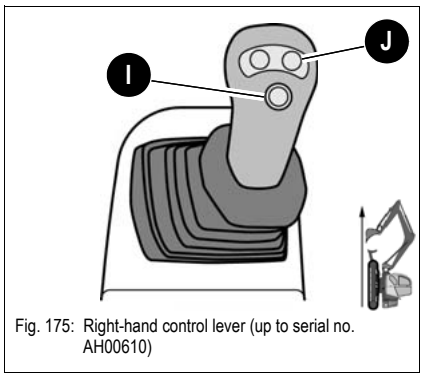


Fig. 175: Right-hand control lever (up to serial no. AH00610)

Button	Function
I	Horn
J	Engine control (up to serial no. AH00610)

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Lowering the boom with the engine stopped

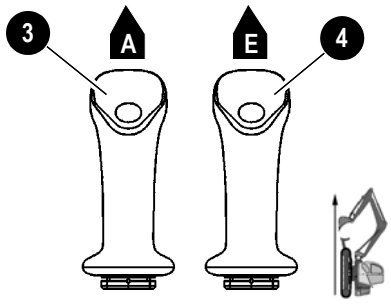


Fig. 176: Lowering the boom with the engine stopped

☞ *Ensure that no-one is dangerously close to the machine.*

☞ *Turn the ignition key to position **1**.*

☞ *Press forwards and hold the control lever (**A** and **E**)*

➥ Until the boom is completely lowered.

☞ *Return the control lever to neutral.*

Rotating the upper carriage

Rotating the upper carriage is described with standard ISO controls.

Danger!

The upper carriage can rotate a little bit further if the machine has not yet reached its operating temperature.

Notice!

- When rotating the upper carriage, the rear part of the machine protrudes beyond the undercarriage.
- Ensure that there are no obstacles in the immediate vicinity.
- Fast actuation of the control lever rotates the upper carriage fast, slow actuation of the control lever rotates the upper carriage slowly.
- If the upper carriage needs to be rotated on a slope, let the engine run at idling speed and actuate the control lever very slowly. Proceed with extreme care and avoid abrupt movements if the bucket is full.

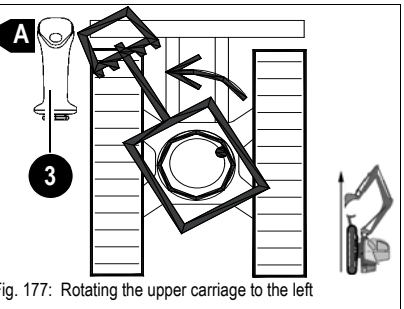


Fig. 177: Rotating the upper carriage to the left

In order to rotate the upper carriage to the left

☞ *Push the left-hand control lever **3** to the left **A**.*

➥ The upper carriage rotates to the left.

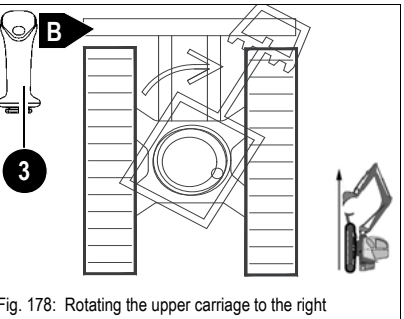


Fig. 178: Rotating the upper carriage to the right

In order to rotate the upper carriage to the right

☞ *Push the left-hand control lever **3** to the right **B**.*

➥ The upper carriage rotates to the right.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Swivel unit brake

Hydraulic swivel unit brake:

The upper carriage's rotation is sufficiently braked by moving control lever **3** back to initial position. Moving the control lever in the opposite direction (counteraction) brakes the upper carriage with maximum hydraulic output.

Mechanical stop brake:

A multidisc brake integrated in the rotation drive has an additional mechanical brake effect with time delay. This negative-effect brake is used as a stop brake and parking brake for the swivel unit. The upper carriage can be stopped in any position.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.48 Changeover valve for SAE/ISO controls (option)

Danger!

Changing the directional valve over modifies the controls (control levers) –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Ensure that you know which control mode has been selected before starting work.*

☞ *Always secure wing nut **J** on the changeover lever of the directional valve.*

☞ *Before beginning work, familiarise yourself with the modified operation.*

Left-hand control lever

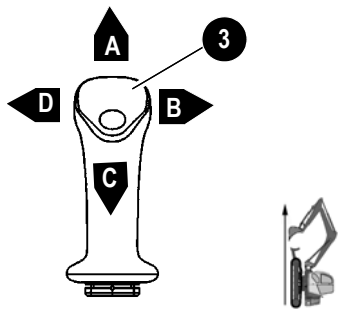


Fig. 179: Left-hand control lever (SAE controls)

Position	Lever	Function
A	Forwards	Boom is lowered
B	To the right	Upper carriage rotates to the right
C	Backwards	Boom is raised
D	To the left	Upper carriage rotates to the left

Right-hand control lever

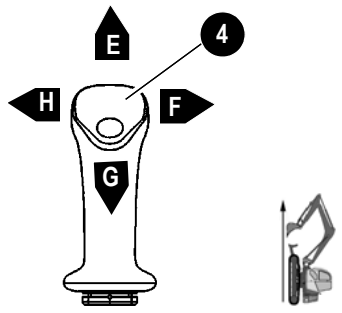


Fig. 180: Right-hand control lever (SAE controls)

Position	Lever	Function
E	Forwards	Stick is extended
F	To the right	Dumps out the bucket
G	Backwards	Stick is retracted
H	To the left	Dumps in the bucket

Directional valve position

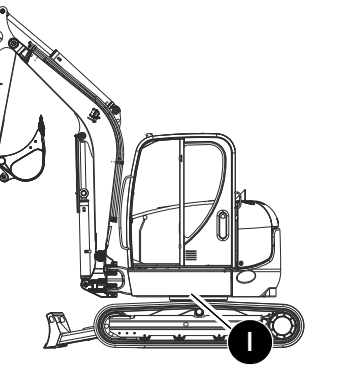


Fig. 181: Directional valve position

The directional valve is located on the left in base plate **I** of the chassis.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Directional valve

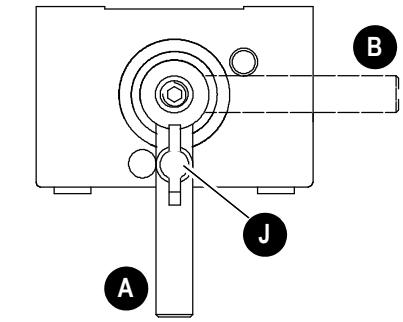


Fig. 182: Directional valve

The directional valve switches from ISO to SAE controls and vice versa.

Position	Function
A	ISO controls
B	SAE controls

☞ *Tighten wing nut **J** after changing the control mode.*

Caution!

No driving or working with the machine if wing nut **J** is defective.

☞ *Immediately contact an authorised workshop to replace a defective wing nut.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.49 Control lever with proportional controls (option): overview

Notice!

Fast actuation of the control lever for the attachment moves the attachment fast. Slow actuation of the control lever moves the attachment slowly.

Function

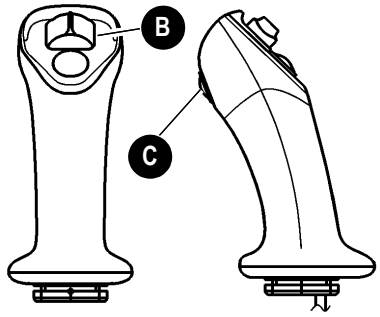


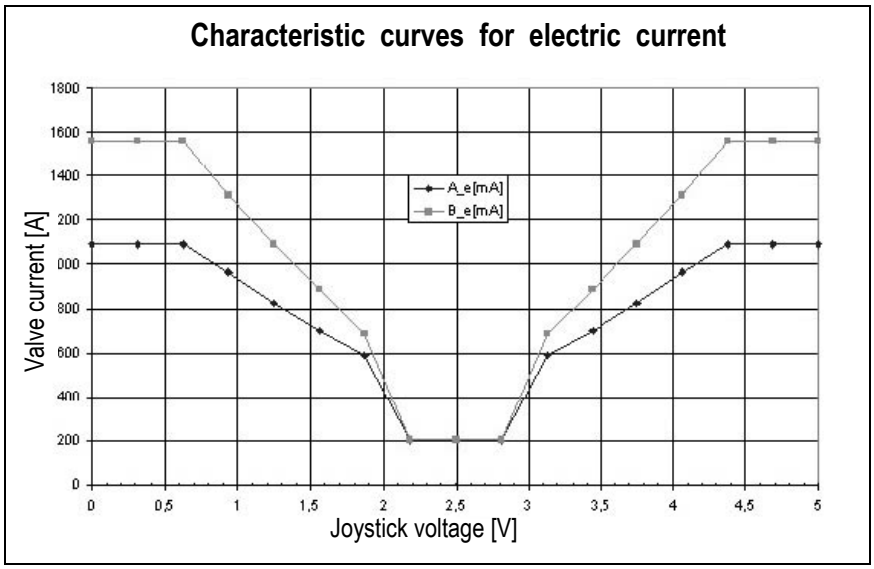
Fig. 183: Left-hand control lever

This control mode offers proportional control of the auxiliary hydraulics circuit depending on the position of slide switch **B** on the joystick.

You also have the choice of two characterisitic curves. Precision work (for instance with an offset bucket) does not require the full throughput of the auxiliary hydraulics. Therefore we recommend selecting characteristic curve 1 (slower movements).

In this position, the slide switch is not actuated to full output and you can move the machine more smoothly (flat characteristic curve)

If you require the full throughput then characteristic curve 2 will be the choice to make (slide switch actuated to full output).



Caution!

Pressing button **C** ensures full throughput irrespective of the characteristic curve that has been selected.

☞ *Always use button **C** on the joystick for hammer operation.*

☞ *Do not use characteristic curve 1 for hammer operation since as described above, oil throughput is not set to maximum in this case and therefore the hydraulic output is not fully available for hammer operation.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Left-hand control lever

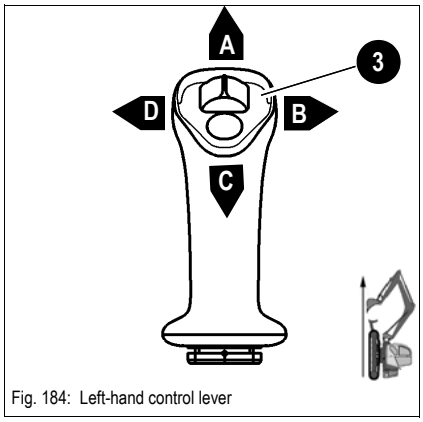


Fig. 184: Left-hand control lever

Position	Lever	Function
A	Forwards	Stick is extended
B	To the right	Upper carriage rotates to the right
C	Backwards	Stick is retracted
D	To the left	Upper carriage rotates to the left

Danger!

Unintentional operation of the control levers –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Always carry out smooth control movements.*

Changeover between auxiliary hydraulics and boom swivel

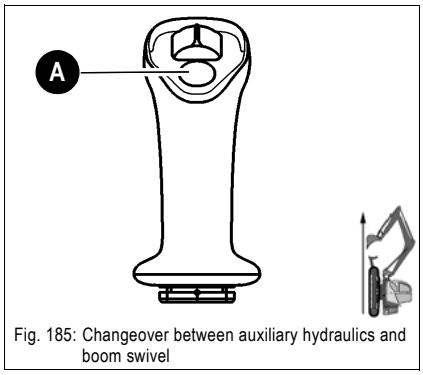


Fig. 185: Changeover between auxiliary hydraulics and boom swivel

Starting the machine automatically switches on the auxiliary hydraulics.

Switching on boom swivel

☞ *Press button **A** on the control lever.*

Switching on auxiliary hydraulics

☞ *Release button **A** on the control lever.*

Switching the status indicator on/off for auxiliary hydraulics/boom swivel

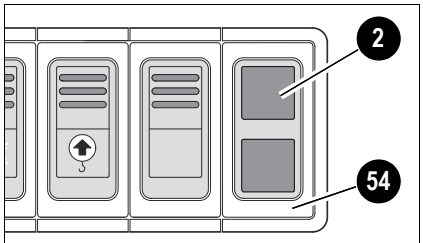


Fig. 186: Status indicator (up to serial no. AH02749)

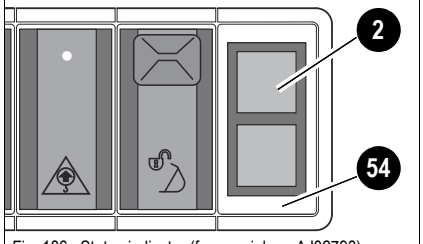


Fig. 186: Status indicator (from serial no. AJ02793)

Boom swivel switched ON

☞ *Indicator light **2** in status indicator **54** comes on permanently.*

➥ Auxiliary hydraulics is switched off and the boom can be swivelled.

Auxiliary hydraulics switched ON

☞ *Indicator light **2** in status indicator **54** is not lit.*

➥ The boom cannot be swivelled and the auxiliary hydraulics is now operational.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Operating the boom/auxiliary hydraulics

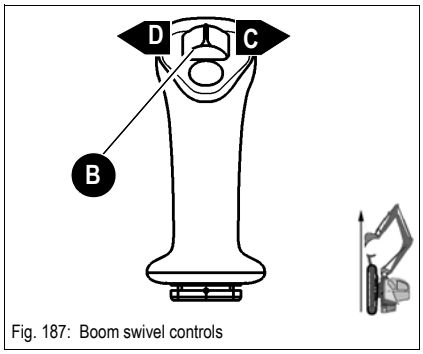


Fig. 187: Boom swivel controls

Movement to the left

☞ *Move slide switch **B** on the control lever to the left **D**.*

Movement to the right

☞ *Move slide switch **B** on the control lever to the right **C**.*

Hammer operation

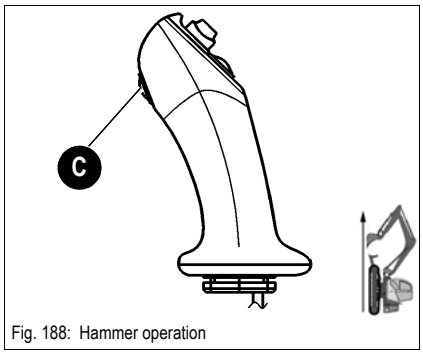


Fig. 188: Hammer operation

Switching on hammer operation

☞ *Press and hold button **C** on the control lever.*

Switching off hammer operation

☞ *Release button **C** on the control lever.*

Adjusting control response

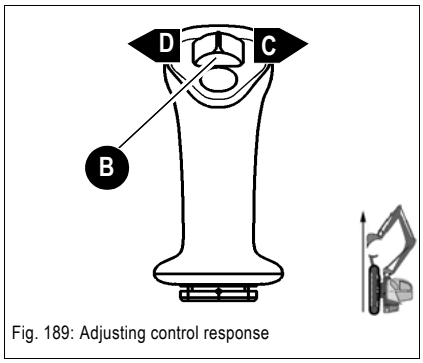


Fig. 189: Adjusting control response

Characteristic curve 1 (slow movements)

☞ *Switch off ignition.*

☞ *Press and hold slide switch **B** towards **D**.*

☞ *Switch on ignition at the same time.*

☞ *Wait 2 seconds and then release slide switch **B**.*

➥ Status indicator 54 acknowledges by flashing once.

Characteristic curve 2 (fast movements – maximum throughput)

☞ *Switch off ignition.*

☞ *Press and hold slide switch **B** towards **C**.*

☞ *Switch on ignition at the same time.*

☞ *Wait 2 seconds and then release slide switch **B**.*

➥ Status indicator **54** acknowledges by flashing twice.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Characteristic curves – status indicator

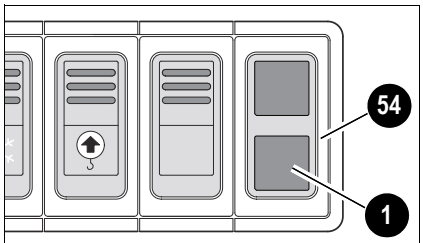


Fig. 190: Characteristic curves – status indicator (up to serial no. AH02749)

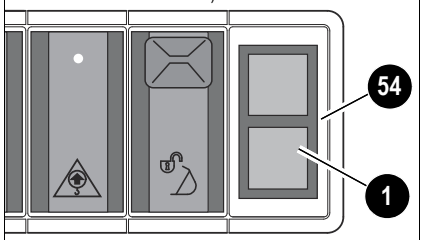


Fig. 190: Characteristic curves – status indicator (from serial no. AJ02793)

Displays the characteristic curve that has been selected for the control valve.

Characteristic curve 1 (slow movements)

➥ Indicator light **1** in status indicator **54** flashes once after switching on ignition.

Characteristic curve 2 (fast movements – maximum throughput)

➥ Indicator light **1** in status indicator **54** flashes twice after switching on ignition.

Notice!

The characteristic curve that has been set last is always active after the machine is started again.

Right-hand control lever

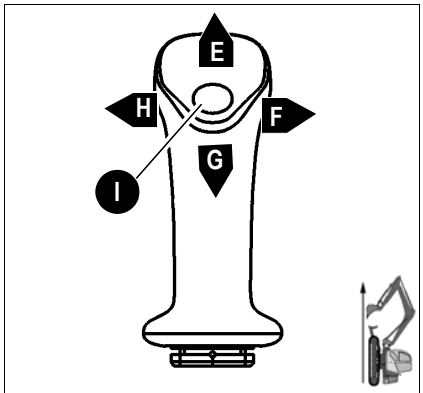


Fig. 191: Right-hand control lever

Position	Lever	Function
E	Forwards	Boom is lowered
F	To the right	Dumps out the bucket
G	Backwards	Boom is raised
H	To the left	Dumps in the bucket
I		Horn

Releasing pressure

– *see Pressure release with proportional controls (option)* on page 3-89.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.50 Control lever if equipped with 3rd control circuit (option): overview

Notice!

Moving the control lever quickly causes the attachment to move quickly. Slow actuation of the control lever moves the attachment slowly.

Danger!

Unintentional operation of the control levers –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Always carry out smooth control movements.*

Left-hand control lever

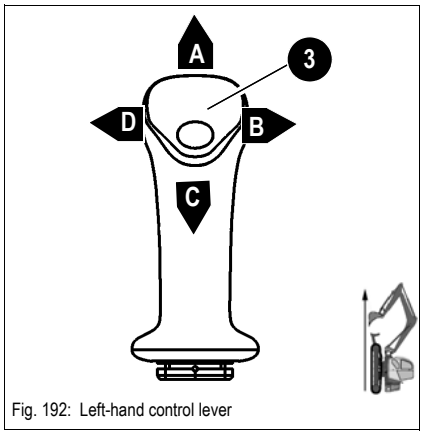


Fig. 192: Left-hand control lever

Position	Lever	Function
A	Forwards	Stick is extended
B	To the right	Upper carriage rotates to the right
C	Backwards	Stick is retracted
D	To the left	Upper carriage rotates to the left

Notice!

Always carry out smooth control movements.

Boom swivel (up to serial no. AH02749)

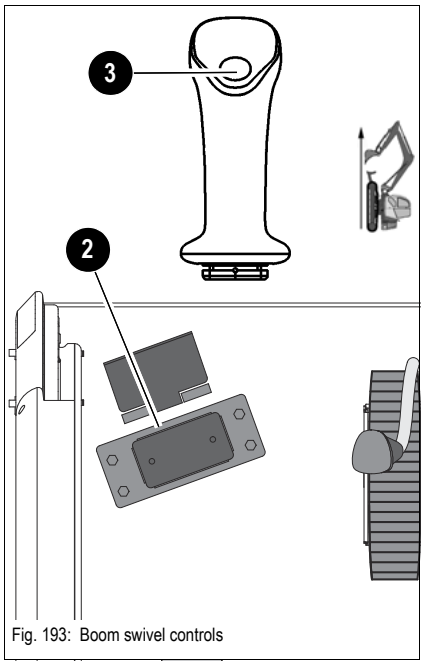


Fig. 193: Boom swivel controls

Swivelling the boom to the left

☞ *Press and hold the button on control lever **3**.*

☞ Press hammer pedal **2** to the left at the same time.

Swivelling the boom to the right

☞ *Press and hold the button on control lever **3**.*

☞ Press hammer pedal **2** to the right at the same time.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Boom swivel (from serial no. AJ02793)

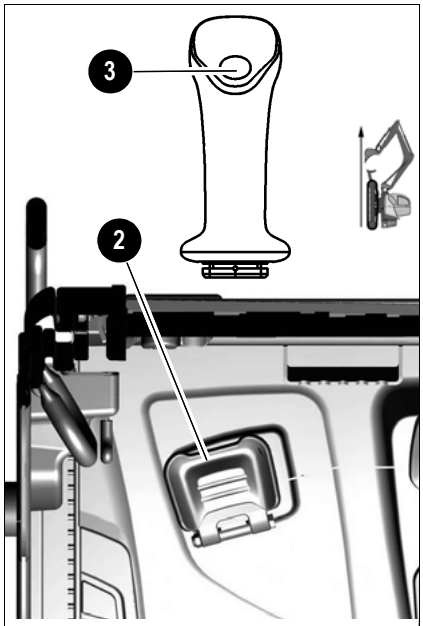


Fig. 194: Boom swivel controls

Swivelling the boom to the left

☞ *Press and hold the button on control lever **3**.*

☞ Press hammer pedal **2** to the left at the same time.

Swivelling the boom to the right

☞ *Press and hold the button on control lever **3**.*

☞ Press hammer pedal **2** to the right at the same time.

Right-hand control lever

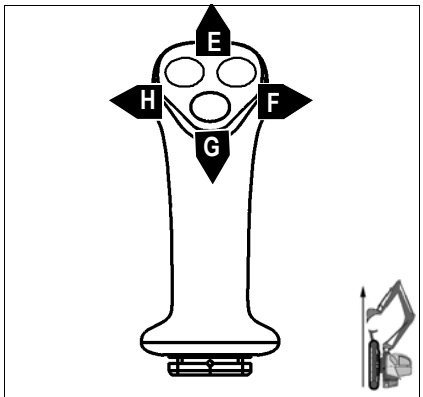


Fig. 195: Right-hand control lever

Position	Lever	Function
E	Forwards	Boom is lowered
F	To the right	Dumps out the bucket
G	Backwards	Boom is raised
H	To the left	Dumps in the bucket

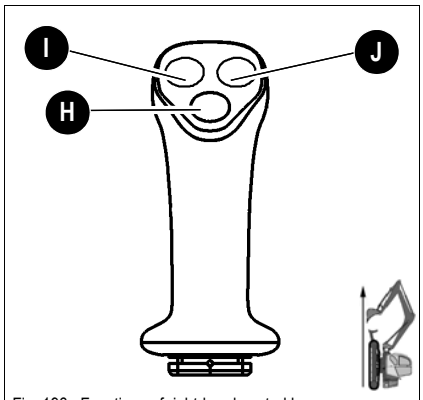


Fig. 196: Functions of right-hand control lever

Button	Function
H	Horn
I	Operates the 3rd control circuit
J	Operates the 3rd control circuit

Releasing pressure

☞ – *see Releasing pressure* on page 3-83

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.51 Vario (8003 option)

Danger!

Lower the boom to the ground when using the Vario feature, otherwise –

Danger of accidents

☞ *When using the Vario feature, support the machine with the boom on the ground.*

Vario operation

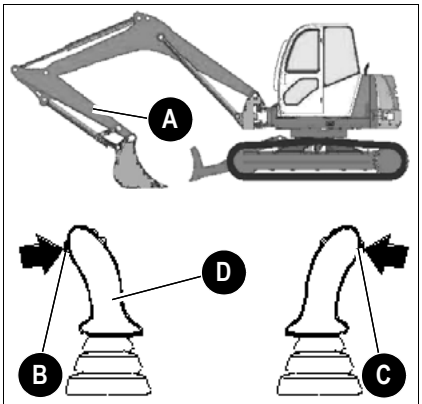


Fig. 197: Vario operation

The following steps must be followed under all circumstances when changing the eccentric position.

☞ *Lower boom **A** to the ground.*

☞ *To unlock the Vario feature, press and hold both front switches on the left-hand joystick **B** and right-hand joystick **C**.*

☞ Press and hold both buttons **B** and **C** about 5 seconds without moving the joysticks to unlock.

- The Vario feature has four lock positions at offset positions of 90° each.

☞ *Press the left-hand joystick **D** to the left or right for a 90° rotation, press and hold buttons **B** and **C** as you do so.*

☞ Both buttons **B** and **C** can be released once the machine moves.

➥ The Vario feature automatically engages after a 90° rotation.

☞ *If repositioning beyond 90° is required with the Vario feature, press buttons **B** and **C** beyond the 90° lock position.*

➥ As soon as buttons **B** and **C** are released, the Vario feature engages in the next possible lock position.

Notice!

Ensure that the lock is engaged correctly.

Driving across slopes with the Vario feature

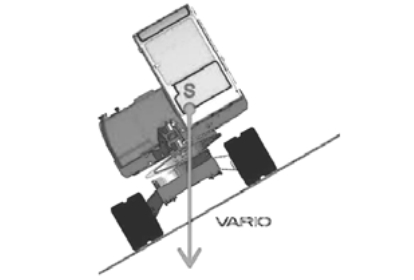


Fig. 198: Driving on slopes

Danger!

For safety reasons, only the eccentric position shown in *Fig. 198* may be selected for driving across slopes.

- For increased stability for driving across slopes, position the machine with respect to the slope as shown in *Fig. 198*.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

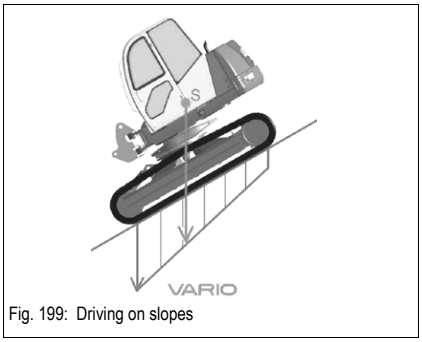


Fig. 199: Driving on slopes

- For improved driving features on slopes, reposition the centre of gravity towards the slope with the Vario feature.

Vario warning device

Danger!

Do not bypass the warning device or make it inoperative. Working with the machine is only allowed with a fully functional warning light.

Caution, danger

☞ *This safety feature must be checked by an authorised workshop every time maintenance is carried out.*

☞ *The warning light features a functional check. The warning light comes on briefly every time the machine is started. Always ensure that the warning light is fully functional.*

Depending on the position of the Vario feature, stability is higher or lower with respect to a standard machine.
Observe the following
– *see chapter 6.21 Lift capacity table 8003* on page 6-18 and the warning ranges *Fig. 200*.

Warning ranges

A	B
Crosswise working	Lengthwise working
Reduced stability	Upper carriage not in proper range with respect to Vario feature, no modification of stability (hydraulically limited)

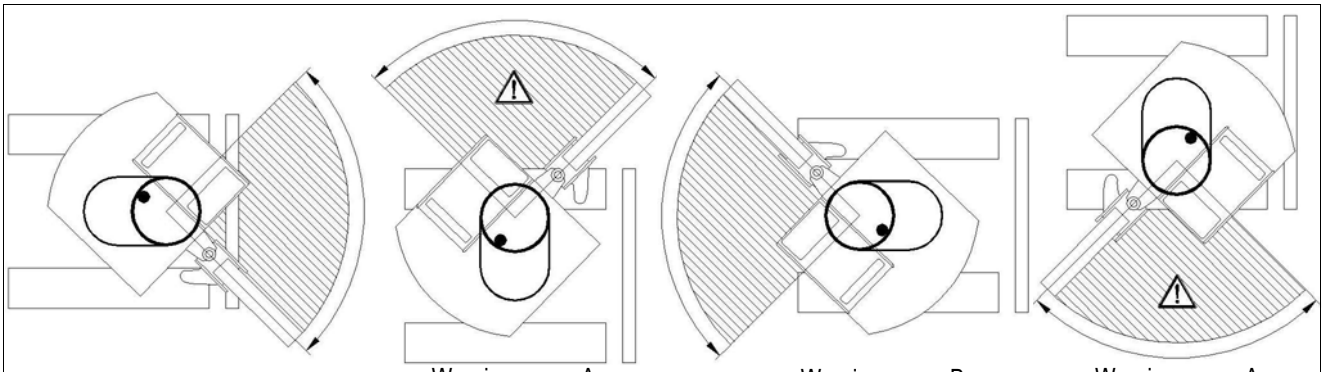


Fig. 200: Warning range

https://truckmanualshub.com/

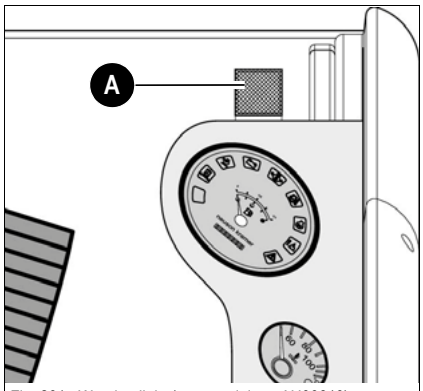


Fig. 201: Warning light (up to serial no. AH00610)

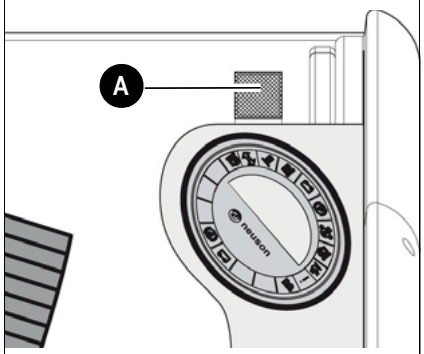


Fig. 201: Warning light (from serial no. AH00611)

Danger!

The machine can tip over if the boom is not lowered and swivelled out of the danger zone as soon as the alarm is given (warning light **A**), or if the alarm is ignored

Danger of accidents

☞ *Brake the upper carriage and rotate it in the other direction.*

The warning device is set to 73 % of the static tilt load in an unfavourable position of the upper carriage. As soon as the load is exceeded and work is carried out in an unfavourable position of the upper carriage (warning range), or if the upper carriage is rotated into the warning range, the warning sounds briefly and warning light **A** comes on.

Working with the Vario feature

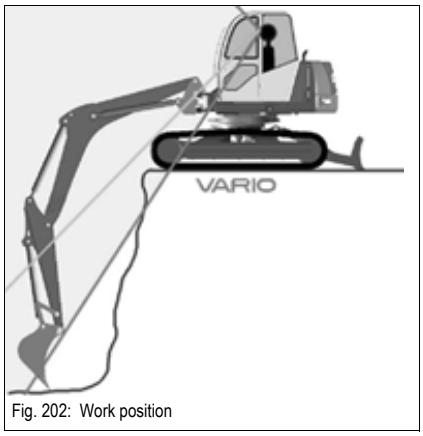


Fig. 202: Work position

The upper carriage can be rotated to the side with the stabiliser blade for excavating pits. This ensures increased stability when working on the side opposite the stabiliser blade, with perfect visibility of the pit.

Improved reach with the Vario feature

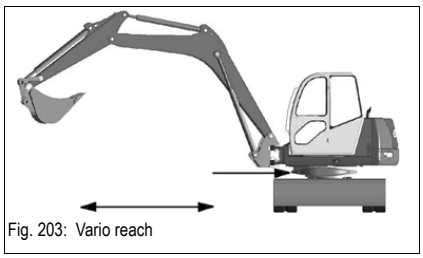


Fig. 203: Vario reach

- Reach can be improved with the Vario feature.

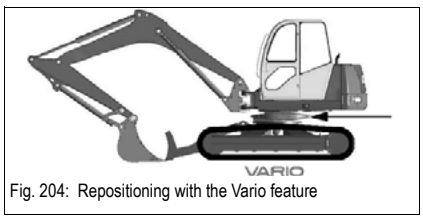


Fig. 204: Repositioning with the Vario feature

The bucket can be moved up to the stabiliser blade by repositioning the upper carriage to the side opposite the blade.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.52 Releasing the pressure on the work hydraulics

Danger!

Before connecting or removing hydraulic lines from the attachment, ensure that the work hydraulics is not under pressure.

Danger of personal injury.

☞ *Ensure that no-one is dangerously close to the machine.*

Notice!

The hydraulic system of the machine is still pressurised even when the engine is not running. The hydraulic quick couplers can be released, however they cannot be re-attached due to the residual pressure in the lines.

- Release the pressure in the sections of the system and hydraulic lines which are to be opened before starting setup or repair work, e.g. fitting/removing an attachment.

Releasing pressure

☞ *Place the machine on level ground.*

☞ *Lower the attachment completely to the ground.*

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Turn the ignition key to position **1**.*

☞ *Move the control lever or the pedal of the hydraulic circuit in all directions repeatedly.*

➥ The pressure in the system sections that have been actuated is released. This can be seen by the brief movement the hoses make as the pressure is actually released.

➥ Uncouple the attachment immediately after the pressure has been released, otherwise pressure can be created again.

Pressure release with proportional controls (option)

☞ *Park the machine on level ground.*

☞ *Lower the attachment completely to the ground.*

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Turn the ignition key to position **1**.*

➥ Release the load only after you have switched on ignition and waited 2 seconds (otherwise if actuated too early, the characteristic curve is shifted and the load is not released).

☞ *Release the pressure on the auxiliary hydraulics or the 3rd control circuit by pressing the rocker switch connected with the left or right-hand proportional joystick to the left and right.*

➥ The pressure in the system sections that have been actuated is released. This can be seen by the brief movement the hoses make as the pressure is actually released.

➥ Uncouple the attachment immediately after the pressure has been released, otherwise pressure can be created again.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.53 Re-equipping attachments

Re-equipping the attachments is described below for a bucket. If you are fitting or removing attachments with their own hydraulic functions – e.g. grab or offset bucket – you must follow the special information given in the Operator's Manual of the attachment.
Also refer to the Operator's Manual of the attachment for the procedure to follow for fitting an attachment onto a quickhitch.

Specific safety instructions

Danger!

Re-equipping attachments –

Danger of personal injury

☞ *Avoid accidents and injuries by following the information below:*

- Stop the engine
- Fold the control lever base up.
- Re-equip attachments only with suitable tools.
- Do not align components with your fingers or your hands but use suitable tools – danger of crushing.

☞ *Once you have re-equipped the attachments, or before starting work, ensure that the attachment is safely locked with the stick and the tilt rod, or with the quickhitch (option).*

- Driving in pins with a suitable tool (e. g. soft-face hammer) can still cause them to splinter, which can cause severe personal injury.
  ☞ Wear protective equipment (e.g. protective clothing, safety goggles).
- Do not stand behind the bucket when removing pins.
  ☞ Do not place your foot underneath the bucket.
- Pay special attention to your fingers when removing and reinserting pins.
- Never insert fingers in the bores of the pins as you align them.

Removing a bucket

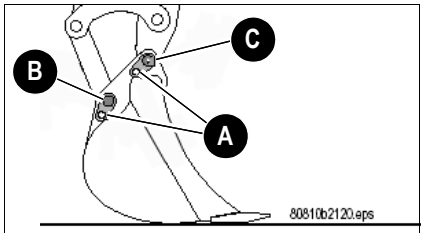


Fig. 205: Removing a bucket

- Lower the bucket to the ground with its flat side facing down.
- Stop the engine.
- Fold the control lever base up.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Remove linch pins **A**.
- First remove pin **B**, and then pin **C**. Carefully expel pins that are stuck with a suitable tool (e. g. soft-face hammer and brass punch).

If pin **C** is stuck:

- Start the engine.
- Slighty raise and lower the boom to take the load off the pin.
- Stop the engine.
- Fold the control lever base up.
- Remove the ignition key.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Notice!

Place the bucket only with minimum pressure on the ground as you remove the pins. The higher the pressure on the ground, the higher the resistance and the more difficult it is to remove the pins.

Mounting a bucket

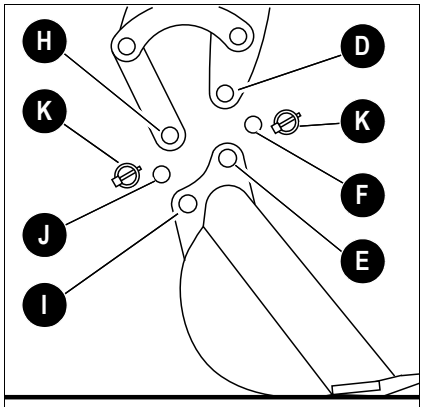


Fig. 206: Mounting a bucket

- Mount a bucket only if it is positioned on level ground with the flat side facing downwards.
- Apply grease to the pins and joints before inserting the pins.
- Start the engine.
- Straighten the stick so that bores **D** and **E** are flush.
- Insert greased pin **F**.
- Actuate the stick ram until bores **H** and **I** are flush.
- Insert the greased pin **J**.
- Mount linch pins **K**.

3.54 Quickhitch (option)

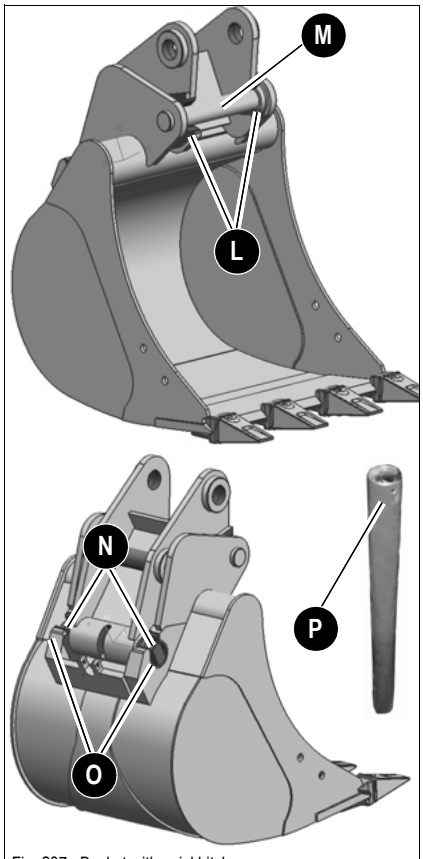


Fig. 207: Bucket with quickhitch

Danger!

The attachment must always be safely locked onto the quickhitch –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Before starting work, ensure that the attachment is securely locked onto the quickhitch by means of the lock mechanism. You must be able to see the lock on either side of the mounting bore of the attachment.*

Picking up

- Approach the machine to the attachment.
- Pick up the bucket with coupling bar **M** and coupling claws **L** of the quickhitch.
- Engage lock mechanism **N** into mounting bore **O**.
- Place the bucket on level ground.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

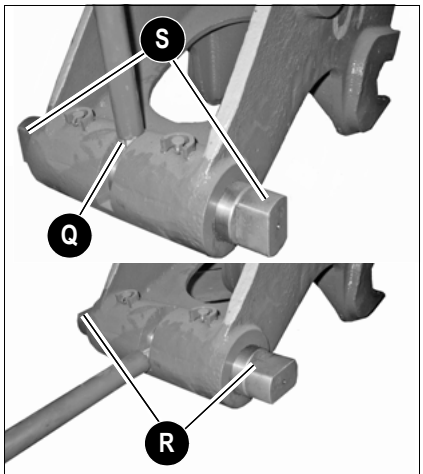


Fig. 208: Bucket with quickhitch

Locking

- Stop the engine.
- Insert tube **P** (included in scope of delivery) in clamping sleeve **Q**.
- Press the tube downwards.
- The lock pin must be in position **R**.

Unlocking

- Stop the engine.
- Insert tube **P** (included in scope of delivery) in clamping sleeve **Q**.
- Press the tube upwards.
- The lock pin must be in position **S**.
- Disengage lock mechanism **N** at the mounting bores **O.**
- Disengage coupling bar **M** at coupling claws **L**.
- Place the bucket on level ground.

3.55 Hydraulic quickhitch – Easy Lock (option)

Caution!

Before putting this feature into operation, specific training must be carried out by authorised technical staff and must be understood by the operator. For safety reasons, the quickhitch must be operated with two control elements. This avoids opening the quickhitch unintentionally during work operation.

Danger!

Before starting work, ensure that the attachment is mounted correctly and that it is fully functional.

Do not allow anyone to stay in the danger zone.

☞ *For instance, with a short and rapid succession of stick and bucket movements as close as possible to the ground.*

☞ *Never operate an attachment with a defective lock.*

Danger!

For system-specific reasons, the hydraulic quickhitch opens and closes with the functions “Stabiliser blade”, “Auxiliary hydraulics”, “Boom swivel”, “3rd control circuit (option)” and “Rotate upper carriage”.

For safety reasons, only use the function “Raise stabiliser blade” to open or close.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Picking up an attachment

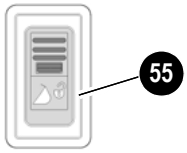


Fig. 209: Quickhitch switch (up to serial no. AH02749)

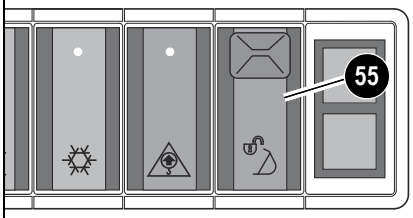


Fig. 209: Quickhitch switch (from serial no. AJ02793)

☞ *Actuate switch **55**.*

➥ The buzzer sounds.

➥ The hydraulic quickhitch is enabled and can be operated.

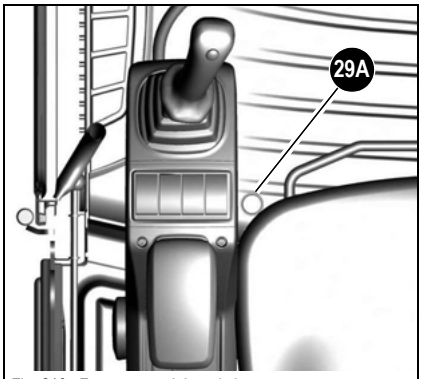


Fig. 210: Foot-operated tip switch

☞ *Press and hold foot-operated tip switch **29A**.*

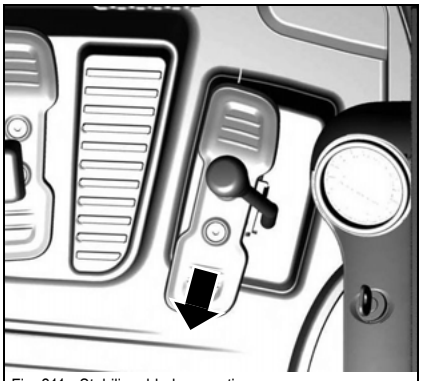


Fig. 211: Stabiliser blade operation

☞ *Pull and hold the stabiliser blade lever backwards (as far as it will go).*

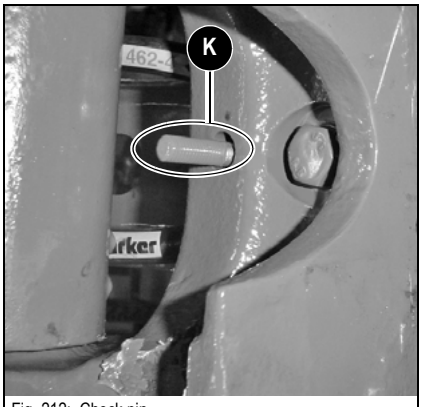


Fig. 212: Check pin

➥ The quickhitch opens.

➥ Check pin **K** (red) indicates that the quickhitch is fully open.

☞ *The stabiliser blade lever can be released once the quickhitch is open.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

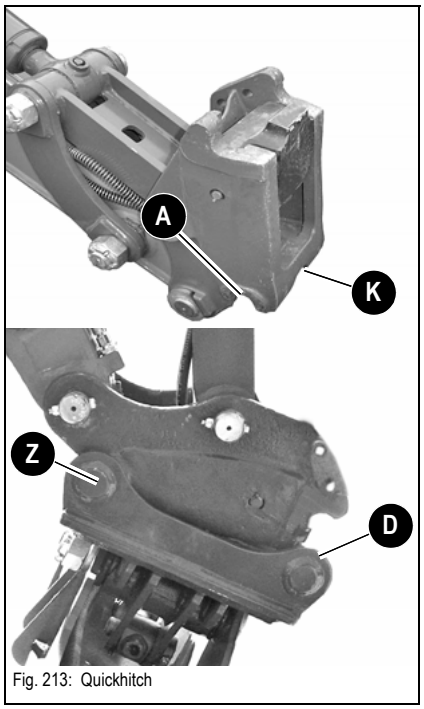


Fig. 213: Quickhitch

Setting down an attachment

☞ *Hitch claws **A** (on the side of the machine) into pins **Z** of the bucket mount.*

☞ *Extend the bucket ram so that the second pin **D** of the attachment touches the quickhitch.*

☞ Check whether the bucket touches the quickhitch with the second pin **D**.

☞ *Release foot-operated tip switch **29A**.*

☞ *Pull and hold the stabiliser blade lever backwards as far as it will go.*

➥ The quickhitch closes.

☞ *Switch off switch **55**.*

➥ The buzzer is mute.

➥ The hydraulic quickhitch is disabled.

☞ *Check the bucket and ensure that it is firmly installed.*

Caution!

The optical check pin **K** must be fully retracted.

☞ *Otherwise repeat the lock cycle until check pin **K** is retracted.*

☞ *Carry out a rotating movement with the attachment, which must not be slackened or released as you do so.*

Danger!

Set down attachments only on surfaces that allow to pick up them without any problems later on.

☞ Do not set down the attachment on soft, sloping, slippery surfaces or near edges.

☞ *Lower the attachment to about 5 – 10 cm (1.95 – 3.9 in) above the ground.*

☞ *Actuate switch **55**.*

➥ The buzzer sounds.

☞ *Press and hold foot-operated tip switch **29A**.*

☞ *Pull and hold the stabiliser blade lever backwards as far as it will go.*

➥ The quickhitch opens and unhitches the attachment.

➥ Check pin **K** (red) indicates that the quickhitch is fully open.

➥ Release the stabiliser blade lever.

☞ *Retract the bucket ram.*

➥ Set down the bucket.

☞ *Raise the boom.*

☞ *Release foot-operated tip switch **29A**.*

☞ *Pull and hold the stabiliser blade lever backwards as far as it will go.*

➥ The quickhitch closes.

☞ *Switch off switch **55**.*

➥ The buzzer is silent.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Shovel bucket operation

With some restrictions, Wacker Neuson backhoe buckets can also be used for shovel bucket operation.

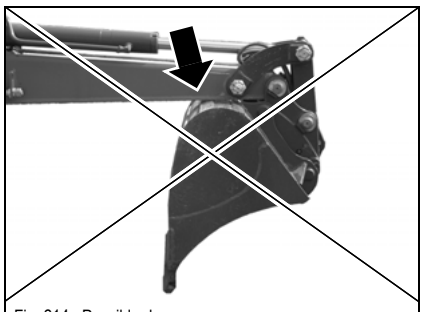


Fig. 214: Possible damage

Danger!

Do not tilt the bucket fully back in shovel bucket operation (see *Fig. 214*), otherwise the bucket base can touch and damage the stick.

3.56 Powertilt (option)

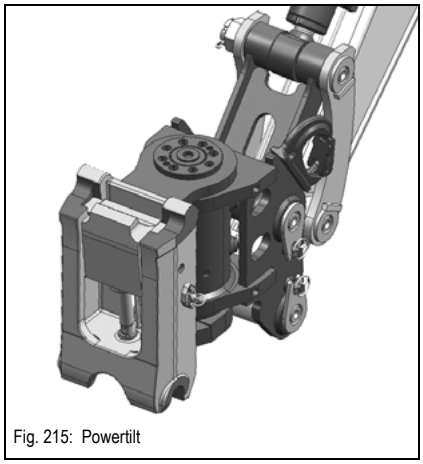


Fig. 215: Powertilt

Danger!

Danger of crushing due to the rotating movements of the Powertilt unit. The Powertilt unit extends the swivel radius of attachments.

Danger of severe crushing of body and of death.

☞ *Do not allow anyone to stay in the danger zone.*

Danger!

The Powertilt unit modifies a machine's geometry.

Danger of severe injuries and of damage to the machine

☞ *When working with the Powertilt unit and the attachment, ensure that they do not touch the boom or the cab.*

Two versions are available

- Powertilt with Easy Lock without load hook.
- Powertilt with Easy lock and load hook (option).

Do not put the Powertilt unit into operation unless:

☞ The machine is equipped with an acoustic or optical warning device
– see chapter 3.58 Safe load indicator (option) on page 3-98.

☞ The machine is equipped with a hose burst valve
– see chapter 3.59 Safety feature "Hose burst valve" (option) on page 3-99.

☞ *You read, understand and follow the instructions in the following chapter.*
– see chapter 2.12 Applications with lifting gear on page 2-9.

Notice!

When using the Powertilt unit, the maximum bucket width is limited to 1500 mm (59 in).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Re-equipping

Notice!

The Powertilt unit may be installed and removed only by an authorised workshop.

Operation

The Powertilt function is only available with proportional controls.

Notice!

The Powertilt function is enabled once the machine is started.

➥ The 3rd control circuit is disabled.

Danger!

Before any work, ensure that the attachment is mounted correctly and that it is fully functional.

Do not allow anyone to stay in the danger zone.

☞ *Never operate an attachment with a defective lock.*

Right-hand control lever (Powertilt)

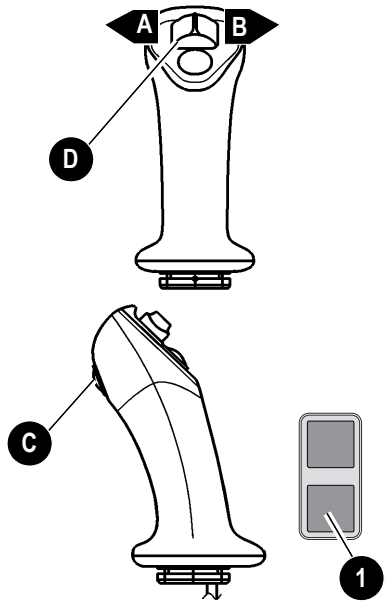


Fig. 216: Right-hand control lever

The Powertilt function is operated with the right-hand control lever.

Position	Lever	Function
A	To the left	Powertilt turns to the left
B	To the right	Powertilt turns to the right
C		Powertilt and 3rd control circuit changeover

Enabling the 3rd control circuit

☞ *Press button **C** on the control lever.*

☞ *The unit installed on the 3rd control circuit can be moved or turned to the left **A** or right **B** with slide switch **D**.*

☞ *Indicator light **1** of the proportional control status indicator comes on.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.57 Connections for auxiliary hydraulics

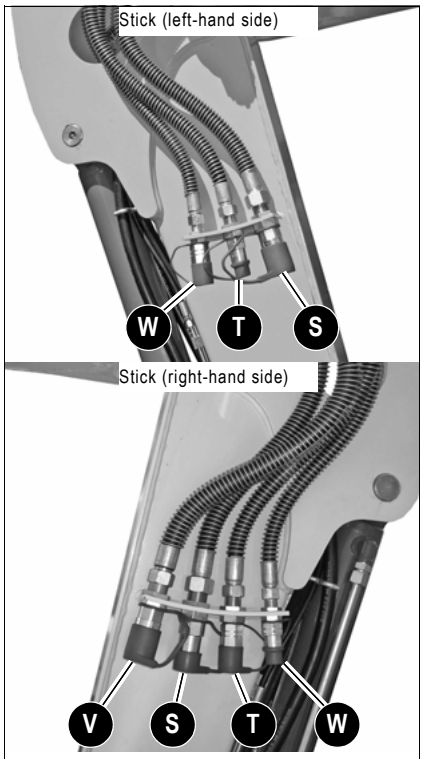


Fig. 217: Connections for auxiliary hydraulics

Connection	Stick (left)	Stick (right)
S	Auxiliary hydraulics	Auxiliary hydraulics
T	3rd control circuit (option)	3rd control circuit (option)
V	-	unpressurised return to hydraulic tank
W	Grab operation (option)	Grab operation (option)

Notice!

Follow the instructions in the Operator's Manual of the attachment manufacturer for connecting the auxiliary hydraulics to attachments.

Quickhitch couplings

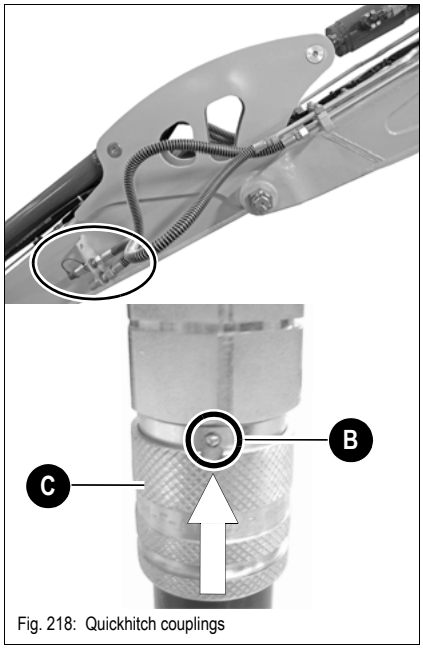


Fig. 218: Quickhitch couplings

Removing the coupling

☞ *Release the pressure in the work hydraulics – see chapter 3.52 Releasing the pressure on the work hydraulics on page 3-89.*

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Turn lock sleeve **C** towards lock ball **B**.*

☞ *Pull lock sleeve **C** upwards.*

➥ The coupling opens.

Connecting the coupling

☞ *Release the pressure in the work hydraulics – see chapter 3.52 Releasing the pressure on the work hydraulics on page 3-89.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Remove dirt from the coupling (extends the service life of the coupling).*

☞ *Position the coupling onto the stick ram connection making sure it is straight.*

☞ Then immediately couple the coupling onto the connection on the stick making sure it is straight.

☞ *Turn back the lock again (away from lock ball **B**).*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.58 Safe load indicator (option)

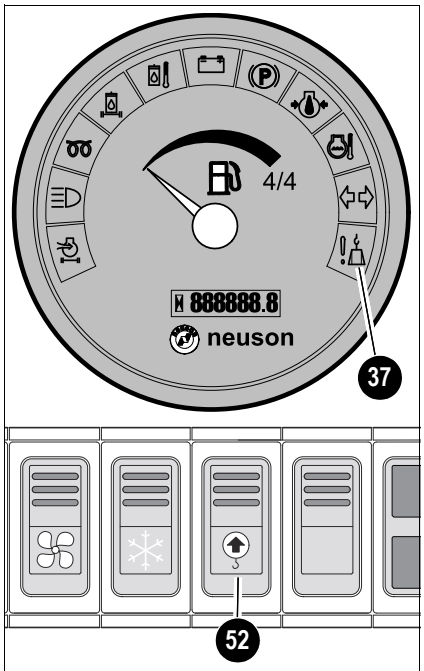


Fig. 219: Safe load indicator light (up to serial no. AH00610)

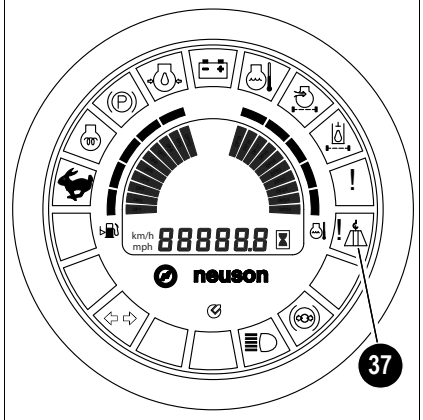


Fig. 219: Safe load indicator light (from serial no. AH00611)

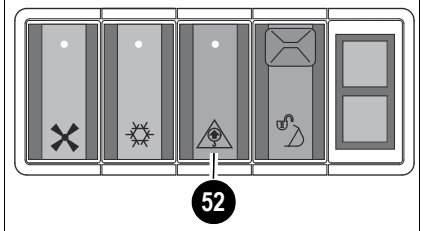


Fig. 219: Safe load indicator switch (from serial no. AJ02793)

Danger!

Safe load indicator not switched on or adjusted incorrectly –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Always switch on the safe load indicator during lifting gear applications.*

☞ *Contact an authorised workshop if the safe load indicator is not adjusted correctly (i.e. if it responds too early or too late).*

Switching on the safe load indicator:

☞ *Press switch* **52** *on the instrument panel backwards.*

➥ Indicator light **37** in the round display element comes on in case of overload.

Switching off the safe load indicator:

☞ *Press switch* ***52*** *on the instrument panel forwards.*

The safe load indicator light comes on, and an acoustic warning is given, to warn the user he has reached the maximum admissible load. Any further increase of the load moment can cause the machine to overturn in this situation. Therefore the user must immediately reduce the load moment as follows:

☞ *Reduce reach until both the acoustic signal and the indicator light in the round display element go out.*

Accidents cannot be excluded in spite of the safe load indicator if work is not carried out correctly.

This applies in particular to:

- Hitching lifting gear or loads on the lower side.
- Excessive deceleration or acceleration forces (abrupt braking or slewing with a load).
- Loads falling onto the lifting gear.
- Pulling sideways.
- Driving the machine on steep slopes.
- Wind loads.

Notice!

Avoid these dangerous situations by carefully planning your work with the machine.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.59 Safety feature “Hose burst valve” (option)

Notice!

The “Hose burst valve” safety feature avoids the boom from being lowered or dumped out without being braked, in the event of a bursting hose or pipe.

☞ *Proceed as follows in case of damage:*

- Stop the machine immediately.
- Move the boom to transport position.
- Fold the control lever base up.
- Stop the engine.
- Remove the ignition key and lock the cab.
- Secure the machine and the attachment.

Environment!

Collect the drained hydraulic oil in a suitable container.

- Dispose of drained hydraulic oil by an ecologically safe method.
- Always contact the relevant authorities or commercial establishments in charge of oil disposal before disposing of biodegradable oil.

3.60 Applications with lifting gear

Danger!

Lifting gear applications with the machine are only allowed if the following conditions are fulfilled:

☞ *Maximum authorised lifting capacity of over 1000 kg (2205 lbs.) or an overturning moment of over 40000 Nm (29,500 lbf ft).*

☞ *An acoustic or optical warning device – see chapter 3.58 Safe load indicator (option) on page 3-98.*

☞ *Hose burst valve – see chapter 3.59 Safety feature “Hose burst valve” (option) on page 3-99.*

☞ *Suitable equipment for fastening and securing loads must be available.*

☞ *The lift capacity table must be observed.*

☞ *Get informed on and follow the legal regulations of your country.*

☞ *Observe the safety instructions for lifting gear applications – see chapter 2.12 Applications with lifting gear on page 2-9.*

- Only hitch loads that do not exceed the load-bearing capacities of the machine or the lifting gear – see lift capacity tables on pages 6-14 to 6-26.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Lifting gear applications

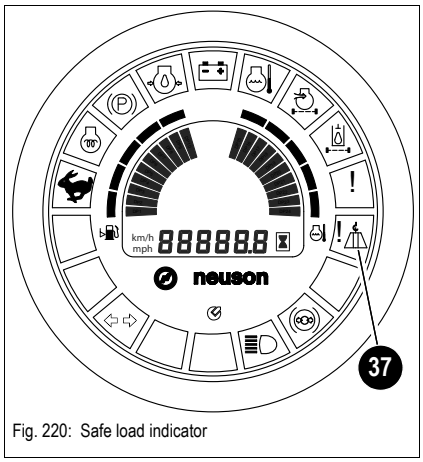


Fig. 220: Safe load indicator

Always switch on the safe load indicator during lifting gear applications and observe indicator light **37**.

As soon as indicator light **37** comes on:

☞ *Set down the load on the ground.*

☞ *Reduce reach and/or*

☞ *Reduce the load.*

Fastening loads

Danger!

Persons guiding the load or securing it must stay in visual contact with the machine operator. Otherwise –

Danger of accidents.

☞ *– see chapter 2.12 Applications with lifting gear on page 2-9.*

Caution!

The load must be secured so as to prevent it from falling or slipping.

☞ *– see chapter 2.12 Applications with lifting gear on page 2-9.*

3.61 Work area assessment and preparation

Examining the site

The driver must make himself familiar with the site before starting work.

He must know:

- whether there are any underground pipe lines (gas, water etc.) or electric cables in the work area. If this is the case, measures must be taken to ensure safety – together with the operator of the supply lines.
- whether the ground is stable enough for driving and working on. Special attention must be paid to the edges of slopes and pits, to undermined sections of the site etc.
- whether the visibility is sufficient. In case of poor visibility (e.g. if the supply lines cannot be seen by the driver), always work with a second person giving signals that have been agreed upon beforehand.

Preparing the ground

The faster and safer the machine and transport vehicles can move on the work site, the higher safety and profitability during work. To this effect, prepare the work area as follows before starting work:

- If possible, remove large obstacles from the work area.
- Level out thrown-up and very uneven ground.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.62 Working with the machine

Working with the standard bucket

The following section describes work operations with the machine equipped with the standard bucket.

The standard bucket is mainly used for digging earth, and for loosening, picking up, digging and loading loose or solid material.

Inadmissible work procedures

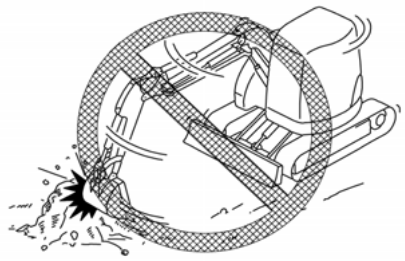


Fig. 221: Working with the swivel force

Working with the swivel force

☞ *Do not use the swivel force of the upper carriage to compact the ground or tear down piles or walls.*

☞ *Do not allow the bucket teeth to penetrate into the ground as you rotate the upper carriage.*

➥ This can damage the work equipment.

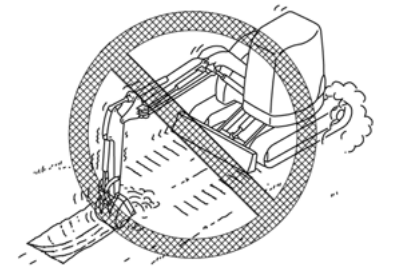


Fig. 222: Working with the drive force

Working with the drive force

☞ *Do not allow the bucket to penetrate into the ground and do not excavate by using the drive force of the machine.*

➥ This can damage the machine or the attachment.

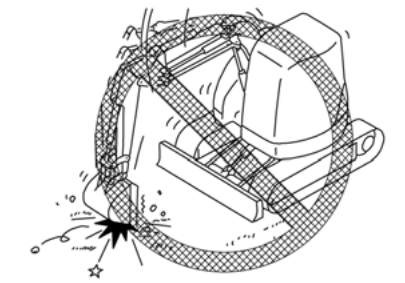


Fig. 223: Working with the falling force by lowering the bucket

Working with the falling force by lowering the bucket

☞ *Do not use the machine's falling force for excavating, and do not use the bucket's falling force as a hoe, hammer or pile-driver.*

➥ Working this way can greatly reduce the machine's service life.

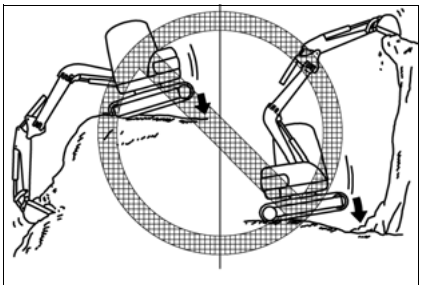


Fig. 224: Working with the falling force of the machine

Working with the falling force by lowering the machine

☞ *Do not use the machine's falling force for excavating.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

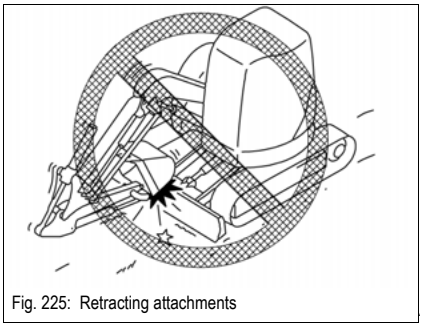


Fig. 225: Retracting attachments

Retracting attachments

☞ *Ensure that the bucket does not hit the stabiliser blade as you retract attachments for driving or transport.*

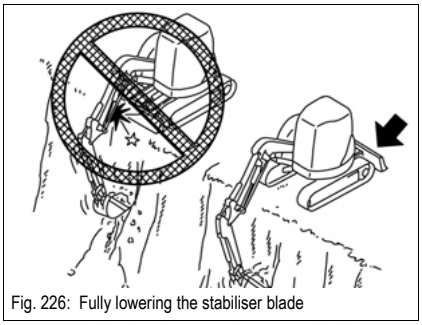


Fig. 226: Fully lowering the stabiliser blade

Fully lowering the stabiliser blade

☞ *Fully lower the stabiliser blade when using it on the side opposite the excavation side.*

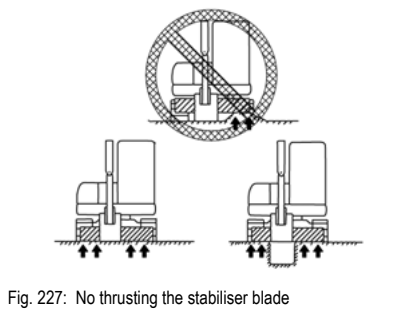


Fig. 227: No thrusting the stabiliser blade

No thrusting the stabiliser blade

☞ *Do not thrust the stabiliser blade against rocks or blocks to avoid damage to the rams and the blade itself.*

Work position of machine

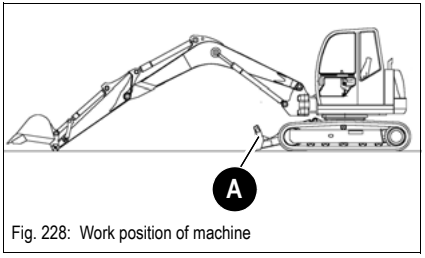


Fig. 228: Work position of machine

☞ *Place stabiliser blade **A** on the side you want to dig.*

Bucket position when digging

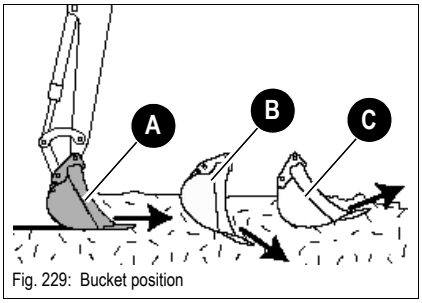


Fig. 229: Bucket position

☞ *Move the bucket as shown in **A**.*

➥ Move the flat side of the bucket parallel to the ground.

Notice!

Position **B** causes the bucket to penetrate into the ground. Work slows down, and the engine and the hydraulic pump are subject to overload if this position is used over a longer period of time.
Position **C** causes the bucket to be forced upwards and not to be filled completely. This slows down work, too.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

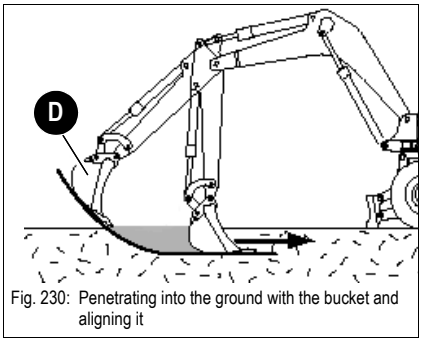


Fig. 230: Penetrating into the ground with the bucket and aligning it

☞ *Penetrate into the ground with bucket **D**.*

☞ *Lower the stick and at the same time align the bucket until*

☞ *reaching the required digging depth and*

☞ *the flat side of the bucket is parallel to the ground (see bucket position).*

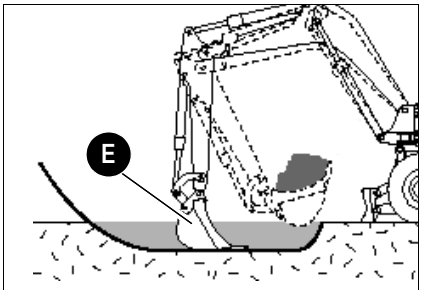


Fig. 231: Filling the bucket

☞ *Pull bucket **E** parallel to the ground towards the machine. At the same time, if possible:*

- Move the stick towards the machine.
- Lower the boom.

☞ *With a sufficiently full bucket **E**:*

- Keep on moving the stick towards the machine and at the same time.
- Tilt in the stick.

Excavating trenches

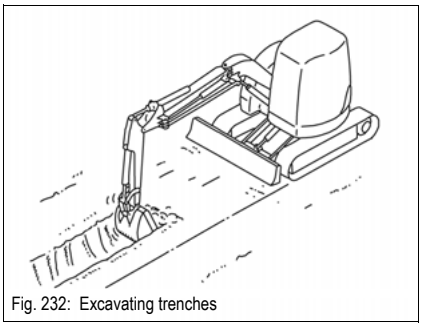


Fig. 232: Excavating trenches

- Excavating trenches is more efficient

  ☞ by using a suitable bucket for this work and positioning the tracks parallel to the limit line of the trench.

  ☞ In case of large trenches, first excavate the side sections and then the centre section.

Loading

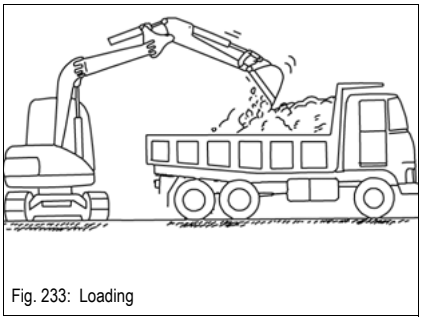


Fig. 233: Loading

- Loading in confined areas with a limited angle of rotation is more efficient

  ☞ by positioning the truck so as to ensure maximum visibility for the driver of the machine.

- Loading material on trucks is easier and faster

  ☞ if the machine is at the rear end of the truck and not at the side.

Caution!

Rocks can fall or be chipped off during loading.

☞ *Ensure that no-one is dangerously close to the machine.*

☞ *Wear protective equipment (e.g. protective clothing, safety goggles).*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Grading

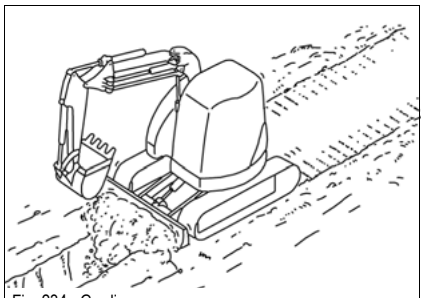


Fig. 234: Grading

- Use the stabiliser blade to fill in trenches and to grade (even out) surfaces.

Notice!

Work on level ground. Grade with the stabiliser blade first in case of sloping ground.

Excavating trenches laterally

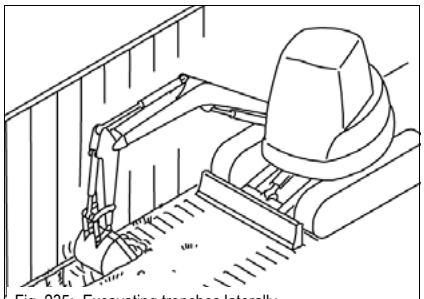


Fig. 235: Excavating trenches laterally

- The machine can be used in tight spaces for excavating trenches laterally,
  ☞ by rotating the upper carriage and swivelling the main boom (combined position and movement of both).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Working alongside trenches

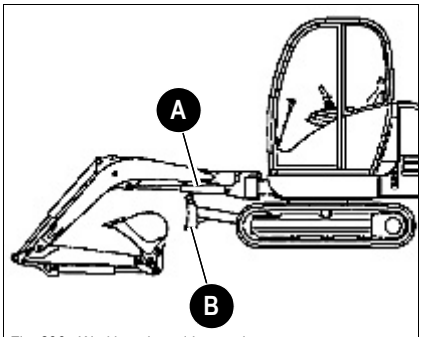


Fig. 236: Working alongside trenches

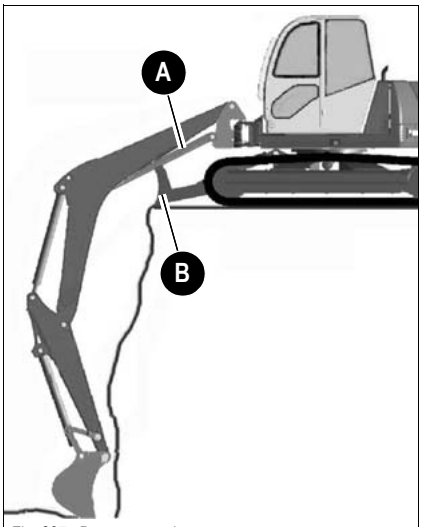


Fig. 237: Deep excavation

Stabiliser blade at rear

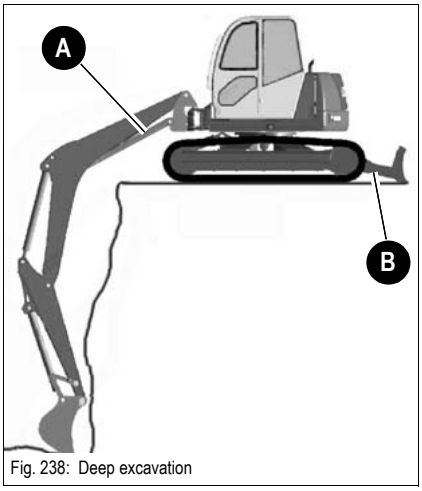


Fig. 238: Deep excavation

Caution!

Danger of damaging piston rod **A** of the boom ram when working alongside trenches, slopes etc. and operating the stabiliser blade and the boom incorrectly.

☞ *Always use stabiliser blade **B** for stabilisation during excavation work.*

☞ *Ensure that stabiliser blade **B** never touches piston rod **A**.*

☞ *If you carry out deep excavations with stabiliser blade **B** at the front, ensure that piston rod **A** does not touch or rest on stabiliser blade **B** (Fig. 237).*

Danger!

Improper or careless operation of machine when working alongside trenches, slopes, etc., with the stabiliser blade **B** at the rear –

Danger of falling.

☞ *Use this work position (Fig. 238) only in an extreme emergency since the machine can tip over forwards into the trench.*

☞ *We recommend using the first work position (Fig. 237) described above and to ensure that piston rod **A** does not touch stabiliser blade **B** under any circumstances.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Further practical hints for digging

When planning and carrying out digging work, we recommend that you observe the following points:

- Exits from pits must be outside the digging line and as level as possible.
- Dig by removing adjacent strips if possible.
- Ensure that you can drive forwards when driving out of the digging area with a fully loaded bucket.
- Whenever possible, drive in reverse when transporting a full bucket down a steep slope.

Loading vehicles

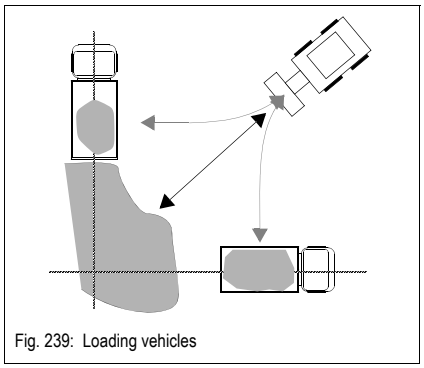


Fig. 239: Loading vehicles

When loading vehicles, we recommend taking the following into account:

- If possible, the vehicle and the working direction of the bucket should form an angle of 45°.
- Raise the full bucket to dump height only as you rotate towards the vehicle to be loaded.
- If possible dump with the wind behind you to keep the dust away from your eyes, air filters and fans.

Freeing the machine

☞ *Dump out the bucket until the blade is vertical above the ground.*

☞ *Lower the boom all the way.*

☞ *Slowly dump out the bucket.*

➥ The machine is pushed backwards.

☞ *Reverse slowly.*

☞ *Repeat this procedure until the tracks reach firm ground.*

☞ *Reverse the machine away.*

3.63 Grading

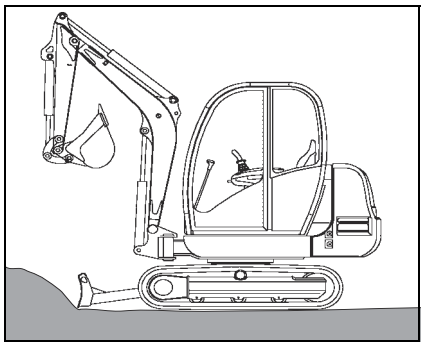
Danger!

Careful when grading –

Danger of accidents

☞ *Ensure that no-one is in the danger zone when working with the stabiliser blade.*

Grading



☞ *Lower the stabiliser blade to the ground*
– see chapter 3.18 Stabiliser blade operation on page 3-32.

☞ *Set the depth of the layer you want to remove with the stabiliser blade lever.*

➥ No raising the machine by lowering the stabiliser blade.

➥ The clearance between the stabiliser blade and the ground should be about 1 cm (0.39 in).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

3.64 Increased volume of auxiliary hydraulics 8003 (from serial no. AJ02782)

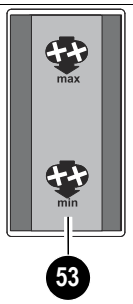
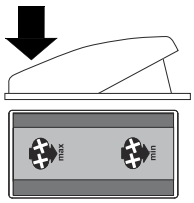
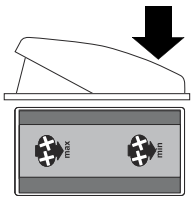


Fig. 240: Switch for increased volume

The flow rate is adjusted with switch **53**.

This makes it possible to adapt the working speed of the auxiliary hydraulics to a specific work situation.

Pump flow rate		
max 	☞ *Press switch **53** to position **max** (switch in OFF position)*	➥Full oil flow of 111 litres per minute
min 	☞ *Press switch **53** downwards to position **min** (switch in ON position)*	➥Reduced oil flow of 76.7 litres per minute

Notice!

With the swich in position **max**, the following functions are slowed down:

- Upper carriage rotation.
- Stabiliser blade raising/lowering.
- Triple articulation boom retraction/extension (option).
- 3rd control circuit (option).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

https://truckmanualshub.com/

4 Troubleshooting

The information given in this chapter is provided for maintenance staff, for fast and reliable detection of malfunctions and their appropriate repair.

Repairs must be carried out by authorised staff.

4.1 Troubleshooting the engine

Problem	Possible causes	See
Engine does not start or is not easy to start	Wrong SAE grade of engine lubrication oil	*5-54*
	Fuel grade does not comply with specifications	*5-54*
	Defective or flat battery	*5-40*
	Loose or oxidised cable connections in starter circuit	
	Defective starter, or pinion does not engage	
	Wrong valve clearance	
	Defective fuel injector	
	Defective cutoff solenoid	
	Defective fuse	
Engine starts, but does not run smoothly or faultless	Fuel grade does not comply with specifications	*5-54*
	Dirty fuel filter	
	Wrong valve clearance	
	Injection line leaks	
	Defective fuel injector	
Engine overheats. Temperature warning system responds	Oil pressure too low/too high	*5-7*
	Dirty air filter	*5-12*
	Dirty radiator fins	*5-9*
	Coolant level too low	*5-10*
	Cooling system leaks	
	Resistance in cooling system too high, flow capacity too low	
	Defective fan, torn or loose V-belt	*5-25*
	Defective fuel injector	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Problem		Possible causes	See
Insufficient engine output		Oil level too high	*5-7*
		Fuel grade does not comply with specifications	*5-5*
		Dirty air filter	*5-12*
		Defective air filter maintenance switch or gauge	*5-12*
		Wrong valve clearance	
		Injection line leaks	
		Defective fuel injector	
Engine does not run on all cylinders		Defective fuel injection pump	
		Injection line leaks	
		Defective fuel injector	
Insufficient or no engine oil pressure		Oil level too low	*5-7*
		Machine inclination too high	
		Wrong SAE grade of engine lubrication oil	*5-54*
Engine oil consumption too high		Oil level too high	*5-7*
		Worn oil scraper ring	
		Machine inclination too high	
		Wrong SAE grade of engine lubrication oil	*5-54*
Engine smoke	Blue	Oil level too high	*5-7*
		Wrong oil	
		Machine inclination too high	
	White[1]	Engine starting temperature too low	
		Fuel grade does not comply with specifications	*5-5*
		Wrong valve clearance	
		Defective fuel injector	
		Defective cylinder head	
	Black[2]	Dirty air filter	*5-12*
		Wrong valve clearance	
		Defective fuel injector	

1. A small amount of white exhaust gas after starting a cold engine is normal.
2. A small amount of black exhaust gas when starting the engine or during load shifts (additional start quantity) is normal

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Indicator lights

Problem	Possible causes	Troubleshooting
Engine oil pressure indicator light comes on during operation	Oil pressure too low	Switch off the engine immediately, check the oil level and fill up oil if necessary
		If oil level is OK, defective oil pump (contact an authorised workshop)
Temperature indicator comes on or acoustic signal sounds	Oil level too low	Fill up oil
	Coolant level too low	Fill up coolant
	Dirty radiator	Clean the radiator
	Fan blades turn too slowly	Retighten the V-belt
	Dirty air filter	Clean the air filter
Alternator charge function indicator light comes on during operation	Alternator does not charge correctly	Retighten the V-belt
Fuel gauge comes on	Not enough fuel	Fill up fuel
Chassis is difficult to slew, or does not slew at all	Brakes cannot be released	Contact an authorised workshop
	Insufficient lubrication	Lubricate the live ring
	Defective slewing motor	Contact an authorised workshop
Machine does not work, or with reduced output	Not enough hydraulic oil	Fill up hydraulic oil
	Hydraulic oil not warm yet	Run the engine warm
	Not enough engine output	Let the engine run warm
	Defective coupling or pump	Contact an authorised workshop
	Pressure limiting valves set too low	Contact an authorised workshop
	Damaged hydraulic rams	Contact an authorised workshop
	Damaged control valves	Contact an authorised workshop
Ram is lowered too fast	Dirty or defective seals	Contact an authorised workshop
	Heavy leakage at the spools	Contact an authorised workshop
	Defective secondary cartridge	Contact an authorised workshop
Hydraulic lines overheat	Clogged hydraulic oil filter	Clean or replace the filter

Seals, hoses

Problem	Possible causes	Troubleshooting
Oil, fuel spots under the engine	Loose hose connection	Tighten the hose
	Damaged seal or hoses	Replace the seals and hoses, and check the oil level and fill up oil if necessary

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Problem	Possible causes	Troubleshooting
Oil loss in hydraulic system	Loose hose fittings	Retighten the hose fittings, check the hydraulic oil level and fill up oil if necessary
	Damaged seals, hoses or pipe lines	Replace the seals, hoses or pipe lines (authorised workshop)

Undercarriage

Problem	Possible causes	Troubleshooting
Not possible to drive	Foreign bodies	Remove foreign bodies
	Defective gearbox	Contact an authorised workshop

https://truckmanualshub.com/

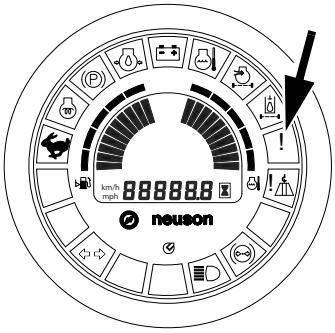
4.2 Engine error codes:

In the case of specific errors:

➥ Engine speed and output is reduced.

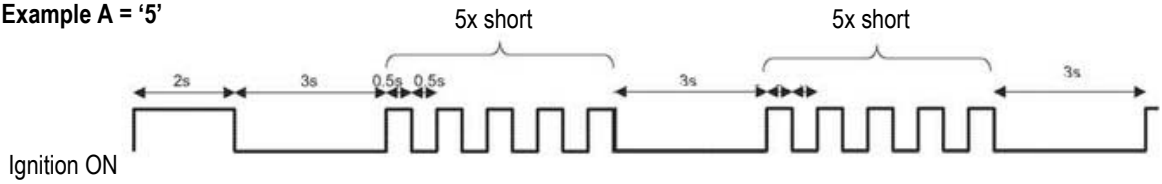
➥ The engine is switched off.

➥ The engine no longer starts.

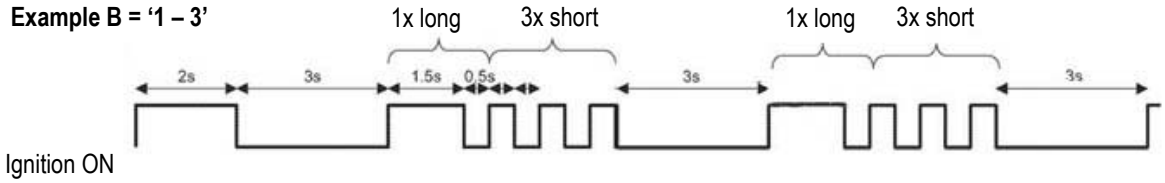


Example for flash codes:

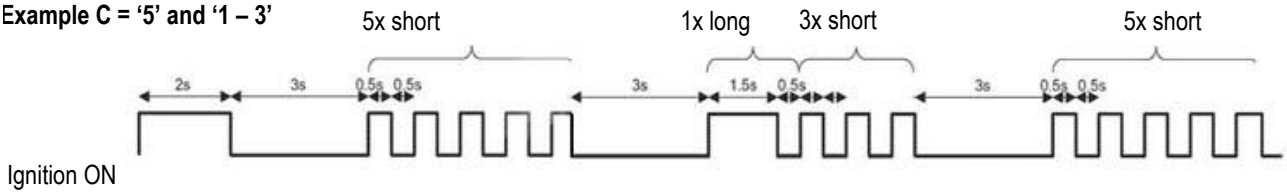
Example A = ‘5’



Example B = ‘1 – 3’



Example C = ‘5’ and ‘1 – 3’



https://truckmanualshub.com/

Engine diagnosis codes

Flash code		Component	Troubleshooting
7	Fuel injection pump regulator sensor	Loose connector	Tighten the connector
		Wiring error	Check and replace the defective component
		Defective sensor	Contact an authorised workshop
5	Throttle	Wiring error	Check and replace the defective component
		Defective throttle lever sensor	Replace the throttle lever sensor
4-1	ECU temperature sensor	Internal ECU error ECU temperature too high	Allow to cool down and contact an authorised workshop
2-5	ECU temperature	ECU temperature too high	Allow to cool down
4	Coolant temperature sensor	Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
		Defective coolant temperature sensor	Replace the sensor
3-6	Coolant temperature too high	Overheated engine	Let the engine cool down
		Not enough coolant	Fill up coolant
		Defective engine cooling system	Check the engine cooling system and replace the defective component if necessary
		Defective coolant temperature sensor	Replace the sensor
2-4	5 V sensor	Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
		Internal ECU error	Contact an authorised workshop
2-3	Battery voltage	Worn battery	Replace the battery
		Oxidised battery terminals	Clean the battery terminals
		Defective alternator	Replace the alternator
		Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
6	Speed sensor	Loose connector	Tighten the connector
		Defective starter	Replace the starter
		Defective fuel injection	Contact an authorised workshop
		Battery voltage too low	Charge the battery
		Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
1-1	Spare speed sensor (alternator)	Loose connector	Tighten the connector
		Defective wiring harness	Check and replace the defective component
		Internal ECU error	Contact an authorised workshop
9	Overspeed	Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
		Engine runs at overspeed	Reduce engine speed and brake the machine
		Internal ECU error	Contact an authorised workshop

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1-7	Fuel injection pump regulator relay	Loose connector	Tighten the connector
		Defective fuel injection pump	Contact an authorised workshop
		Internal ECU error	Contact an authorised workshop
		Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
1-5	Start relay	Loose connector	Tighten the connector
		Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
		Defective start relay	Replace the start relay
		Internal ECU error	Contact an authorised workshop
1-4	Cold starter	Loose connector	Tighten the connector
		Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
		Defective cold starter solenoid valve	Contact an authorised workshop
		Internal ECU error	Contact an authorised workshop
1-3	Exhaust gas recirculation valve	Loose connector	Tighten the connector
		Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
		Defective stepping motor of exhaust gas recirculation valve	Contact an authorised workshop
		Internal ECU error	Contact an authorised workshop
2-1	Oil pressure	Loose connector	Tighten the connector
		Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
		Defective oil pressure switch	Replace the oil pressure switch
		Internal ECU error	Contact an authorised workshop
3-3	Coolant temperature	Overheated engine	Let the engine cool down
		Coolant level too low	Fill up coolant
		Defective engine cooling system	Check the engine cooling system
		Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
		Defective coolant temperature sensor	Replace the sensor
		Internal ECU error	Contact an authorised workshop
8	Fuel injection pump regulator	Loose connector	Tighten the connector
		Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
		Defective regulator	Contact an authorised workshop
		Internal ECU error	Contact an authorised workshop
		Stuck regulator	Contact an authorised workshop
		Engine runs at overspeed	Reduce engine speed and brake the machine
4-1	ECU	Internal ECU error	Contact an authorised workshop

https://truckmanualshub.com/

1-6	Main relay	Loose connector	Tighten the connector
		Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
		Defective main relay	Replace the main relay
		Internal ECU error	Contact an authorised workshop
1-2	CAN connection	Battery voltage too low	Charge the battery
		Loose connector	Tighten the connector
		Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
		Internal ECU error	Contact an authorised workshop
4-2	Antitheft protection	Battery voltage too low	Charge the battery
		Loose connector	Tighten the connector
		Wiring harness error	Check and replace the defective component
		Internal ECU error	Contact an authorised workshop

https://truckmanualshub.com/

4.3 Malfunctions of the Powertilt unit

Problem	Possible causes
Powertilt does not maintain its position.	If the machine applies too much pressure against an obstacle, this can build up pressure in the Powertilt swivel device that activates the internal decompression valve.
	Oil escapes from the control valve.
	Defective decompression valve.
	Oil escapes from the seals.
Powertilt turns only in one direction.	A one-way valve has been installed.
	Defective internal decompression valve.
	Both lines are connected to either the P1 or P2 ports of the Powertilt swivel device.
Inexact lateral Powertilt movements.	Air in Powertilt swivel device or hydraulic system.
	Hose/pipe diameter/length is larger/longer than recommended.
Reverse and forwards movement of shaft in housing (axial play of shaft).	Worn or missing pressure discs.
Lateral bucket movement.	A little play due to necessary spacing between teeth is normal.
Grease cannot be applied to Powertilt grease nipples.	Defective grease decompression valve of lubrication system, or grease decompression valve has been replaced by a grease nipple or plug.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

4.4 Troubleshooting the central lubrication system (option)

Problem	Possible causes	Remedy
Pump does not work	Defective integrated electronic controls	Replace the controls and the cap
	Electric line interrupted	Replace the electric line
	Defective pump	Replace the pump
Pump works but does not supply grease	Air inclusions in piston	Bleed the pump
	Level too low	Fill up the tank
	Defective pump element	Replace the pump element
No grease rims on *all* lubrication points	Pump does not work	See “Pump does not work”
	Breaks too long or lubrication time too short	Shorten breaks or increase lubrication time
	System clogged	See “Grease escapes by the pressure limiting valve”
No grease rims on *some* lubrication points	Burst or leaky supply lines to secondary distributor	Replace the lines
	Leaky screw connections	Retighten or replace the screw connections
Reduced pump speed	High system pressure	Check system bearings
	Low ambient temperatures	No damage (intermediate lubrication once or twice if necessary)
	System pressure too high	Detect and eliminate clogging
Grease escapes by the pressure limiting valve	System pressure too high	Detect and eliminate clogging
	Clogged distributor	Replace the distributor
	System clogged	Repair clogged/stuck bearings
	Defective valve spring	Replace the pressure limiting valve

https://truckmanualshub.com/

4.5 Proportional controls (option) diagnosis display

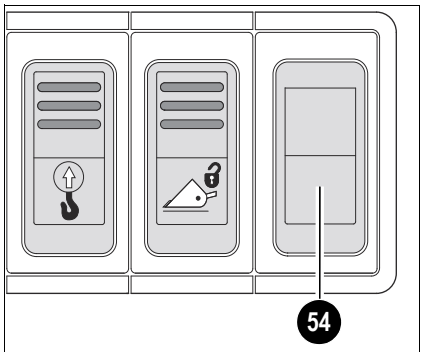


Fig. 241: Characteristic curves – status indicator (up to serial no. AH02749)

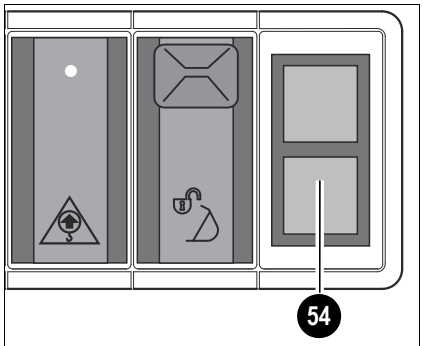


Fig. 242: Characteristic curves – status indicator (from serial no. AJ02793)

The control valve status is displayed by means of a flashing code.

The error occurring last is issued if several errors occur at the same time.

The system switches off automatically if a critical error is detected.

Notice!

The flashing codes are for purposes of information only. If an error occurs, contact a Wacker Neuson dealer to have the error rectified immediately.

Indicator light **54** displays the following errors with the number of flashing pulses:

Number of flashing codes	Error	Critical error
0	No error	
1	Defective input voltage (channel I, left-hand joystick)	
2	Overload or overheating at output stage (channel I, left-hand joystick)	
3	Short circuit on earth or operating voltage (channel I, left-hand joystick)	●
4	Defective input voltage (channel I, right-hand joystick)	
5	Overload or overheating at output stage (channel I, right-hand joystick)	
6	Short circuit on earth or operating voltage (channel I, right-hand joystick)	●
7	System start	●
8	Overheating (output stage)	●
9	Data error	●
10	Defective supply	●

https://truckmanualshub.com/

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5 Maintenance

5.1 Introduction

Operational readiness and the service life of machines are heavily dependent on maintenance.
It is therefore in the interest of the machine owner to carry out the prescribed maintenance work
Bear in mind the following points before carrying out service and maintenance work:

- Chapter 2 “SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS” of this Operator’s Manual
- The Operator’s Manuals of the attachments.

Carry out the prescribed inspections and rectify any disorders immediately before putting the machine into operation, or have them rectified by an authorised workshop.
Secure the open engine cover and other open covers appropriately. Do not open the engine cover and other covers on slopes or in strong wind.

When using compressed air, dirt and debris can be blown into your face. Therefore, wear protective goggles, masks and clothing when using compressed air.

5.2 Safety-relevant parts

Service and maintenance work must be carried out by a specifically trained person.
All other maintenance work that is not indicated in this Operator’s Manual must be carried out only by the trained and qualified staff of a Wacker Neuson workshop.
The following maintenance plans indicate the maintenance work to be carried out.
This is necessary to ensure optimal functioning.
– *see chapter 5.22 Maintenance plan (overview)* on page 5-57.
Immediately repair or replace parts that are already damaged or not working properly before they are due for replacement.

Notice!

Safety-relevant parts may only be repaired or replaced by a Wacker Neuson dealer or a Wacker Neuson workshop.

Parts	Interval
Hydraulic hoses	Replace hydraulic hoses every 6 years from the date of manufacture, even if they do not seem to be damaged.
Bladder type accumulator	Must be checked by a Wacker Neuson dealer every 2 years.
Seat belt	No replacement necessary. Replace the seat belt after an accident.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.3 Fuel system

Danger!

All work involving fuel carries an increased

Danger of fire and poisoning

- ☞ *Never carry out work on the fuel system in the vicinity of naked flames or sparks.*
- ☞ *Do not refuel in closed rooms.*
- ☞ *No smoking, no fire.*
- ☞ *Do not smoke when working on the fuel system or when refuelling.*
- ☞ *Wipe away fuel spills immediately.*
- ☞ *Use a suitable container to collect the fuel as it drains and dispose of it in an environmentally friendly manner.*
- ☞ *Keep the machine clean to reduce the risk of fire.*

Notice!

Do not run the fuel tank completely dry. Otherwise, air is drawn into the fuel system. This requires bleeding the fuel system – *see Bleeding the fuel system* on page 5-5.

Notice!

Fill up the tank with the correct fuel type at the end of each working day. This prevents condensation water from forming in the fuel tank over night. Do not fill the tank completely but leave some space for the fuel to expand.

Caution!

Bear in mind the following important points when refuelling:

- ☞ *Avoid refuelling with cans in order to avoid dirt in the fuel.*
- ☞ *When refuelling the machine without a fuel-filling pump, use safety-oriented ladders and work platforms.*
- ☞ *Never use machine parts or attachments/superstructures as a climbing aid.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Refuelling

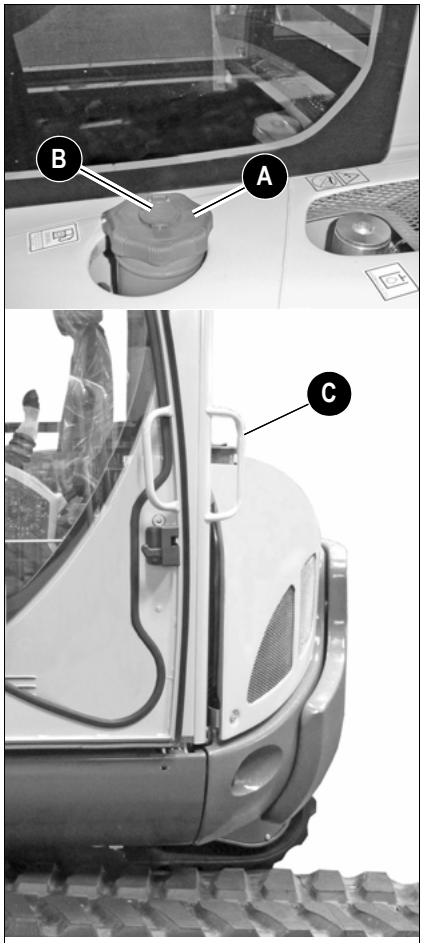


Fig. 243: Fuel filler inlet

Filler inlet **A** for the fuel tank is located behind the cab, on the left in driving direction.

☞ *Before refuelling, stop the engine and remove the ignition key.*

☞ *Unlock lock **B** on filler inlet **A** with the ignition key.*

☞ *Use handle **C** to climb onto the track.*

☞ *Remove the filler cap.*

☞ *Refuel.*

☞ *Close and lock the filler cap.*

Environment!

Use a suitable container to collect the fuel as it drains and dispose of it in an environmentally friendly manner.

Fuel-filling pump (option) (75Z3 up to serial no. AD07209; 8003 up to serial no. AD07187)

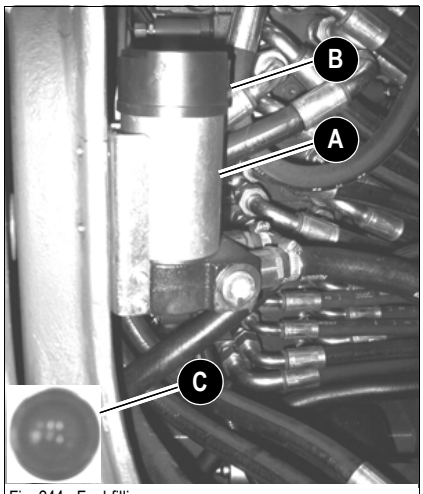


Fig. 244: Fuel-filling pump

☞ *Place the machine on level ground.*

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Open the engine cover.*

☞ *Insert the hose of fuel-filling pump **A** into the container with the fuel – see Stationary fuel pumps on page 5-4.*

☞ *Press button **B** to switch on fuel-filling pump **A**.*

➥ The fuel tank is full as soon as indicator light **C** comes on.

☞ *Press button **B** to switch off fuel-filling pump **A**.*

Notice!

Switch off the fuel-filling pump as soon as indicator light **C** comes on, otherwise the fuel tank may overflow and can be damaged.

- Bear in mind the fuel tank's maximum capacity.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Fuel-filling pump (option) (75Z3 from serial no. AH00646; 8003 from serial no. AH00611)

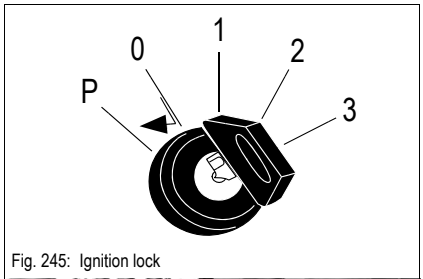
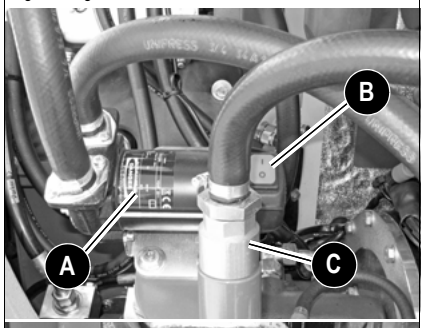


Fig. 245: Ignition lock



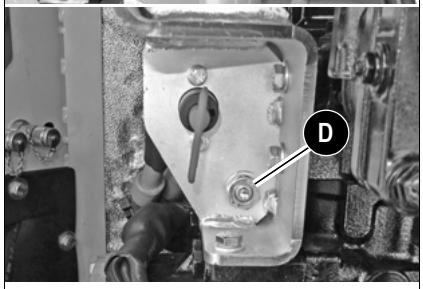


Fig. 245: Fuel-filling pump

☞ *Place the machine on level ground.*

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Turn the ignition key fully to the left to park position **P**.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Open the engine cover.*

☞ *Insert hose **C** of fuel-filling pump **A** into the container with the fuel – see Stationary fuel pumps on page 5-4.*

☞ *Press button **B** to switch on fuel-filling pump **A**.*

☞ *Press tip switch **D**.*

➥ The float switch screwed into the fuel tank automatically switches off the fuel-filling pump.

☞ *Then switch off fuel-filling pump **A** with button **B**.*

☞ *Put hose **C** back in the bracket.*

Stationary fuel pumps

General

If possible, refuel only from stationary fuel pumps. Fuel from barrels or cans is usually dirty.

Even the smallest particles of dirt can cause:

- Increased engine wear
- Malfunctions in the fuel system and
- Reduced effectiveness of the fuel filters

Refuelling from barrels

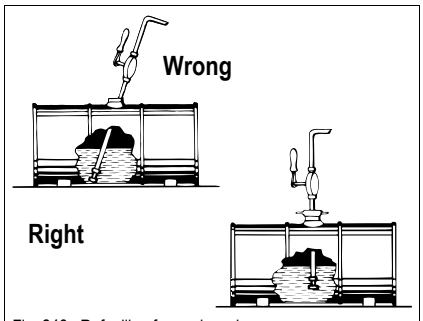


Fig. 246: Refuelling from a barrel

If refuelling from barrels cannot be avoided, note the following points:

- Barrels must neither be rolled nor tilted before refuelling.
- Protect the suction pipe opening of the barrel pump with a fine-mesh screen.
- Immerse it down to a max. 15 cm (5.9 in) above the floor of the barrel.
- Only fill the tank using refuelling aids (funnels or filler pipes) with integral microfilter.
- Keep all refuelling containers clean at all times.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Diesel fuel specification

Use only high-grade fuels.

Grade	Use
• EN 590 : 96	EU
• BS 2869 – A2	England
• 2-D ASTM D975 – 94	USA
• 1-D ASTM D975 – 94	

- Sulphur content below 0.05 %
- Cetane number over 45

Bleeding the fuel system

Danger!

If the fuel, as it drains, comes into contact with hot engine parts, there is an increased

Fire hazard

☞ *Work on the fuel system may be carried out only in an absolutely clean environment.*

☞ *Bleed the fuel system only if the engine is cold.*

☞ *Filter elements and drained fuel must be disposed of correctly.*

☞ *Always wear protective equipment and safety glasses when working with fuel.*

Danger!

Danger of injury due to rotating parts.

☞ *Before starting the engine, ensure that no-one is within danger zone of the engine/the machine.*

☞ *Start the engine only if the engine cover is closed.*

Bleed the fuel system in the following cases:

- After removing and fitting the fuel filter, prefilter or the fuel lines back on again
- After running the fuel tank empty
- After running the engine again, after it has been out of service for a longer period of time

Bleed the fuel system as follows:

- Fold the control lever base up
- Remove the ignition key
- Fill the fuel tank
- Turn the ignition key to the first position
- Wait about 5 minutes while the fuel system bleeds itself automatically
- Start the engine

If the engine runs smoothly for a while and then stops, or if it does not run smoothly:

- Stop the engine
- Fold the control lever base up
- Remove the ignition key
- Bleed the fuel system again as described above
- Check for leaks after starting the engine
- Have this checked by authorised staff if necessary

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Fuel prefilter with water separator

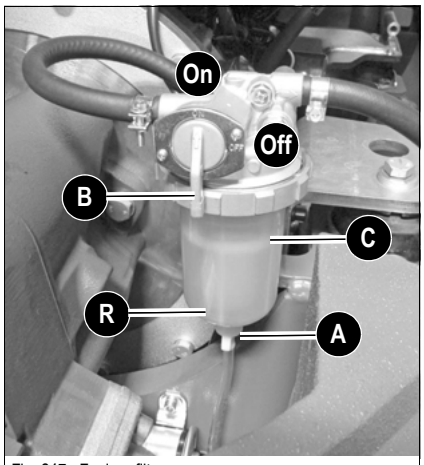


Fig. 247: Fuel prefilter

Draining the fuel/water mixture:

- If the red indicator ring **R** rises to position **C**.

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Remove the ignition key.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Turn ball-type cock **B** to the **OFF** mark.*

➥ Fuel supply is interrupted.

☞ *Place a suitable container under the fuel prefilter to collect the fuel/water mixture as it drains.*

☞ *Unscrew thread **A**.*

➥ Fuel/water mixture drains.

➥ Wait until the indicator ring returns to the bottom of the water separator.

☞ *Screw thread **A** back on again.*

☞ *Turn ball-type cock **B** to the **ON** mark.*

➥ Fuel supply is open again.

Environment!

Thread **A** is fitted with a hose. Collect the fuel/water mixture as it drains with a suitable container and dispose of it in an environmentally friendly manner.

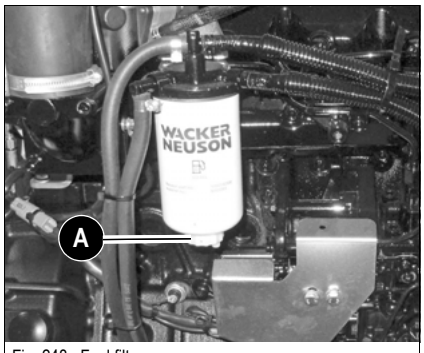


Fig. 248: Fuel filter

The fuel/water mixture must be drained directly on the fuel filter in addition.

Carry this out at regular intervals according to the maintenance plan.

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Place a suitable container under the filter.*

☞ *Unscrew screw **A**.*

➥ The fuel/water mixture drains from the filter housing.

☞ *Drain about 10 ml (0.3 Imp. fl. oz.) of the fuel/water mixture.*

Environment!

Collect the fuel/water mixture as it drains with a suitable container and dispose of it in an environmentally friendly manner.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.4 Engine lubrication system

Caution!

If the engine oil level is too high or too low, if the wrong oil is used or if an oil change is overdue, this can cause

Loss of output and engine damage.

☞ *Have the oil changed by an authorised workshop*
– see chapter 5.22 Maintenance plan (overview) on page 5-57.

Checking the engine oil level

Notice!

Check the oil level once a day.
We recommend checking it before starting the engine. After stopping a warm engine, wait at least 5 minutes before checking.

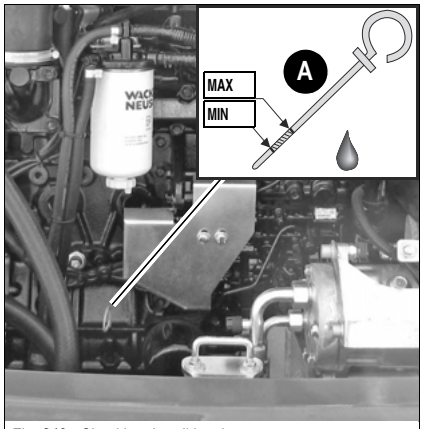


Fig. 249: Checking the oil level

- Place the machine on firm, level and horizontal ground.
- Stop the engine.
- Fold the control lever base up.
- Switch off ignition.
- Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.
- Let the engine cool down.
- Open the engine cover.
- Clean the area around the oil dipstick with a lint-free cloth.
- Pull out oil dipstick **A**.
- Clean it with a lint-free cloth.
- Push it back in as far as possible.
- Withdraw it and read off the oil level.
- Close and lock the engine cover.

Notice!

The oil level must be between the MAX and MIN marks. However if necessary, fill up oil at the latest when the oil reaches the MIN mark on the oil dipstick **A**.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Filling up engine oil

Caution!

Too much, not enough or incorrect engine oil can result in engine damage.

Loss of output and engine damage.

☞ *Add engine oil above the MIN mark of oil dipstick 249/**A**.*

☞ *Do not add engine oil above the MAX mark of oil dipstick 249/**A**.*

☞ *Use only the specified engine oil (refill with the same engine oil).*

Environment!

Use a suitable container to collect the engine oil as it drains and dispose of it in an environmentally friendly manner.

Caution!

Filling in the engine oil too fast via filler inlet in the valve cover can cause engine damage.

☞ *Fill in the engine oil slowly so it can go down without entering the intake system.*

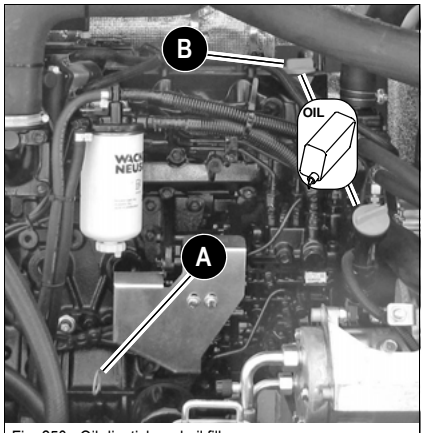


Fig. 250: Oil dipstick and oil filler cap

- Clean the area around oil filler cap **B** with a lint-free cloth.
- Open filler cap **B**.
- Raise oil dipstick **A** slightly to allow any trapped air to escape.
- Fill in engine oil.
- Wait about 3 minutes until all the oil has run into the oil sump.
- Check the oil level – *see Checking the engine oil level* on page 5-7.
- Fill up if necessary and check the oil level again.
- Close filler cap **B**.
- Push oil dipstick **A** back in as far as possible.
- Completely remove all oil spills.
- Close and lock the engine cover.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.5 Engine and hydraulics cooling system

The oil/water radiator is located in the engine compartment, on the right side of the engine. It cools the diesel engine, and the hydraulic oil of the drive and work hydraulics.

The expansion tank for the coolant is also located in the engine compartment, in front of and above the cooler.

Specific safety instructions

- Dirt on the radiator fins reduces the radiator's heat dissipation capacity.
  To avoid this:
  ☞ Clean the outside of the radiator at regular intervals. Use oil-free compressed air (2 bar/29 psi max.) to clean. Maintain a certain distance from the radiator to avoid damage to the radiator fins. Refer to the maintenance plans in the appendix for the cleaning intervals.
  ☞ In dusty or dirty work conditions, clean more frequently than indicated in the maintenance plans.
- An insufficient coolant level reduces the heat dissipation capacity as well and can lead to engine damage.
  Therefore:
  ☞ Check the coolant level at regular intervals. Refer to the maintenance plans in the appendix for the intervals.
  ☞ If coolant must be added frequently, check the cooling system for leaks and/or contact an authorised workshop.
  ☞ Never fill in cold water/coolant if the engine is warm.
  ☞ After filling the expansion tank, make a test run with the engine and check the coolant level again after stopping the engine.
- The use of the wrong coolant can destroy the engine and the radiator. Therefore:
  ☞ Add enough antifreeze compound to the coolant – but never more than 50 %. If possible, use brand-name antifreeze compounds with anticorrosion additives.
  ☞ Observe the coolant compound table – *see chapter 6.11 Coolant compound table* on page 6-6.
  ☞ Do not use radiator cleaning compounds if an antifreeze compound has been added to the coolant – otherwise this causes sludge to form that can damage the engine.
- Once you have filled the expansion tank:
  ☞ Test run the engine.
  ☞ Stop the engine.
  ☞ Let the engine cool down.
  ☞ Check the coolant level again.



Environment!

Use a suitable container to collect the coolant as it drains and dispose of it in an environmentally friendly manner.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Checking/filling up coolant

Danger!

Never open the coolant tank and never drain coolant if the engine is warm since the cooling system is under high pressure
–

Danger of burns

☞ *Wait at least 15 minutes after stopping the engine.*

☞ *Wear protective gloves and clothing.*

☞ *Open filler cap **B** to the first notch and release the pressure.*

☞ *Ensure that the coolant temperature is sufficiently low so you can touch the radiator plug with your hands.*

Danger!

Antifreeze is flammable and poisonous –

Danger of accidents

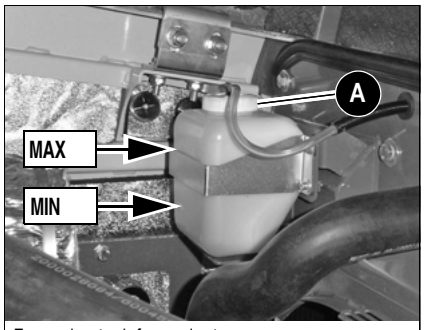
☞ *Keep away from flames.*

☞ *Avoid eye contact with antifreeze.*

- If antifreeze comes into contact with the eyes:

➥ immediately rinse with clean water and seek medical assistance.

Checking the coolant level



Expansion tank for coolant

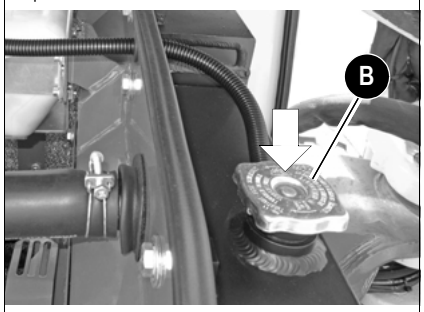


Fig. 251: Radiator

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Stop the engine.
- Fold the control lever base up.
- Switch off ignition.
- Remove the key and carry it with you.
- Let the engine and the coolant cool down.
- Open the engine cover.
- Check the coolant level on the transparent coolant tank **A** and on the radiator **B**.

☞ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark or if there is no coolant at the radiator's filler inlet:

➥ Fill up coolant.

Notice!

Check the coolant level once a day.
We recommend checking it before starting the engine.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Filling up coolant

After the engine has cooled down:

☞ *Release overpressure in the radiator.*

☞ *Carefully open the cap to the first notch and fully release the pressure.*

☞ *Open filler cap **B**.*

☞ *Add coolant up to the lower edge of the filler inlet (radiator).*

☞ *Close filler cap **B**.*

☞ *Start the engine and let it warm up for about 5 – 10 minutes.*

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.*

☞ *Let the engine cool down.*

☞ *Check the coolant level again.*

➥ The cooolant level must be between the **MIN (LOW)** and **MAX (FULL)** marks.

☞ *If necessary, fill up coolant and repeat the procedure until the coolant level remains constant.*



Caution!

Do not mix the coolant with other coolants.

☞ *Only use the coolant recommended by Wacker Neuson*
– see chapter 6.11 Coolant compound table on page 6-6



Notice!

Check the antifreeze every year before the cold season sets in.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.6 Air filter

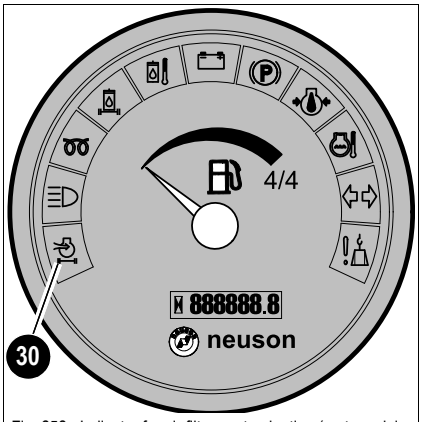


Fig. 252: Indicator for air filter contamination (up to serial no. AH00610)

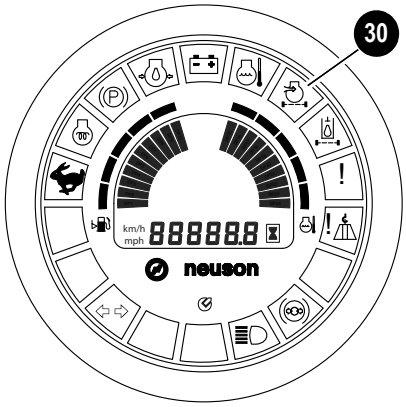


Fig. 252: Indicator for air filter contamination (from serial no. AH00611)

Caution!

The air filters will be damaged if they are washed or brushed out.
Bear in mind the following to avoid premature engine wear or damage:

☞ *Do not clean the air filter.*

☞ *Replace the air filters according to the indicator or maintenance plan.*

☞ *Never reuse a damaged air filter.*

☞ *Ensure cleanliness when replacing the air filter.*

Indicator light **30** in the round display element monitors the air filters.
Air filters **A** and **B** must be replaced:

- If indicator light **30** in the round display element comes on.
- According to the maintenance plan.

Caution!

Air filters degrade prematurely when in service in acidic air for longer periods of time. This risk is present for example in acid production facilities, steel and aluminium mills, chemical plants and other nonferrous-metal plants

☞ *Check and if necessary, replace the air filters every 50 service hours at the latest.*

General instructions for air filter maintenance:

- Store filters in their original packaging and in a dry place.
- Do not knock the air filters against other objects as you install them.
- Check air filter attachments, air intake hoses and air filters for damage, and immediately repair or replace if necessary.
- Check the screws at the induction manifold and the clamps for tightness.
- Check the function of the discharge slot of the dust valve, clean it and replace it if necessary.

  ☞ Squeeze the end of the dust valve.
- Close and lock the engine cover.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Replacing the air filter

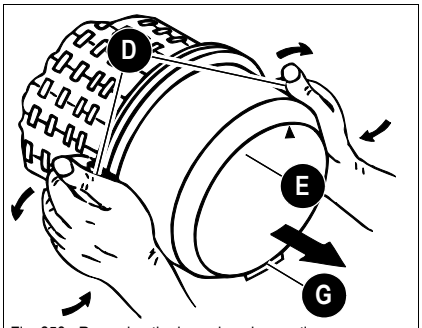


Fig. 253: Removing the lower housing section

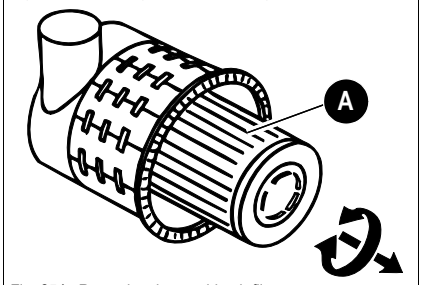


Fig. 254: Removing the outside air filter

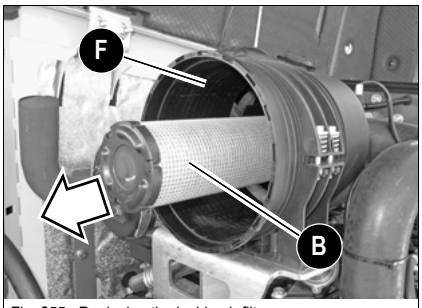


Fig. 255: Replacing the inside air filter

Replacing the outside air filter

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Fold up the control lever base.*

☞ *Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.*

☞ *Let the engine cool down.*

☞ *Open the engine cover.*

☞ *Remove dirt and dust from the filter housing and the area around the air filter.*

☞ *Fold bow clips **D** on lower housing section **E** to the outside.*

☞ *Remove lower housing section **E**.*

☞ *Carefully remove the outside air filter **A** with slightly turning movements.*

☞ *Ensure that all dirt (dust) inside the upper and lower housing sections (**F** and **E**), including dust valve **G**, has been removed.*

☞ Clean the parts with a clean lint-free cloth, do not use compressed air.

☞ *Check the outside air filter for damage, only install intact air filters.*

☞ *Carefully insert the new outside air filter **A** in the upper housing section **F**.*

☞ *Position lower housing section **E** (ensure that it is properly seated).*

☞ *Close bow clips **D**.*

Replacing the inside air filter

☞ *Remove outside air filter **A** as described above to access inside air filter **B**.*

☞ *Carefully pull out inside air filter **B**.*

☞ Cover the air supply at the end of the filter with a clean lint-free cloth to prevent dust from entering the engine.

☞ *Ensure that all dirt (dust) inside the upper and lower housing sections (**F** and **E**), including the dust valve **G**, has been removed.*

☞ Clean the parts with a clean lint-free cloth, do not use compressed air.

☞ Remove the cloth from the air supply.

☞ *Check the inside air filter for damage, only install intact air filters.*

☞ *Carefully insert the new inside air filter **B** in the upper housing section **F**.*

☞ *Carefully insert the outside air filter **A** in the upper housing section **F**.*

☞ *Position lower housing section **E** (ensure that it is properly seated).*

☞ *Close bow clips **D**.*

Notice!

Ensure that dust valve **G** shows downwards once it is installed.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Air intake



Fig. 256: Engine air intake

Caution!

When crossing water fords or similar, ensure that the engine air intake openings are always above water level, otherwise the engine is damaged –

Danger of engine damage

☞ *Check once a day for cleanliness before putting the machine into operation.*

5.7 Change cab air filter

Caution!

The air filter is damaged if it is washed or brushed out.

☞ *Never reuse a damaged air filter.*

☞ *Ensure cleanliness when replacing the air filter.*

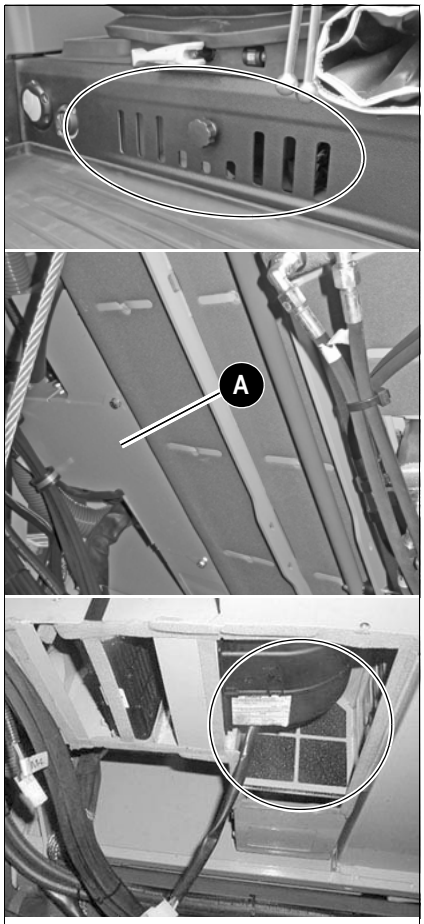


Fig. 257: Change cab air filter

Caution!

Clean the air filter only with compressed air, bearing in mind the following:

☞ *Wear goggles and protective clothing.*

☞ *Carefully clean the filter with compressed air.*

☞ *Do not aim the compressed air at the skin or at other people.*

☞ *Do not use compressed air for cleaning your clothing.*

The machine is equipped with a cab air filter located under the seat. The heater is located at the rear half of the cab.

Clean the cab air filter every 500 service hours, and replace it every 1000 service hours.

Notice!

Tilt the cab to replace the cab air filter.

– see chapter 3.35 Tilting the cab on page 3-59

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Tilt the cab and secure it.*

☞ *Remove the screws and cover **A**.*

☞ *Remove the filter and clean or replace it.*

☞ *Install the filter.*

☞ *Mount the screws and cover **A** again.*

☞ *Tilt the cab back down again and secure it.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.8 Replacing the filter element of the air conditioning system (option)

Caution!

The air filter is damaged if it is washed or brushed out.

☞ *Never reuse a damaged air filter.*

☞ *Ensure cleanliness when replacing the air filter.*

Caution!

Clean the air filter only with compressed air, bearing in mind the following:

☞ *Wear goggles and protective clothing.*

☞ *Carefully clean the filter with compressed air.*

☞ *Do not aim the compressed air at the skin or at other people.*

☞ *Do not use compressed air for cleaning your clothing.*

If equipped with optional air conditioning, the machine is fitted with an air filter located under the seat.

Replace the air filter every 500 service hours by a new one.

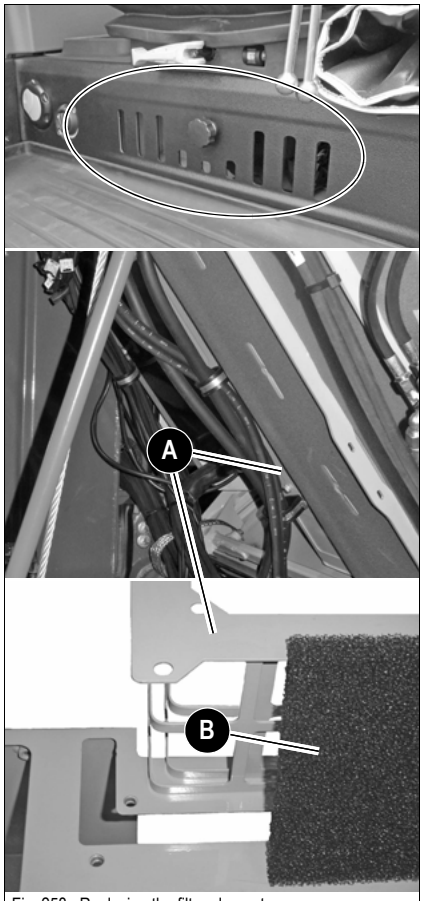


Fig. 258: Replacing the filter element

Notice!

Tilt the cab to replace the air filter.

– see chapter 3.35 Tilting the cab on page 3-59

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Tilt the cab and secure it.*

☞ *Slacken the screws and the L-shaped bracket **A** of air filter **B** and remove the bracket.*

☞ *Remove air filter **B**.*

☞ *Install the new air filter **B**.*

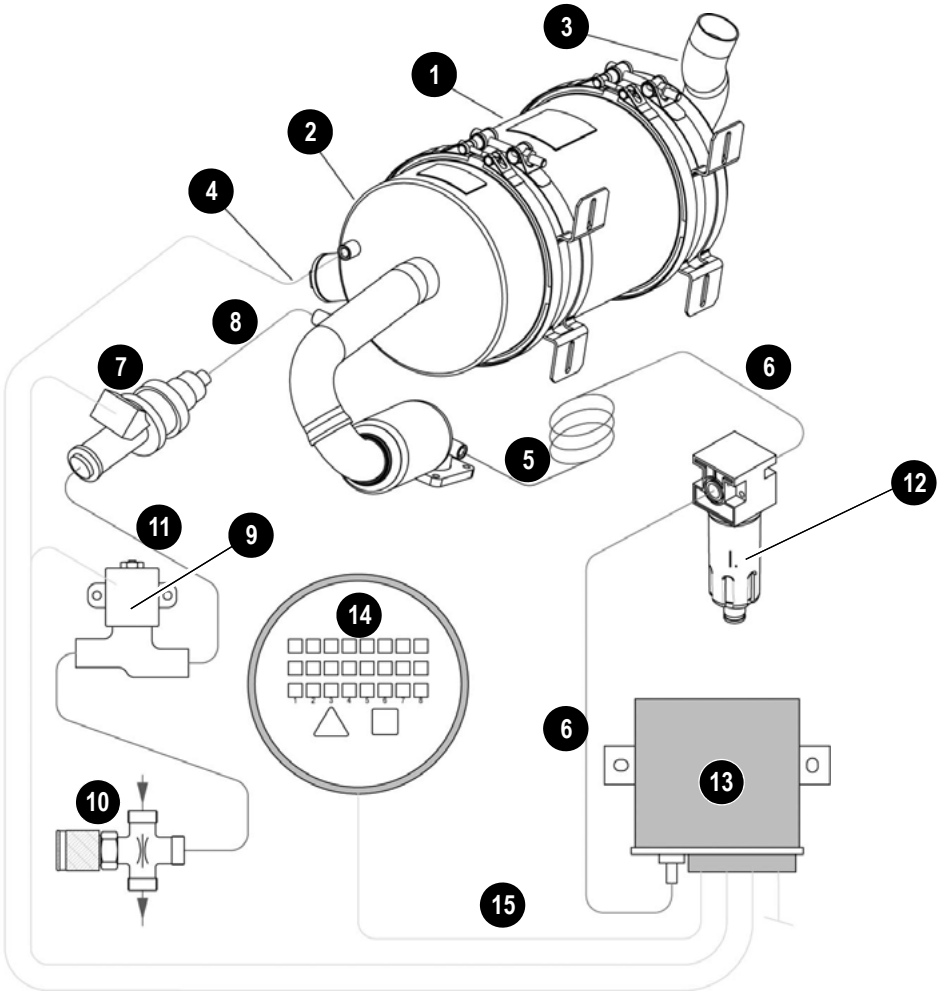
☞ *Mount the L-shaped bracket **A** of the air filter again with the screws.*

☞ *Tilt the cab back down again and secure it.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.9 Diesel particulate filter (option)

Main components of diesel particulate filter system



Pos.	Designation
1	Diesel particulate filter *5-17*
2	Input cover with catalytic converter and input pipe (incl. flexible exhaust pipe) *5-17*
3	Output cover (incl. exhaust pipe)
4	Temperature sensor
5	Pressure line
6	Pressure hose
7	Injection nozzle *5-17*
8	Injection line
9	Stop cock
10	Throttle screw connection
11	Diesel lines
12	Condensate trap *5-17*
13	Control box *5-17*
14	Display *5-19*
15	Wiring

https://truckmanualshub.com/

How the diesel particulate filter works

The machine is equipped with a closed diesel particulate filter with passive regeneration, active diesel fuel injection and a catalytic converter installed before the filter.

Passive regeneration

The special coating of the diesel particulate filter lowers the ignition temperature of the diesel soot and ensures that the soot burns on its own including at low exhaust gas temperatures. Consequently, the soot particles retained by the diesel particulate filter are continuously burnt.

Active diesel fuel injection

If output requirements are low, the exhaust gas temperatures of the diesel engine are too low to ensure passive regeneration. The soot particles cannot be burnt and form deposits in the filter. If a certain pressure threshold is crossed and the temperature is briefly higher, the controls activate diesel fuel injection for a short time. This causes the temperatures in the filter to rise and makes regeneration possible.

Catalytic converter

In addition to sufficiently high temperature, soot regeneration also requires enough NOx. However, the exhaust gas of the new environment friendly diesel engines does not always contain enough NOx under all operating conditions. Therefore, a catalytic converter is installed before the filter to avoid any such shortcomings.

Control box

The control box monitors and saves the temperature and the pressure in the particulate filter system, transmits the data to the display and controls diesel fuel injection.

Condensate trap

The condensate trap protects the control box against damage caused by water by eliminating the condensation water in the pressure line.

Injection nozzle

The injection nozzle is controlled by the control box and if required, injects diesel fuel into the exhaust pipe in front of the particulate filter.

Machine operation with diesel particulate filter

The following points explain how machine operation with a diesel particulate filter differs from operation without such a filter:

Dangers

Caution!

The particulate filter, its piping and the exhaust gas can reach very high temperatures. Therefore, always keep a safe distance from these elements and let the machine cool down before carrying out inspection or maintenance work.

Machine capacity

During normal machine operation, exhaust gas temperatures are sufficiently high to ensure continuous passive regeneration of the particulate filter. However, if the machine is operated at low capacity, the continuous passive regeneration stops and the exhaust gas back pressure in the diesel particulate filter rises. Diesel fuel injection is activated as soon as a certain pressure threshold is crossed and a higher exhaust gas temperature is reached for a short time.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Caution!

The diesel particulate filter must be regenerated before the maximum authorised threshold value is reached. This can be achieved by running the machine at high capacity (high diesel engine output requirement)*. If the pressure does not drop and the maximum authorised threshold value (– *see chapter Alarm messages* on page 5-20) is reached, stop the machine and regenerate the diesel particulate filter externally. Contact an authorised workshop.

* This can cause the exhaust gas back pressure to rise even more, however soot combustion should then cause this pressure to return to the authorised range. The engines of the 75Z3 and 8003 machines are equipped with an exhaust gas recirculation valve that closes if the engine is cold and under high load, and therefore significantly raises the exhaust gas back pressure. Avoid these operating conditions if the pressure is already near the limit.

Cold starting

Caution!

In order to avoid damage to the particulate filter system, warm up the engine at low idling engine speed without load for about 15 minutes**. This warm-up phase is of crucial importance for the 75Z3 and 8003 machines: on these machines, the exhaust gas recirculation valve is closed when the engine is cold, which causes the exhaust gas back pressure to rise considerably. Work cannot start unless the engine has reached its operating temperature and there is a sudden and very significant drop in counterpressure.

** Approximate value; at lower temperatures, a longer warm-up phase may be necessary, which can be considerably reduced at high temperatures.

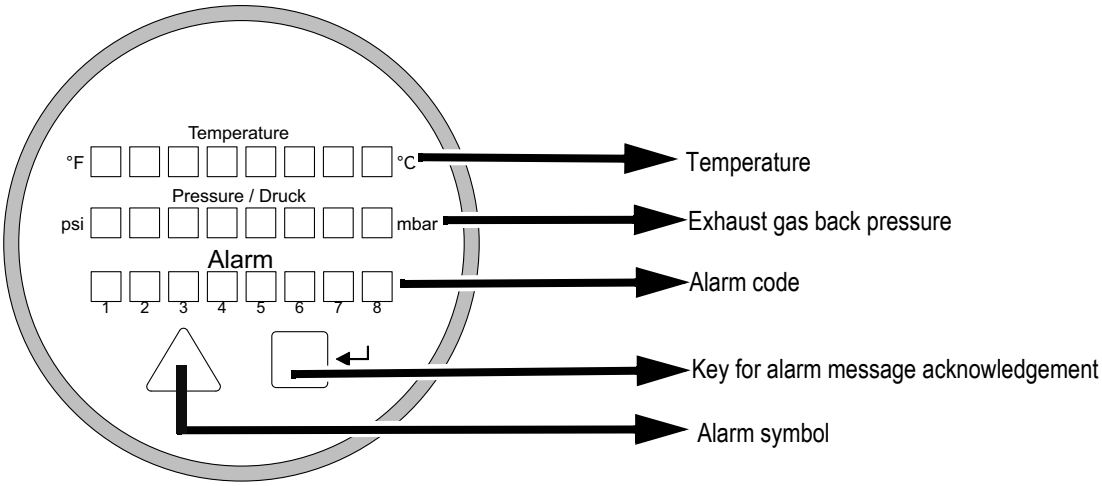
Bleeding the diesel engine fuel system

On machines equipped with diesel particulate filters, the throttle screw connection pre-tensions the system (– *see Throttle screw connection* on page 5-16) in order to create enough pressure for the diesel fuel injection nozzle of the particulate filter. In order to bleed the system, connect the minimess hose onto the throttle screw connection and insert the other end into a container to collect the fuel as it drains. Remove the hose again as soon as there are no more bubbles in the fuel draining from the minimess port. The machine can then be started.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Display

The display of the diesel fuel particulate system is located in the cab and displays the alarm messages, and the temperature and exhaust gas counterpressure ranges. Moreover, alarms can also be acknowledged by pressing a key.



Temperature scale

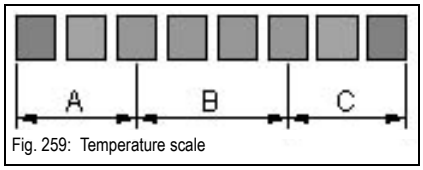


Fig. 259: Temperature scale

Pos.	Meaning
A	Idling speed, very low load
B	Low to average load
C	High load (optimal for regeneration)

Exhaust gas back pressure scale

Exhaust gas pressure increases as engine speed and load increase, since a larger amount of exhaust gas must go through the diesel particulate filter under these operating conditions.

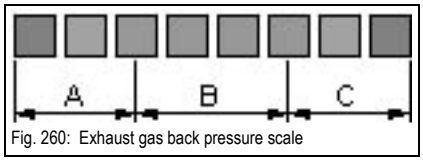


Fig. 260: Exhaust gas back pressure scale

Pos.	Meaning
A	Reached only under low load and at low engine speed
B	Range in which the machine should be operated
C	To be avoided, regeneration necessary under all circumstances

Alarm code

For more information – *see chapter Alarm messages* on page 5-20.

Key for alarm message acknowledgement

See chapter “Alarm messages” for description.

Alarm symbol

- This symbol flashes in case of an alarm.
- This symbol goes out as soon as an error is acknowledged.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Alarm messages

An alarm code is displayed as soon the diesel fuel particulate filter controls identify an error, or if the upper or lower temperature or exhaust gas back pressure thresholds have been crossed.

The following alarm codes can be displayed:

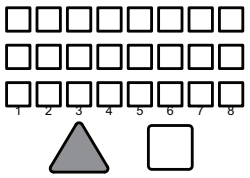


Fig. 261: Error: communication

Display

All LEDs off, the alarm symbol flashes.

Error

No communication between the display and the controls.

Troubleshooting

- Switch off ignition and switch it back on again.
- Check the wiring.

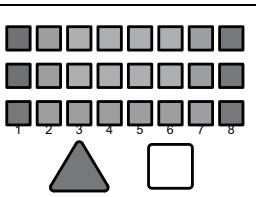


Fig. 262: Error: software

Display

All LEDs flash, the alarm symbol flashes.

Error

Software not identical for display and controls.

Troubleshooting

Contact an authorised workshop.

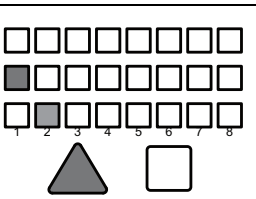


Fig. 263: Error: lower limit of exhaust gas pressure exceeded

Display

Pressure LED **1**, alarm LED **2** and alarm symbol flash.

Error

Lower limit of exhaust gas counterpressure exceeded.

Troubleshooting

- Check pressure hose and line for leaks.
- Check particulate filter and input pipe for leaks.
- Contact an authorised workshop.

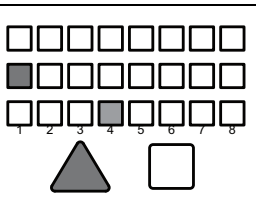


Fig. 264: Error: no pressure change

Display

Pressure LED **1**, alarm LED **4** and alarm symbol flash.

Error

No pressure change during the last 10 minutes.

Troubleshooting

- Engine does not start.
  ☞ Start the engine.
- Absolutely constant engine load.
- Clogged pressure line.
  ☞ Contact an authorised workshop.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

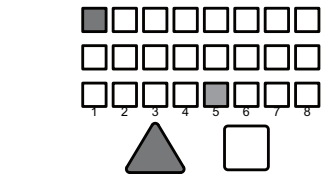


Fig. 265: Error: no temperature change

Display

Temperature LED **1**, alarm LED **5** and alarm symbol flash.

Error

No temperature change during the last 10 minutes.

Troubleshooting

- Engine does not start.
  ☞ Start the engine.
- Absolutely constant engine load.
- Replace the temperature sensor.
  ☞ Contact an authorised workshop.

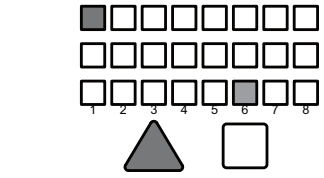


Fig. 266: Error: defective temperature sensor

Display

Temperature LED **1**, alarm LED **6** and alarm symbol flash.

Error

Defective temperature sensor.

Troubleshooting

- Replace the temperature sensor.
  ☞ Contact an authorised workshop.

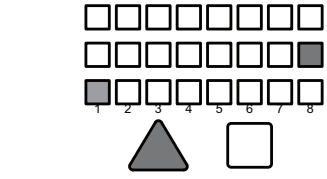


Fig. 267: Error: upper limit of exhaust gas counterpressure exceeded

Display

Pressure LED **8**, alarm LED **1** and alarm symbol flash.

Error

Upper limit of exhaust gas counterpressure exceeded.

Troubleshooting

- Immediately operate the machine in a way that puts a high load on the engine in order to regenerate the filter. If the pressure does not fall after 5 minutes, stop the engine and get in touch with an authorised workshop.

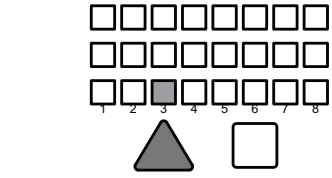


Fig. 268: Error: no engine speed signal from the alternator

Display

Alarm LED **3** and the alarm symbol flash.

Error

No engine speed signal from the alternator.

Troubleshooting

- Wiring from controls to alternator.
  ☞ Check the wiring.
- Contact an authorised workshop.

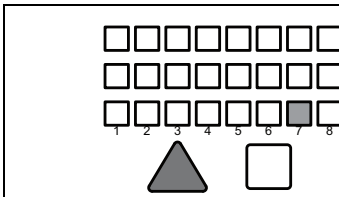


Fig. 269: Error: data recording

Display

Alarm LED **7** and the alarm symbol flash.

Error

Error during data recording.

Troubleshooting

- Contact an authorised workshop.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

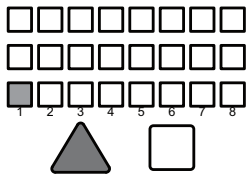


Fig. 270: Error: programming

Display

Alarm LED **1** and the alarm symbol flash.

Error

Error in controls program.

Troubleshooting

Contact an authorised workshop.

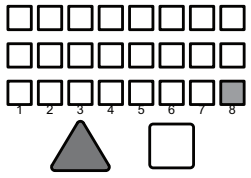


Fig. 271: Error: programming

Display

Alarm LED **8** and the alarm symbol flash.

Error

Error in controls program.

Troubleshooting

Contact an authorised workshop.

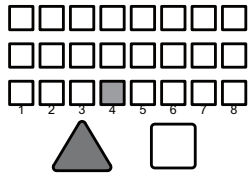


Fig. 272: Error: programming

Display

Alarm LED **4** and the alarm symbol flash.

Error

Error in controls program.

Troubleshooting

Contact an authorised workshop.

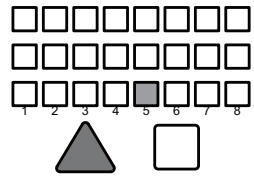


Fig. 273: Error: programming

Display

Alarm LED **5** and the alarm symbol flash.

Error

Error in controls program.

Troubleshooting

Contact an authorised workshop.

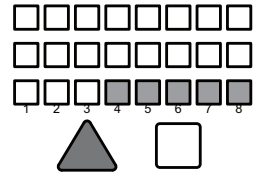


Fig. 274: Error: dirty display glass

Display

Alarm LEDs **4 to 8** and the alarm symbol flash.

Error

Dirty display glass.

Troubleshooting

Clean the display glass.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Maintenance

The maintenance work listed below must be carried out in addition to the maintenance work stated in the Operator's Manual of the machine.

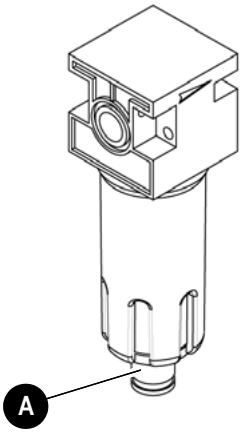


Fig. 275: Condensate trap

Daily maintenance

- Drain the water from the condensate trap by opening valve **A**.
- Ensure that there is no soot on the exhaust pipe *.
- Check whether all indicator lights on the display come on when switching on ignition.
- Check the plausibility of the temperature values.
- Check the plausibility of the pressure values. To this effect, open the valve on the condensate trap after the machine is warm and read the pressure off the display, then close the valve and read off the pressure again. The pressure must be higher with a closed valve, otherwise there is an error in the system.

Caution!

Once maintenance is over, ensure that condensate trap valve **A** is closed.

Every 50 s/h

- Visual check of the particulate filter system (wiring, pressure line, particulate filter, insulating mat, diesel fuel lines etc.).
- Ensure that the clips on the diesel particulate filter are fastened firmly.
- Check the fastening screws of the input pipe on the exhaust manifold for tightness.
- Ensure that there is no soot on the end pipe of the particulate filter*.

Once a year/every 500 s/h

- Have the system components checked for correct function by an authorised service.
  ☞ Contact an authorised workshop.

Statutory maintenance work

- Get in touch with an authorised workshop for information on possible country-specific statutory maintenance work.

As required

- If the maximum authorised limit for the exhaust gas back pressure is exceeded, stop the machine and regenerate the diesel particulate filter externally.
  Contact an authorised workshop.
- During fuel combustion in the diesel engine, part of the engine oil is burnt, too, and produces ashes that are deposited in the diesel particulate filter. These ashes contaminate the diesel particulate filter by and by and prevent the absorption of soot. This causes the machine to constantly work at the upper limit of the exhaust gas back pressure. As soon as this is the case**, the diesel particulate filter must be cleaned externally. Contact an authorised workshop.

* Diesel fuel injection can create a slight black cloudiness at the end pipe, however, this does not affect the function of the system whatsoever.

** The time this condition comes into being greatly depends on the application, the user, the machine, and the oil and fuel used.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Oils and fuels

Fuel

The machine can be operated with the authorised fuels stated in the Operator's Manual of the machine, with the following restrictions:

- Use only diesel fuel with a sulphur content of < 50 ppm
- No biodiesel allowed

Engine oil

The machine can be operated with the authorised engine oils stated in the Operator's Manual of the machine. However, in order to minimise soot in the diesel particulate filter, we recommend using oils with a low share of soot (so-called Low-Sap oils). These oils must comply with the same technical specifications as the authorised engine oils stated in the Operator's Manual of the machine.

Other material

See the Operator's Manual of the machine.

Troubleshooting

Blue exhaust gas

Blue exhaust gas is a sign of unburnt engine oil, and of a diesel engine malfunction. Switch off the diesel engine immediately to avoid damage to the diesel engine and the particulate filter.

Contact an authorised workshop.

White exhaust gas

White exhaust gas is caused by evaporating water or unburnt diesel fuel. When starting, a cold engine normally emits white smoke briefly when the condensation water in the particulate filter evaporates.

On a warm engine, white exhaust gas is caused by unburnt diesel fuel of the active diesel fuel injection during active regeneration and should disappear again after a short time. Get in touch with an authorised workshop if the white exhaust gas persists or if it appears freqently.

Black exhaust gas

Black exhaust gas is a sign of incomplete combustion and can have several causes (see the Operator's Manual of the machine for details). However, the particulate filter filters this contamination (soot) out of the exhaust gas if it works correctly. Therefore, black exhaust gas is a sign of a malfunction or of damage in the particulate filter system*. Contact an authorised workshop.

* Diesel fuel injection can create a slight black cloudiness at the end pipe, however, this does not affect the function of the system whatsoever.

Warranty

Bear in mind that warranty for components of the diesel particulate filter becomes invalid if the instructions of this Operator's Manual are not followed, or if the system has been tampered with or modified.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.10 V-belt

Danger!

Only check or retighten/replace the V-belt when the engine is stopped –

Danger of personal injury

☞ *Stop the engine before carrying out inspection work in the engine compartment.*

☞ *Disconnect the battery or actuate the battery master switch.*

☞ *Let the engine cool down.*

Caution!

Cracked and stretched V-belts cause engine damage.

☞ *Have the V-belt replaced by an authorised workshop.*

Check the V-belt once a day, and retighten if necessary.
Retighten new V-belts after about 15 minutes of running time.

Checking V-belt tension

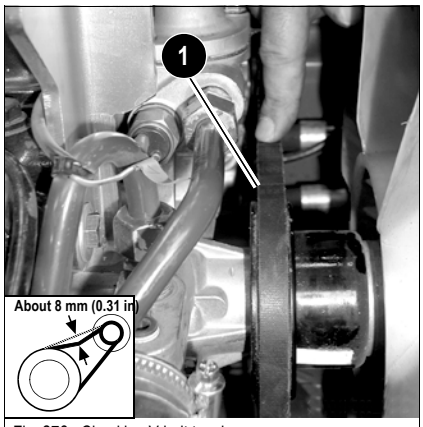


Fig. 276: Checking V-belt tension

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.*

☞ *Disconnect the battery or actuate the battery master switch.*

☞ *Let the engine cool down.*

☞ *Open the engine cover.*

☞ *Carefully check V-belt* **1** *for damage, cracks or cuts.*

➥ If the V-belt is damaged:

☞ Have the V-belt replaced by authorised staff.

➥ Replace the V-belt if it touches the base of the V-belt groove or if the pulleys are damaged.

☞ *Press with your thumb about 100 N (22.5 lbf) to check the deflection of the V-belt between the crankshaft disc and the fan wheel.*
The deflection of a new belt should be 6 to 8 mm (0.24 to 0.31 in) (see figure 276).
The deflection of a used belt (after about 5 minutes running time) should be 7 to 9 mm (0.27 to 0.35 in).

☞ *Retighten the V-belt if necessary.*

☞ *Close and lock the engine cover.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Retightening the V-belt

Caution!

Overtightening the V-belts can damage the V-belts, the V-belt guide and the alternator, air conditioning compressor and water pump bearings.

☞ *Check V-belt tension – see Checking V-belt tension on page 5-25*

☞ *Replace V-belts with damage, cracks, cuts etc.*

☞ *Avoid contact of oil, grease or similar substances with the V-belt.*

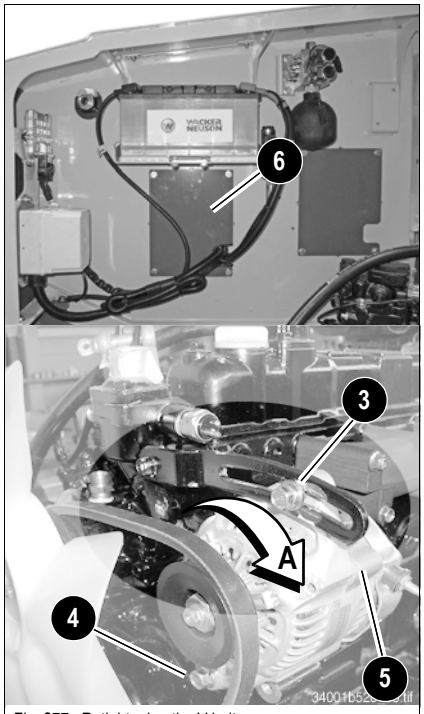


Fig. 277: Retightening the V-belt

☞ Stop the engine.

☞ Fold the control lever base up.

☞ Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.

☞ Tilt the cab and secure it – *see chapter 3.35 Tilting the cab* on page 3-59.

☞ Disconnect the battery or actuate the battery master switch.

☞ Let the engine cool down.

☞ Open the engine cover.

☞ Unscrew cover **6**.

➥ The alternator can now be accessed from either side.

☞ Slacken fastening screws **3** and **4** of alternator **5**.

☞ Use a suitable tool to push the alternator in the direction of arrow **A** until reaching the correct V-belt tension (see fig. 277).

☞ Keep the alternator in this position, and at the same time tighten fastening screws **3** and **4**.

☞ Check V-belt tension again and adjust it if necessary.

☞ Screw on cover **6**.

☞ Connect the battery or the battery master switch.

☞ Tilt the cab back down again and secure it.

☞ Close and lock the engine cover.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Checking the V-belt of the air conditioning system (option)

Caution!

Excessive or insufficient tension of the V-belt can cause damage to the V-belt or to the compressor of the air conditioning system.

☞ *Always ensure that the V-belt has the correct tension.*

☞ *Replace V-belts with damage, cracks, cuts etc.*

☞ *Avoid contact of oil, grease or similar substances with the V-belt.*

Check the V-belt once a day, and retighten if necessary.
Retighten new V-belts after about 15 minutes of running time.

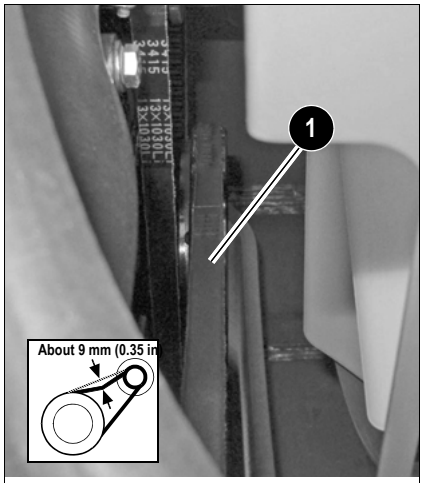


Fig. 278: Checking the V-belt tension of the air conditioning system

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.*

☞ *Disconnect the battery or actuate the battery master switch.*

☞ *Let the engine cool down.*

☞ *Open the engine cover.*

☞ *Carefully check V-belt **1** for damage, cracks or cuts.*

➥ If the V-belt is damaged:

☞ Have the V-belt replaced by authorised staff.

➥ Replace the V-belt if it touches the base of the V-belt groove or if the pulleys are damaged.

☞ *Press with your thumb about 100 N (22.5 lbf) to check the deflection of the V-belt between the pulley and the crankshaft disc.*
The deflection of a new belt should be 7 to 9 mm (0.27 0.35 in).
The deflection of a used belt (after about 5 minutes running time) should be 9 to 11 mm (0.35 to 0.43 in).

☞ *Retighten the V-belt if necessary.*

☞ *Connect the battery or the battery master switch.*

☞ *Close and lock the engine cover.*

Tightening the V-belt of the air conditioning system (option)

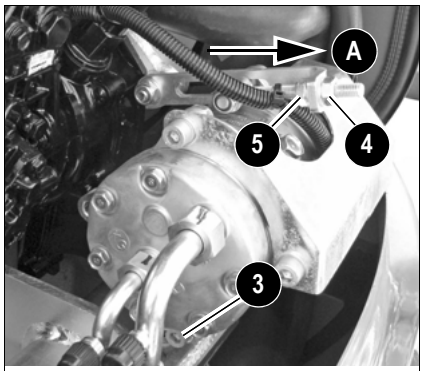


Fig. 279: Retightening the V-belt of the air conditioning system

☞ Stop the engine.

☞ Fold the control lever base up.

☞ Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.

☞ Disconnect the battery or the battery master switch.

☞ Let the engine cool down.

☞ Open the engine cover.

☞ Slacken fastening screw **3** of the air conditioning compressor.

☞ Slacken locknut **4** of the belt tensioner.

☞ Screw nut **5** on the belt tensioner in the direction of arrow **A** until reaching the correct V-belt tension (see fig. 279).

☞ Tighten locknut **4**.

☞ Tighten fastening screw **3** of the air conditioning compressor.

☞ Check V-belt tension again and adjust it if necessary.

☞ Connect the battery or the battery master switch.

☞ Close and lock the engine cover.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.11 Hydraulic system

Specific safety instructions



- Release the pressure in all lines carrying hydraulic oil prior to any maintenance and repair work. To do this:
  - Lower the boom or the attachment to the ground.
  - Move all control levers of the hydraulic control valves several times.
- Fold the control lever base up.
- Hydraulic oil escaping under high pressure can penetrate the skin and cause serious injuries. Therefore always consult a doctor immediately, even in the case of minor wounds – otherwise serious infections could set in.
- If the hydraulic oil in the sight glass is cloudy, this indicates that water or air has penetrated the hydraulic system. This can cause damage to the hydraulic pump.
- Oil or fuel flowing out of high pressure lines can cause fire or malfunctions, and severe injuries or damage to property. Interrupt work immediately if slack nuts or damaged hoses and lines are detected.

  ☞ Contact a Wacker Neuson dealer immediately.
- Have a line replaced if one of the following problems is detected:

  ☞ Damaged or leaky hydraulic seals.

  ☞ Worn or torn shells or uncovered reinforcement branches.

  ☞ Expanded shells in several positions.

  ☞ Entangled or crushed movable parts.

  ☞ Foreign bodies jammed or stuck in protective layers.



Caution!

Dirty hydraulic oil, lack of oil or wrong hydraulic oil –

Danger of severe damage to the hydraulic system.

☞ *Take care to avoid dirt when working.*

☞ *Always use the filling screen when refilling hydraulic oil.*

☞ *Only use authorised oils of the same type*
– see chapter 5.21 Fluids and lubricants on page 5-54.

☞ *Always fill up hydraulic oil before the level gets too low*
– see Filling up hydraulic oil on page 5-30.

☞ *If the hydraulic system is filled with biodegradable oil, then use only biodegradable oil of the same type for filling up – observe the sticker on the hydraulic oil tank.*

☞ *Contact customer service if the hydraulic system filter is dirty and contains metal chippings. Otherwise, follow-on damage can result.*



Environment!

Collect drained hydraulic oil and biodegradable oil in a suitable container. Dispose of drained oil and used filters by an ecologically safe method. Always contact the relevant authorities or commercial establishments in charge of oil disposal before disposing of biodegradable oil.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Checking the hydraulic oil level

Caution!

Do not fill up oil if the oil level is above the **MAX** mark, otherwise the hydraulic system can be damaged and escaping oil can cause serious injuries.

☞ *Check the hydraulic oil level each time the machine is put into operation or once a day.*

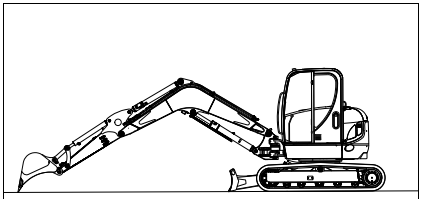


Fig. 280: Parking the machine

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Position the boom straight ahead.
- Retract the bucket and boom rams, lower the boom and the bucket teeth to the ground.
- Lower the stabiliser blade to the ground.
- Stop the engine.
- Fold the control lever base up.
- Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.
- Unlock and raise the engine cover.
- Sight glass **B** is located at the rear right corner of the machine on hydraulic oil tank.
- Check the oil level on sight glass **B**.
- The oil level must be about 1 cm (0.39 in) over the centre, between positions **MIN** and **MAX**, as shown by the arrows in *Fig. 281*.

➥ The **MIN** level is marked by the lower joint.

➥ The **MAX** level is marked by the upper joint.

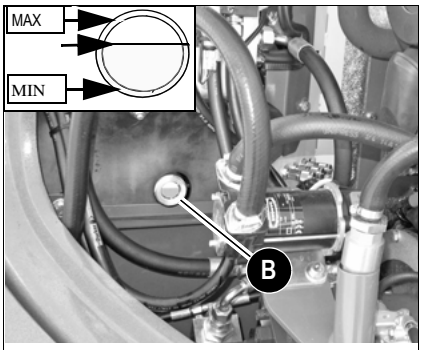


Fig. 281: Oil level indicator on the hydraulic oil tank

If the oil level is lower:

- Fill up hydraulic oil.
- Close and lock the engine cover.

The oil level varies according to the machine's operating temperature:

Machine condition	Temperature	Oil level
Before putting into operation	Between 10 and 30 °C (between 50 and 86 °F)	**MIN** mark
Normal operation	Between 50 and 90 °C (between 122 and 194 °F)	**MAX** mark

Notice!

Measure the oil level of the hydraulic system only after the machine reaches its operating temperature.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Filling up hydraulic oil

Danger!

Removing the filler plug can cause oil to escape –

Danger of accidents.

☞ *Open breather filter **A** under tank cover **V** carefully to slowly release the pressure inside the tank.*

Caution!

Do not fill up the hydraulic oil unless the engine is stopped. Otherwise, hydraulic oil will overflow at the filler opening on the hydraulic tank.

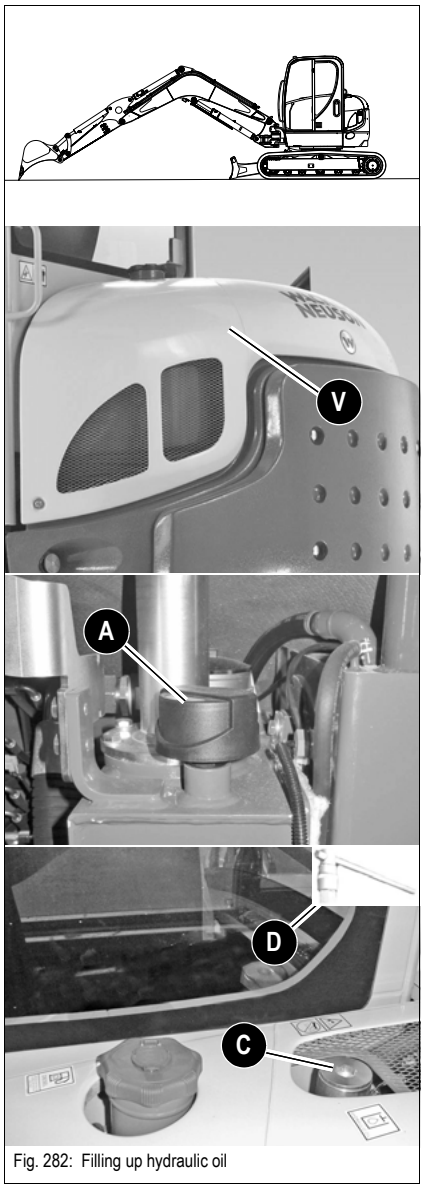


Fig. 282: Filling up hydraulic oil

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Retract the bucket and boom rams, lower the boom and the bucket teeth to the ground.
- Lower the stabiliser blade to the ground.
- Set the boom straight (offset ram).
- Stop the engine.
- Fold the control lever base up.
- Remove tank cover **V**.

➥ Open breather filter **A** carefully to release the pressure inside the tank.

- Slowly open plug **C** with tool **D** included in the tool kit.

With the filter insert in place:

- Fill up hydraulic oil.
- Check the hydraulic oil level on sight glass **B**.
  – *see Checking the hydraulic oil level* on page 5-29
- Fill up if necessary and check again.
- Tightly close plug **C** again with tool **D**.
- Retighten breather filter **A** hand-tight.
- Install tank cover **V**.

Notice!

The tool kit is in the engine compartment.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Important information for the use of biodegradable oil

- Use only the biodegradable hydraulic fluids which have been tested and approved by Wacker Neuson. Contact a Wacker Neuson dealer for the use of other products which have not been recommended. In addition, ask the oil supplier for a written declaration of guarantee. This guarantee is applicable to damage occurring on the hydraulic components, which can be proved to be due to the hydraulic fluid.
- Use only biodegradable oil of the same type for filling up. In order to avoid misunderstandings, a label providing clear information is located on the hydraulic oil tank (next to the filler inlet) regarding the type of oil currently used. Replace missing labels.
  The joint use of two different biodegradable oils can affect the quality of one of the oil types. Therefore, ensure that the remaining amount of initial hydraulic fluid in the hydraulic system does not exceed 8 % when changing biodegradable oil (manufacturer indications).
- Do not fill up with mineral oil – the content of mineral oil should not exceed 2 % in order to avoid foaming problems and to ensure biological degradability.
- When running the machine with biodegradable oil, the same oil and filter replacement intervals are valid as for mineral oil – *see chapter 5.22 Maintenance plan (overview)* on page 5-57
- Always have the condensation water in the hydraulic oil tank drained by an authorised workshop before the cold season. The water content may not exceed 0.1 % by weight.
- The instructions in this Operator's Manual concerning environmental protection are also valid for the use of biodegradable oil.
- If additional hydraulic attachments are mounted or operated, use the same type of biodegradable oil for these attachments to avoid mixtures in the hydraulic system.
- Subsequent change from mineral oil to biodegradable oil must be carried out by an authorised workshop.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Checking hydraulic pressure lines

Specific safety instructions

Danger!

Caution when checking hydraulic lines, especially when searching for leaks. Hydraulic oil escaping under high pressure can penetrate the skin and cause serious injuries.
Danger due to lines under high pressure –

Danger of personal injury

☞ *Always consult a doctor immediately, even if the wound seems insignificant – otherwise serious infections could set in.*

☞ *Always observe the following instructions:*

- Retighten leaking screwed fittings and hose connections only when the system is not under pressure; i.e. release the pressure before working on pressurised lines.
- Never weld or solder damaged or leaking pressure lines and screw connections. Replace damaged parts with new ones.
- Never search for leaks with your bare hands, but wear protective gloves.
- Use paper or wood to check for minor leaks. Never use an unprotected light or naked flame.
- Have damaged flexible lines replaced by authorised workshops only.

- Leaks and damaged pressure lines must be immediately repaired or replaced by an authorised workshop.
  This not only increases the operating safety of the machine but also helps to protect the environment.
- Replace hydraulic hoses every 6 years from the date of manufacture, even if they do not seem to be damaged.

Environment!

Ensure environmentally compatible disposal.

In this respect, we recommend that you observe all the relevant safety regulations for hydraulic lines, as well as the safety regulations regarding accident prevention and occupational health and safety in your country. Also observe DIN 20066, part 5.

The article number is marked on the clamping section, and the date of manufacture is indicated on the hose of each hose connection.

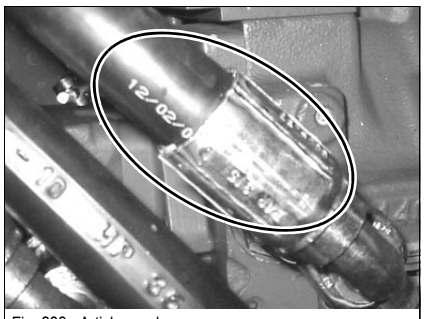


Fig. 283: Article number

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.12 Tracks

- Track wear can vary according to work and ground conditions.

☞ We recommend checking track wear and tension once a day.

☞ Park the machine on firm, level and horizontal ground to check and carry out maintenance.

Danger!

Raising the machine with the stabiliser blade and the attachment does not provide adequate safety for work that has to be carried out under a raised machine.

Caution, danger

☞ *Do not allow anyone to stay in the danger zone.*

☞ *Firmly support the machine with chocks or suitable brackets. Do not damage any parts of the machine as you support it.*

Checking the track tension of the rubber tracks

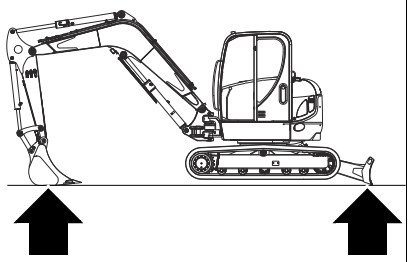


Fig. 284: Raising the machine

☞ *Place the machine on firm, level and horizontal ground.*

☞ *Raise the machine evenly and horizontally by means of the boom and the stabiliser blade.*

☞ Slowly and carefully actuate the control levers.

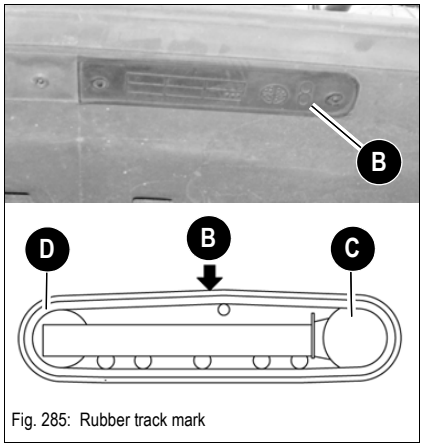


Fig. 285: Rubber track mark

☞ *The rubber track has a mark **B** as shown in Fig. 285.*

☞ *Place the machine so that mark **B** of the rubber track is between the drive pinion **C** and the track tension roller **D**.*

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.*

☞ *Use suitable auxiliary means to support the machine.*

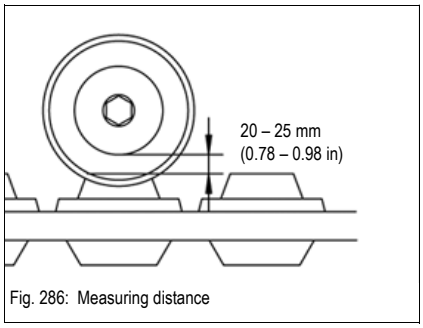


Fig. 286: Measuring distance

- Standard play between the sliding block's shoulder and the contact area of the second support roller of the drive pinion is 20 – 25 mm (0.78 – 0.98 in).

☞ Set the tension as follows if it is not in accordance with the rated value – *see Adjusting track tension* on page 5-34.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Checking the track tension of the steel tracks (option) and hybrid tracks (option)

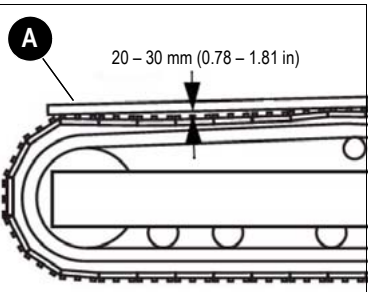


Fig. 287: Measuring distance

☞ *Place the machine on firm, level and horizontal ground.*

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.*

☞ *Use suitable auxiliary means to support the machine.*

☞ *Place a measuring staff **A** across the highest points of the track.*

➥ The track must sag 20 – 30 mm (0.78 – 1.81 in) in the middle.

☞ Set the tension as follows if it is not in accordance with the rated value – *see Adjusting track tension* on page 5-34.

Adjusting track tension

Danger!

The lubricating valve can be squeezed out due to the high grease pressure in the hydraulic ram.

Danger of personal injury

☞ *Open the lubricating valve only very carefully and do not slacken it more than a revolution.*

☞ *Slacken no other component except the lubricating valve.*

☞ *Keep your face away from the lubricating valve connection.*

➥ Contact an authorised workshop if this does not reduce track tension.

☞ *Release grease only as described below.*

☞ *Observe the safety instructions.*

Caution!

Excessive tension of the tracks causes severe damage to the ram and the track.

☞ *Tighten the tracks only up to the prescribed measuring distance.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Tightening the tracks

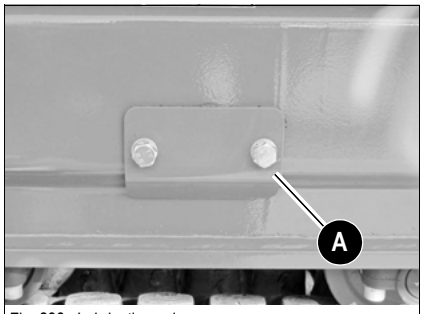


Fig. 288: Lubricating valve cover

☞ *Remove cover **A** over the lubricating valve with a suitable tool.*

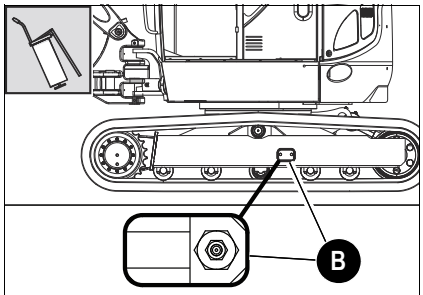


Fig. 289: Tightening the tracks

☞ *Inject grease with the pump through lubricating valve **B**.*

☞ *Check the tension is correct by lowering the machine to the ground, starting the engine, letting it run at idling speed without any load and slowly moving the machine forwards and reverse and switching it off again.*

☞ *Lift the machine again.*

☞ *Check the tension of the tracks again.*

➥ If the tension is not correct:

☞ Adjust again.

☞ *Should the tracks still be slack after injecting more grease, replace the tracks or the seals in the rams. Contact an authorised dealer in this case.*

Reducing tension

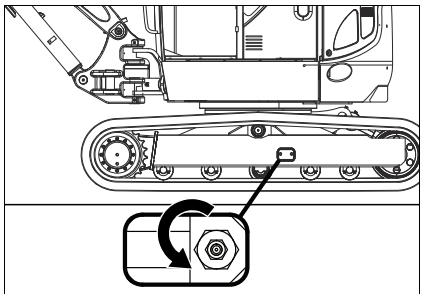


Fig. 290: Draining grease

☞ Place a suitable container underneath to collect the grease.

☞ *Slowly slacken lubricating valve **B** one revolution counterclockwise to release the grease.*

➥ The grease flows out of the groove of the lubricating valve.

☞ *Retighten the lubricating valve **B**.*

☞ *Check the tension is correct by lowering the machine to the ground, starting the engine, letting it run at idling speed without any load and slowly moving the machine forwards and reverse and switching it off again.*

☞ *Lift the machine again.*

☞ *Check the tension of the tracks again.*

➥ If the tension is not correct:

☞ Adjust again.

☞ *Install cover **A** again.*

Environment!

Use a suitable container to collect the grease as it flows out and dispose of it in an environmentally friendly manner.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.13 Travelling drive

Danger!

The engine components and the oil are very hot immediately after switching off the machine. If the inside of the drive gear is under pressure, the oil or the plug can be squeezed out.

Danger of injury and scalding

☞ *Wait until the engine has cooled down before taking up work.*

☞ *Slowly open the plug to release the pressure inside.*

Checking the oil level and filling up oil

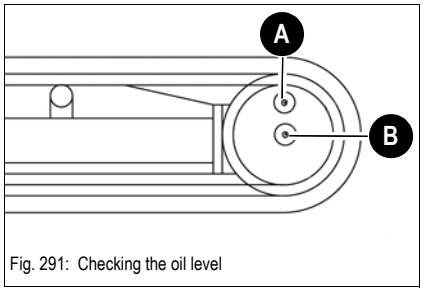


Fig. 291: Checking the oil level

☞ *Place the machine on firm, level and horizontal ground.*

☞ *Place the machine so that filler plug **A** is at the top.*

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Let the engine cool down.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.*

☞ *Unscrew screws **A** and **B** with a suitable tool.*

☞ *A small quantity of oil must flow out of opening **B**.*

➥ If the oil does not flow out of opening **B**, fill up oil:

☞ Fill in oil through opening **A**,

➥ until a small quantity of oil flows out of opening **B**.

☞ *Screw screws **A** and **B** back in again.*

☞ *Move the machine a few metres.*

☞ *Check the oil level again.*

➥ If the oil level is not correct:

☞ Repeat the procedure.

Draining oil

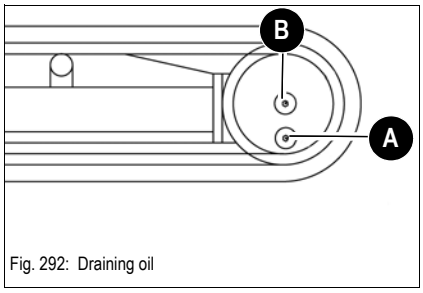


Fig. 292: Draining oil

☞ *Place the machine on firm, level and horizontal ground.*

☞ *Place the machine so that filler plug **A** is at the bottom.*

☞ *Stop the engine.*

☞ *Let the engine cool down.*

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.*

☞ *Unscrew screws **A** and **B** with a suitable tool.*

➥ The oil now flows out of opening **B**.

☞ Use a suitable container to collect the oil as it drains.

Environment!

Collect the oil with a suitable container and dispose of it in an environmentally friendly manner.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.14 Maintenance of attachments

Notice!

Correct maintenance and service is absolutely necessary for smooth and continuous operation, and for an increased service life of the attachments. Observe the lubrication and maintenance instructions in the Operator's Manuals of the attachments.

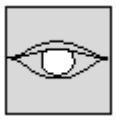
5.15 Electrical system

Service and maintenance work at regular intervals



Checks before driving the machine or when changing users

- Is the light system OK?
- Do the lights and the signalling and warning system work?



Every week

- Electric fuses
  – see chapter Fuse box on instrument panel (75Z3/8003 up to serial no. AD07209/ AD07187) on page 6-3.
- Cable and earth connections.
- Battery charge condition *– see Battery* on page 5-38.
- Condition of battery terminals.

Instructions concerning specific components

Cables, lamps and fuses

Always observe the following instructions:

- Defective components of the electrical system must always be replaced by an authorised expert. Bulbs and fuses may be changed by the user.
- When carrying out maintenance work on the electrical system, pay particular attention to ensuring good contact in leads and fuses.
- Blown fuses indicate overloading or short circuits. The electrical system must therefore be checked before installing the new fuse.
- Only use fuses with the specified load capacity (amperage) *– see chapter Fuse box on instrument panel (75Z3/8003 up to serial no. AD07209/AD07187)* on page 6-3.

Alternator

Always observe the following instructions:

- Start the engine only if the battery is connected.
- When connecting the battery, ensure that the poles (+/–) are not inverted.
- Always disconnect the battery before carrying out welding work or connecting a quick battery charger.
- Replace defective charge indicator lights immediately
  – see chapter Alternator charge function indicator light (red) on page 3-14.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Battery

Danger!

The battery contains sulphuric acid. This acid must not be allowed to come into contact with the skin, the eyes, clothing or the machine.
Sulphuric acid is highly caustic.

Danger of caustic injury

Therefore when recharging and/or working near the battery:

☞ *Always wear goggles and protective clothing with long sleeves.*

If acid is spilt:

☞ *Thoroughly rinse all affected surfaces immediately with plenty of water.*

☞ *Thoroughly wash any part of the body touched by the sulphuric acid immediately with plenty of water and seek medical attention at once.*

Especially when charging batteries, as well as during normal operation of batteries, an oxyhydrogen mixture is formed in the battery cells –

Explosion hazard.

☞ *Avoid naked lights and sparks in the vicinity of the battery and do not smoke.*

☞ *Do not attempt to jump-start the machine if the battery is frozen or if the acid level is low. The battery can rupture or explode.*

- Replace the battery immediately.

☞ *Always disconnect the negative terminal (–) from the battery before starting repair work on the electrical system.*

Caution!

☞ *Use only 12 V power sources. Higher voltages will damage the electrical components.*

☞ *When connecting the battery leads, ensure that the poles +/– are not inverted, otherwise sensitive electrical components will be damaged.*

☞ *Do not interrupt voltage-carrying circuits at the battery terminals because of the danger of sparking.*

☞ *Never place tools or other conductive articles on the battery – danger of short circuit.*

☞ *Dispose of used batteries properly.*

Notice!

Do not disconnect the battery while the engine is running

https://truckmanualshub.com/

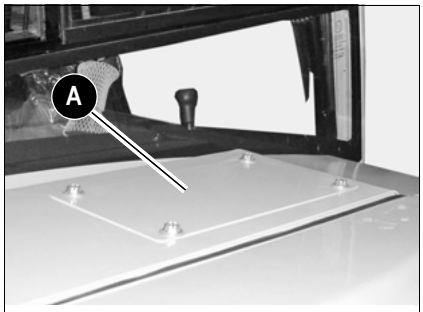


Fig. 293: Maintenance opening

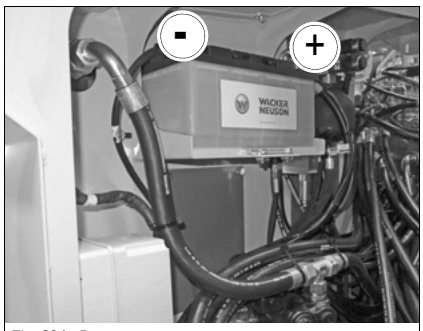


Fig. 294: Battery

Notice!

The battery is accessed via maintenance opening **A** outside the machine to the right of the cab.

The battery is “maintenance-free”. However have the battery checked at regular intervals to ensure that the electrolyte level is between the MIN and MAX marks.

Checking the battery requires it to be removed and must be carried out by an authorised workshop.

Always follow the specific battery safety instructions.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.16 General maintenance work

Cleaning

Cleaning the machine is divided into 3 separate areas:

- Inside the cab.
- Exterior of the machine.
- Engine compartment.

The wrong choice of cleaning equipment and agents can impair the operating safety of the machine on the one hand, and on the other undermine the health of the persons in charge of cleaning the machine. It is therefore essential to observe the following instructions.

General instructions for all areas of the machine

Cleaning with washing solvents

- Ensure adequate room ventilation.
- Wear suitable protective clothing.
- Do not use flammable liquids, such as petrol or diesel.

Cleaning with compressed air

- Work carefully.
- Wear goggles and protective clothing.
- Do not aim the compressed air at the skin or at other people.
- Do not use compressed air for cleaning your clothing.

Cleaning with a high-pressure cleaner or steam jet

- Cover electric parts.
- Do not directly expose electric components and damping material to the jet.
- Cover the vent filter on the hydraulic oil tank and the filler caps for fuel, hydraulic oil etc.
- Protect the following components from moisture:
  - Electric components such as the alternator etc.
  - Control devices and seals.
  - Air intake filters etc.

Cleaning with volatile and easily flammable anticorrosion agents and sprays:

- Ensure adequate room ventilation.
- Do not use unprotected lights or naked flames.
- Do not smoke.

Inside the cab

Caution!

Never use high-pressure cleaners, steam jets or high-pressure water to clean inside the cab.
Water under high pressure can

☞ *penetrate into the electrical system and cause short circuits and*

☞ *damage seals and disable the controls.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

We recommend using the following aids to clean the cab:

- Broom
- Vacuum cleaner
- Damp cloth
- Brush
- Water with mild soap solution

Cleaning the seat belt

- Clean the seat belt (which remains fitted in the machine) only with a mild soap solution; do not use chemical agents as they can destroy the fabric.

Exterior of the machine

The following articles are generally suitable:

- High-pressure cleaner.
- Steam jet.

Engine compartment

Danger!

Clean the engine at engine standstill only –

Danger of personal injury

☞ *Stop the engine before cleaning.*

Caution!

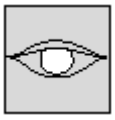
When cleaning the engine with a water or steam jet

☞ *The engine must be cold*

☞ *and do not point the jet directly at electric sensors such as the oil pressure switch.*

The humidity penetrating any such sensors causes them to fail and leads to engine damage.

Screw connections and attachments



All screw connections must be checked regularly for tightness, even if they are not listed in the maintenance schedules.

☞ *Engine fastening screws.*

☞ *Fastening screws on the hydraulic system.*

☞ *Line, bucket teeth and pin fastenings on the attachment.*

Retighten loose connections immediately. Contact an authorised workshop if necessary.

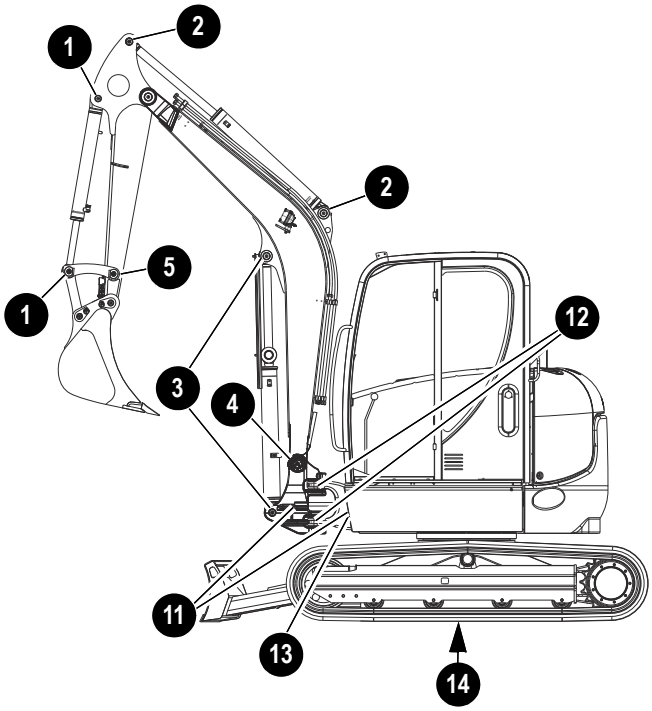
Pivots and hinges

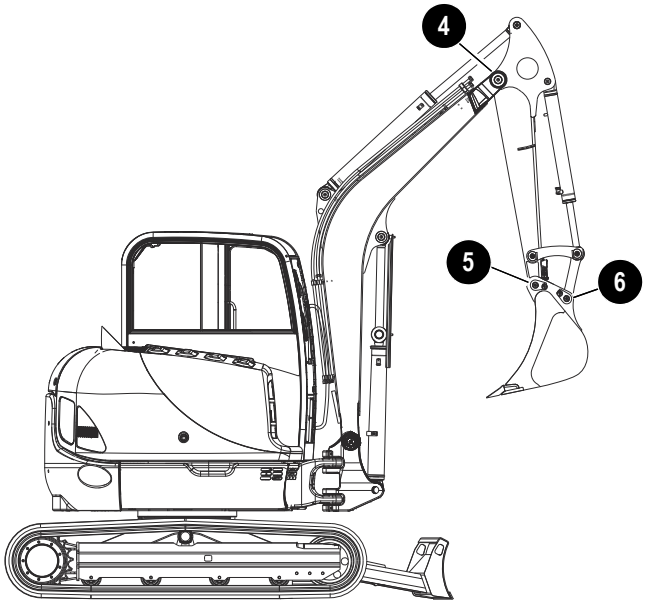


All mechanical pivot points on the machine (e.g. door hinges, joints) and fittings (e.g. door arresters) must be lubricated regularly, even if they are not listed in the lubrication plan.

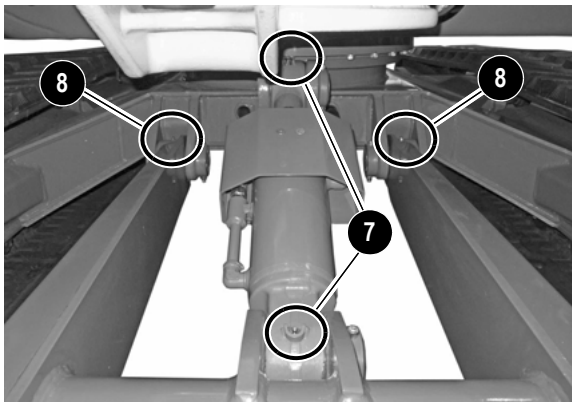
https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.17 Overview of lubrication points

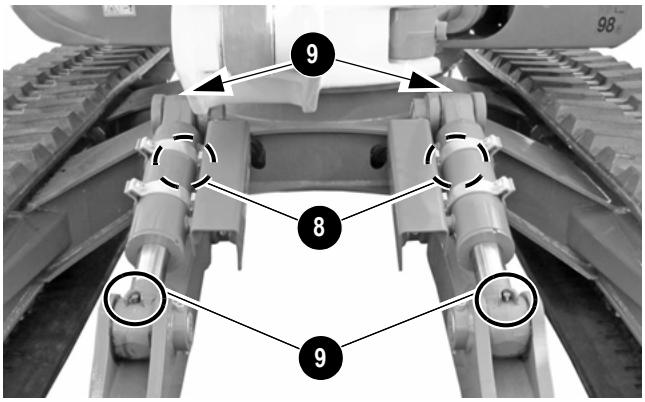




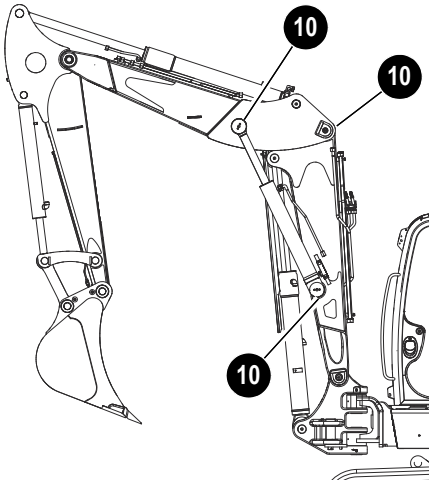
Stabiliser blade 75Z3

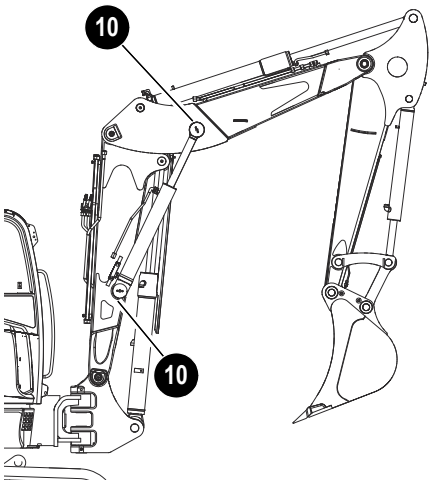


Stabiliser blade 8003



Triple articulation boom 8003 (option)





https://truckmanualshub.com/

Pos.	Lubrication point	Interval	No
1	Bucket ram	Daily	2
2	Stick ram	Daily	2
3	Boom ram	Daily	2
4	Boom	Daily	2
5	Stick	Daily	2
6	Joint rod	Daily	1
7	Stabiliser blade ram 75Z3	Daily	2
8	Stabiliser blade	Daily	2
9	Stabiliser blade ram 8003	Daily	4
10	Triple articulation boom 8003 (option)	Daily	5
11	Offset ram	Daily	2
12	Swivelling console	Daily	2
13	Ball bearing race of live ring	Every week	1
14	Teeth of live ring	Every week	1
15	Powertilt (option)	Daily	4
16	Hydraulic quickhitch (option)	Daily	2

Parking the machine

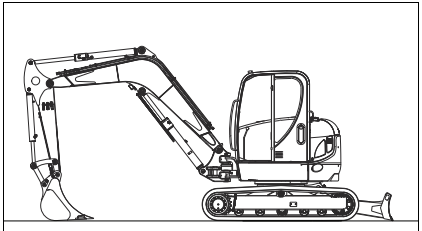


Fig. 295: Parking the machine

- Stop the machine on firm, level and horizontal ground.
- Position the boom straight ahead at the centre of the machine.
- Lower the stabiliser blade to the ground.
- Stop the engine.
- Operate the joystick repeatedly to release the pressure in the hydraulic system.
- Remove the ignition key and carry it with you.
- Move the control levers in all directions repeatedly.
- Fold the control lever base up.
- Close the windows and the door.
- Leave the cab.
- Close the door and the engine cover.
- Perform maintenance work.

Notice!

Keep the lubrication points clean and remove ejected grease.

Lubrication points on the boom, bucket and stick rams

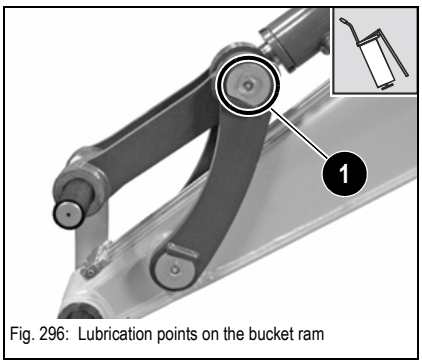


Fig. 296: Lubrication points on the bucket ram

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **1** on the bucket ram.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

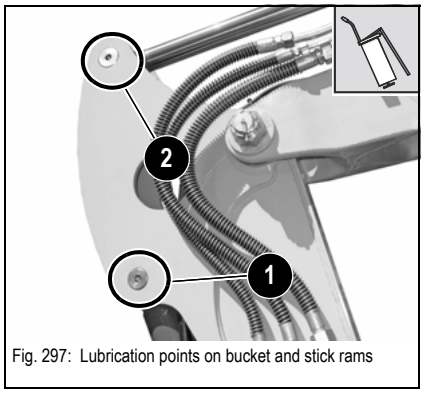


Fig. 297: Lubrication points on bucket and stick rams

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **1** on the bucket ram.*

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **2** on the stick ram.*

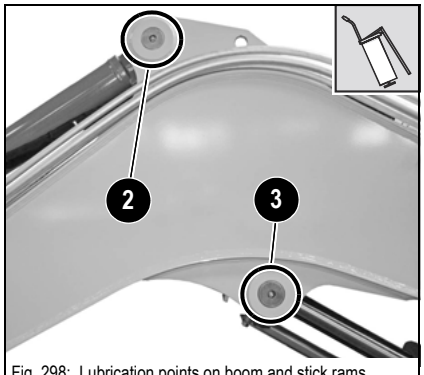


Fig. 298: Lubrication points on boom and stick rams

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **2** on the stick ram.*

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **3** on the boom ram.*

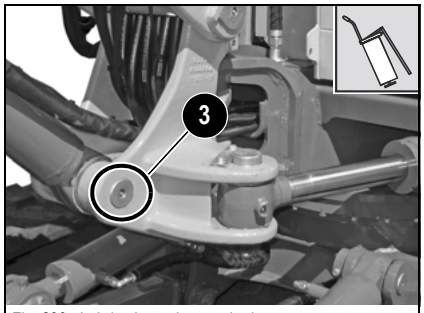


Fig. 299: Lubrication points on the boom ram

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **3** on the boom ram.*

Lubrication points on the boom and stick

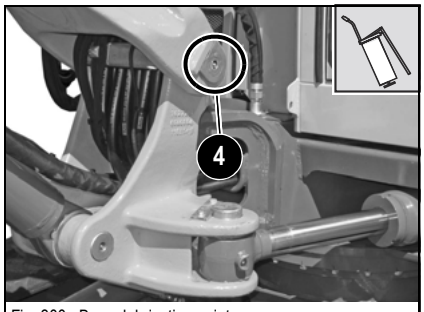


Fig. 300: Boom lubrication points

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **4** on the boom*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

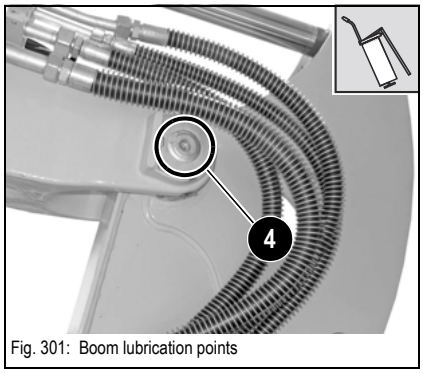


Fig. 301: Boom lubrication points

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **4** on the boom*

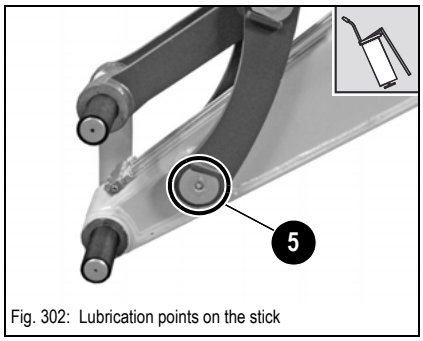


Fig. 302: Lubrication points on the stick

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **5** on the stick.*

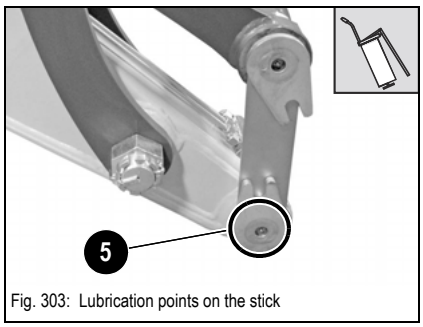


Fig. 303: Lubrication points on the stick

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **5** on the stick.*

Joint rod lubrication point

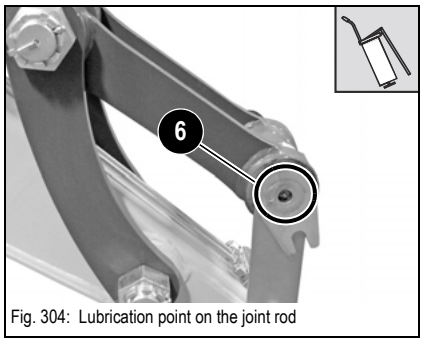


Fig. 304: Lubrication point on the joint rod

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication point **6** on the joint rod.*

Lubrication points on the stabiliser blade and stabiliser blade ram 75Z3

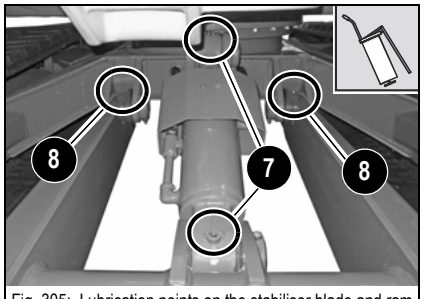


Fig. 305: Lubrication points on the stabiliser blade and ram 75Z3

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **7** on the stabiliser blade ram.*

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **8** (on either side) on the stabiliser blade.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Lubrication points of stabiliser blade ram 8003

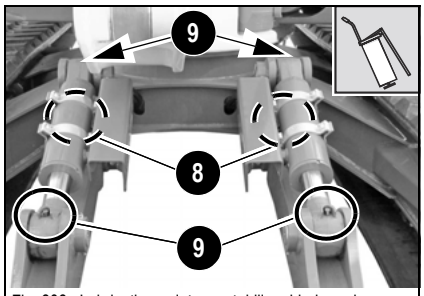


Fig. 306: Lubrication points on stabiliser blade and ram 8003

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **9** on the stabiliser blade ram.*

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **8** (on either side) on the stabiliser blade.*

Lubrication points on the slewing ram and swivelling console

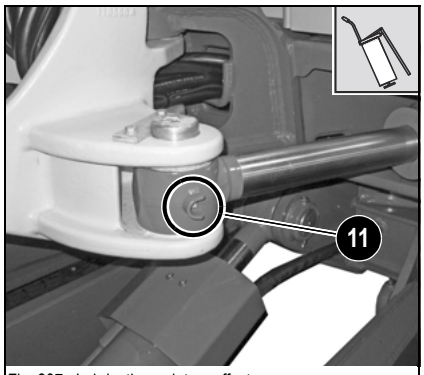


Fig. 307: Lubrication point on offset ram

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication point **11** on the offset ram.*

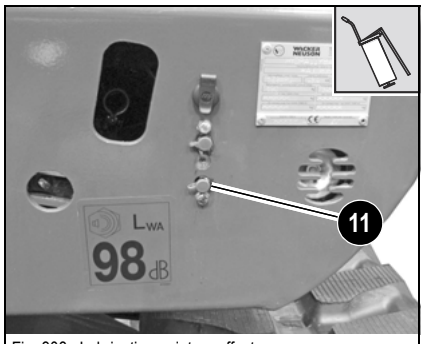


Fig. 308: Lubrication point on offset ram

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication point **11** of the offset ram.*

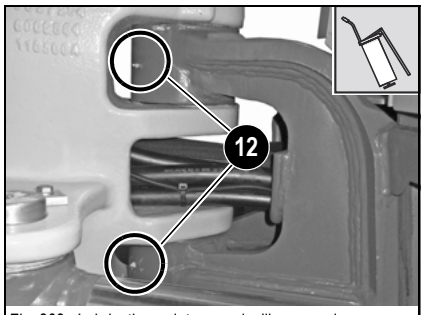


Fig. 309: Lubrication points on swivelling console

☞ *Apply grease to lubrication points **12** of the swivelling console.*

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Lubrication points of ball bearing race of live ring

Danger!

Do not rotate the machine during lubrication.

Danger of severe crushing that can cause death or severe injury.

☞ – *see Parking the machine on page 5-43*

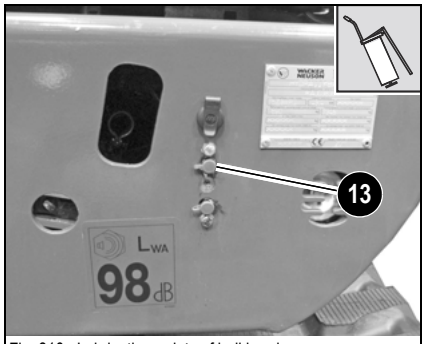


Fig. 310: Lubrication points of ball bearing race

☞ Stop and park the machine.

☞ Apply grease to lubrication points **13** with one stroke of the grease gun.

☞ Remove ejected grease.

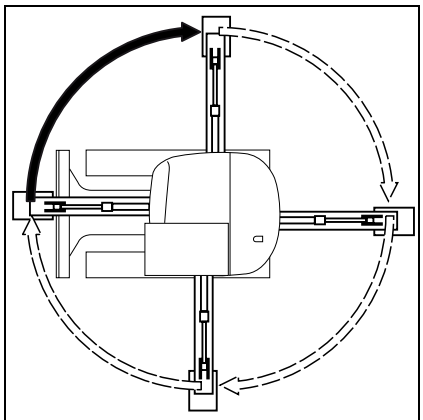


Fig. 311: Turn the machine 90° at a time

☞ Turn the machine 90° at a time.

☞ Stop and park the machine.

☞ Apply grease to each of lubrication points **13** with one stroke of the grease gun.

☞ Remove ejected grease.

☞ Turn the machine 360° a few times.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Lubrication points of live ring teeth

Danger!

Do not rotate the machine during lubrication.

Danger of severe crushing that can cause death or severe injury.

☞ – *see Parking the machine on page 5-43*

Caution!

Lubrication can be carried out over a pit only.

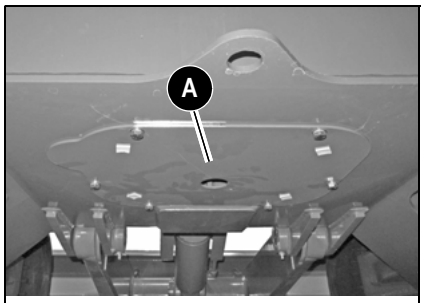


Fig. 312: Remove the cover

☞ Drive and stop the machine over a pit.

☞ The lubrication point is located on the lower side of the undercarriage.

☞ Remove cover **A** on the lower side with a suitable tool.

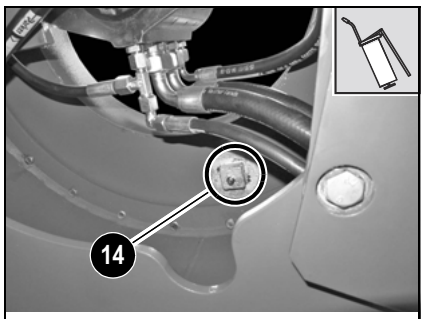


Fig. 313: Teeth lubrication point

☞ Apply grease to lubrication point **14** with five strokes of the grease gun.

☞ Remove ejected grease.

☞ Install the cover.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Powertilt lubrication points (option)

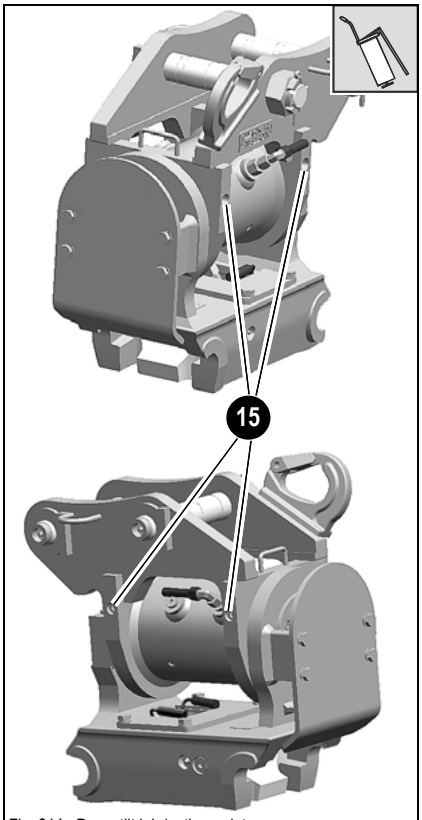


Fig. 314: Powertilt lubrication points

Carry out maintenance of the Powertilt unit once a day with the other maintenance work for the machine.

Carry out visual checks for possible defects, damage or cracks.

Remove all dirt on and around moving parts.

Apply grease via grease nipples **15**.

– *see chapter 3.56 Powertilt (option)* on page 3-95

Lubrication points of hydraulic quickhitch (option)

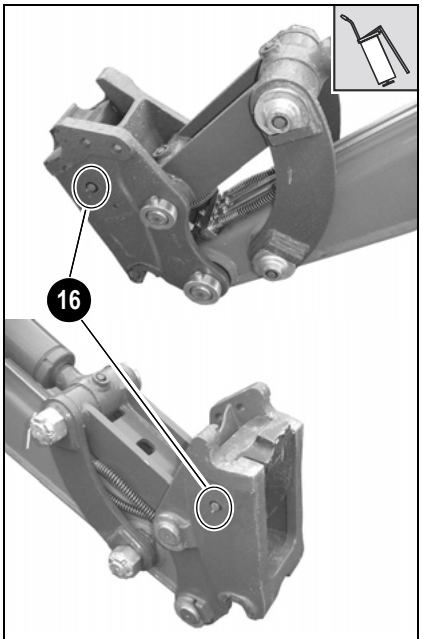


Fig. 315: Quickhitch lubrication points

Notice!

Before picking up an attachment, the driver must ensure that it can be hitched correctly by removing all dirt on either claw of the quickhitch.
Carry out maintenance on the quickhitch once a day with the other maintenance work for the machine.

Carry out visual checks for possible defects, damage or cracks.

Remove all dirt on and around moving parts.

The claws must be clean and slightly greased.

Apply grease to the friction surfaces of the lock mechanism via 2 grease nipples **16** on either side of the quickhitch (see *Fig. 315*).

Before starting work, check the acoustic signal. You must be able to hear the acoustic signal as you actuate the switch.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Lubrication points of control lever base (from serial no. AJ02793)

Danger!

In the area of the moving parts of the control lever base –

Crushing hazard.

☞ *Stay clear (extremities, clothing) of the moving parts.*

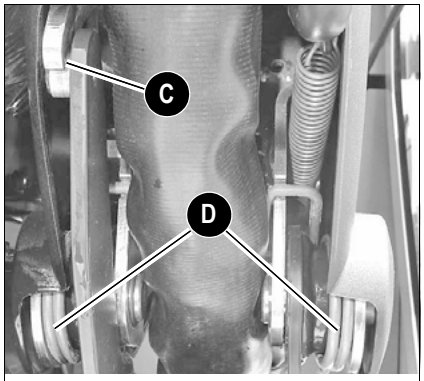


Fig. 316: Guide lever and double spring

☞ *Fold the control lever base up.*

☞ *Spray fluid grease onto guide lever **C**.*

☞ *Spray fluid grease on both sides of double spring **D**.*

Notice!

Spray fluid grease onto the lubrication points once a month (every 250 s/h).

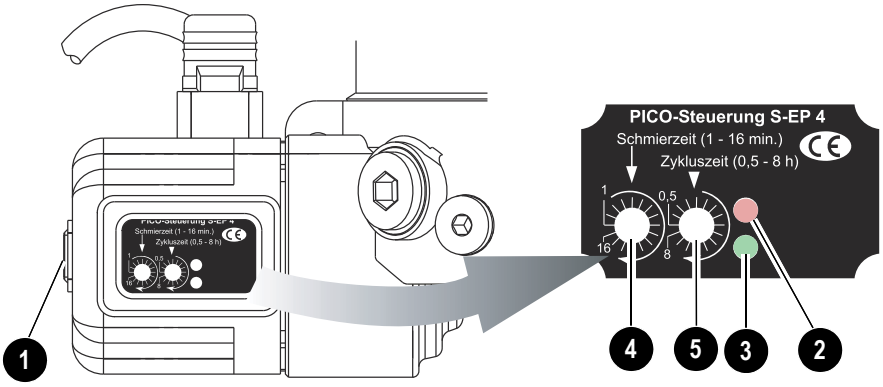
https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.18 Central lubrication system (option)

Grease-based central lubrication system with 12 lubrication points.

Not in connection with triple articulation boom (option).

Function



Pos.	Designation
1	Push button on motor housing
2	Red LED
3	Green LED
4	Lubrication time potentiometer
5	Cycle time potentiometer

The green LED comes on for about 1.5 sec once ignition is switched on to indicate readiness.

Pressing the push button on the pump's motor housing switches on the pump and starts the lubrication cycle. The pump drive motor is switched off and cycle time begins once lubrication time is over.

All further lubrications start automatically according to the cycle time set.

Lubrication time is stopped and saved if ignition or lubrication is switched off during cycle time. The data is read from the memory upon switching ignition on again, and lubrication is resumed where it was interrupted.

Pressing the push button on the motor housing or on the instrument panel starts intermediate lubrication if ignition is switched on.

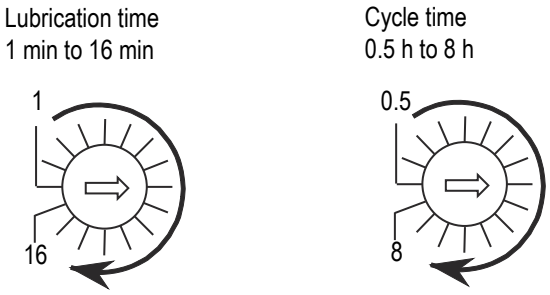
Status LEDs

Display	Meaning
Green LED 1.5 sec	Ignition on (operational readiness)
Steady green light	Comes on during lubrication
Steady red light	Grease level error Remains lit until grease tank is refilled
Blinking red light	Overpressure error

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Adjusting cycle time and lubrication time

Adjust the cycle time and the lubrication time with the potentiometers.



Repair in case of clogging

Clogging indication

Overpressure beyond operating pressure means the system is clogged and is indicated as follows:

- Grease comes out at pressure relief valve.
- Blinking red LED on the pump housing.

Causes for clogging in the system

- Squeezed or blocked lubrication line.
- Bearing blocked or overfilled with lubricant.
- Lubricant not suitable for central lubrication systems.
- Blocked distributor.

Detecting clogging

☞ *Unscrew the main line off the main distributor.*

☞ *Actuate the pump with the push button and check whether the lubricant is delivered correctly.*

☞ *Screw the main line onto the main distributor.*

☞ *Unscrew the lines one after another and actuate the pump every time.*

Repairing a clogged distributor

☞ *Remove the distributor from the system.*

☞ *Unscrew the screw plug of the piston bore.*

☞ *Move the piston back and forth (do not remove).*

☞ *Screw the screw plugs back in again.*

You can remove the piston of the defective distributor and check it for scratches or damage.

If there are traces of hardened grease on the piston or the bores, remove the grease with compressed air or by washing the piston.

Notice!

Traces of hardened grease are a sign that the grease is not suitable for central lubrication systems.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.19 Preparatory work before taking the machine out of service

The measures indicated below refer to putting the machine out of operation for 30 days or longer.

- Park the machine
  – *see* *Parking the machine* on page 3-33.
- Check whether oil or other fluids leak from the machine.
- Clean the engine with a high-pressure cleaner in a suitable place
  – *see* *General maintenance work* on page 5-40.
- Carefully clean and dry the entire machine.
- Spray an anticorrosion agent onto bare metal parts of the machine (e.g. piston rods of hydraulic rams).
- Apply grease to all lubrication points.
- Change engine oil.
- Check and if necessary fill up hydraulic oil and coolant.
- Store the machine indoors if possible.
- If the machine is stored outdoors, place it on a wooden base and cover it with a watertight tarpaulin to protect it against humidity.
- Fill up the fuel tank to the maximum level.
- Remove the earthing strap from the battery, or remove the battery and store it in a safe place. Charge the battery and carry out battery maintenance at regular intervals.
- Switch off the fuel filter on the upper carriage and the fuel filter on the engine (turn to OFF).
- Close the exhaust pipe and the air intake opening of the air filter system.

5.20 Maintenance if the machine is out of service for a longer period of time

The following measures must be taken if the machine is out of service for more than 30 days.

Putting into operation again

- Remove anticorrosion agent from the piston rods.
- Charge, install and connect the battery.
- Remove the seals from the exhaust pipe and the air filter intake.
- Check the condition of the air filter element and replace the element if necessary.
- Check the dust valve.
- Switch on the fuel filters on the upper carriage and the engine (turn to ON).
- Turn the ignition to position 1 for 2 minutes (to supply the engine with fuel).
- Check whether oil or other fluids leak from the machine.
- Lubricate the machine according to the lubrication plan.
- Check and if necessary fill up engine oil, hydraulic oil, coolant and fuel in the units and tanks.
- If the machine was out of service for over 6 months, change the oil in the gearbox, engine, etc. and the hydraulic oil tank.
- Also replace hydraulic oil filters (return and breather filters) if the machine has been out of service for over 6 months.
- Remove the ignition key, remove fuse F2 on the right-hand cover.
- Let the engine run 15 seconds.
- Wait 15 seconds.
- Let the engine run 15 seconds again.
- Remove the ignition key, put fuse F2 back in.
- Start the diesel engine.
- Let the engine run at idling speed at least 15 minutes without load.
- Check the oil levels in all units and fill up oil if necessary.

Start the machine and ensure that each function and all warnings work correctly before putting the machine back into operation.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.21 Fluids and lubricants

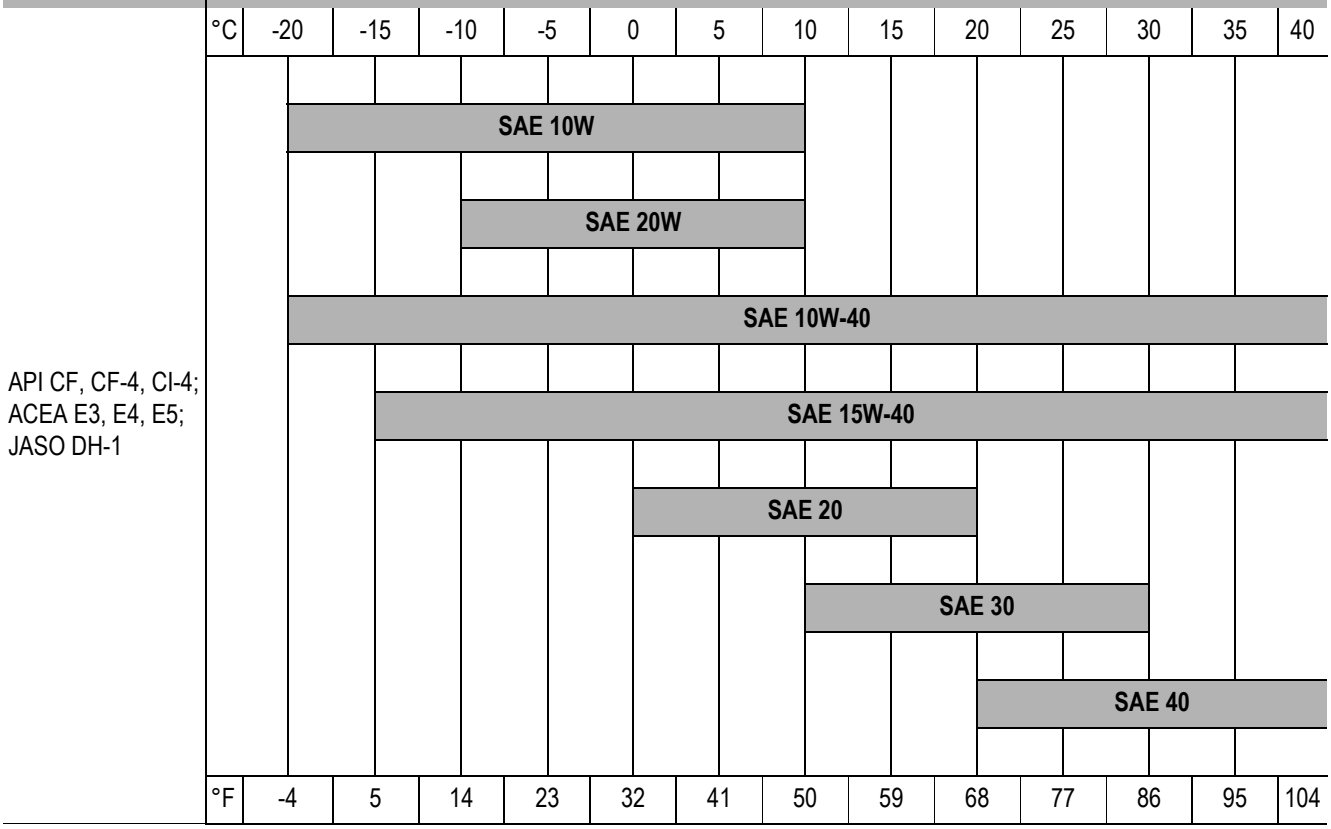
Component/application	Engine/machine fluid	Specification	Season/temperature	Capacities[1]
Diesel engine	Engine oil[2]	SAE10W-40	−20 °C (−4 °F) +40 °C (+104 °F)	10.2 l (2.69 gal)
Travelling drive	Gearbox oil[3]	SAE80W-90[4]	Year-round	About 1.3 l each (0.34 gal)
Hydraulic oil tank	Hydraulic oil	HVLP 46[5]	Year-round[6]	99 l (26.2 gal)
		HV 46[7]		
	Biodegradable oil [8]	HLP Synth 46		
		BIOHYD SE-S 46		
Grease	Roller and friction bearings	KPF 2 K-20[9], ISO-L-X-BCEB 2[10]	Year-round	As required
	Open transmissions live ring: ball bearing			
	Live ring gears			
	Grease nipples			
Grease nipples	Multipurpose grease	KPF 2 K-20[11]	Year-round	As required
Battery terminals	Acid-proof grease[12]	FINA Marson L2	Year-round	As required
Fuel tank	Diesel fuel	ASTM D975-94: 1D, 2D (USA)	Summer or winter diesel depending on outside temperatures	93 l (24.6 gal)
		EN 590 : 96 (EU)		
		ISO 8217 DMX		
		BS 2869-A1, A2 (GB)		
		JIS K2204		
		KSM-2610		
		GB252		
	Biodegradable diesel fuel	EN 14214		
		ASTM D-6751		
Engine cooling system	Coolant	Soft water + antifreeze SF D12 Plus	Year-round	About 12 l (3.2 gal)
Air conditioning	Refrigerant	R134a[13]	Year-round	1000 g (2.2 lbs.)
	Compressor oil	Sanden SP10	Year-round	122 cm³ (7.44 in. cu.)
Washer system	Cleaning agent	Water + antifreeze	Year-round	1.2 l (0.31 gal)
Control lever base	Adhesive fluid grease	Förch S401	Year-round	As required

1. The capacities indicated are approximate values; the oil level check alone is relevant for the correct oil level. Capacities indicated are no system fills.
2. According to DIN 51511 (API CF, CF-4, CI-4; ACEA E3, E4, E5; JASO DH-1).
3. Hypoid gearbox oil based on basic mineral oil (SAE80W-90 according to DIN 51502), (API GL-4, GL5).
4. According to DIN 51502 on a mineral oil basis. Do not mix gearbox oils.
5. According to DIN 51524 section 3, ISO-VG 46.
6. Depending on local conditions – *see Hydraulics oil grade* on page 5-56.
7. According to ISO 6743/4.
8. Biodegradable hydraulic oil based on saturated synthetic esters with an iodine value of < 10, according to DIN 51524, section 3, HVLP, HEES.
9. KPF 2 K-20 according to DIN 51502 multipurpose lithium grease.
10. ISO-L-X-BCEB 2 according to DIN ISO 6743-9.
11. KPF 2 K-20 according to DIN 51502 multipurpose lithium grease.
12. Standard acid-proof grease NGLI category 2.
13. According to DIN 8960.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Oil grades for the diesel engine, depending on temperature

Engine oil grade	Ambient temperature (C°)



Additional oil change and filter replacement (hydraulic system)

Caution!

An additional oil change and filter replacement can be required depending on how the machine is used. Failure to observe these replacement intervals can cause damage to hydraulic components.

☞ *Observe the following intervals.*

Application		Hydraulic oil	Hydraulic oil filter insert
Normal work (excavation work)		Every 1000 s/h	Replace the first time after 50 s/h, then every 500 s/h
Percentage of hammer work	20 %	Every 800 s/h	300 s/h
	40 %	Every 400 s/h	
	60 %	Every 300 s/h	100 s/h
	Over 80 %	Every 200 s/h	

Notice!

Please refer to the maintenance plan on page *5-57* for additional maintenance work.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Oil grades for the hydraulic system, depending on temperature

Hydraulics oil grade	Ambient temperature														
	°C	-20	-15	-10	-5	0	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	50
HVLP 46 [1] HV 46 [2]		ISO VG32													
					ISO VG46										
							ISO VG68								
	°F	-4	5	14	23	32	41	50	59	68	77	86	95	104	122

1. According to DIN 51524 section 3, ISO-VG 46.
2. According to ISO 6743/4.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.22 Maintenance plan (overview)

Work description

For service and maintenance work on the attachment, please refer to the operation and maintenance manual of the attachment manufacturer as well.

	Maintenance plan/service hours (s/h)								
	Service work (daily)	Every 50 s/h	Every 250 s/h	Every 500 s/h	Every 1000 s/h once a year	Every 1500 s/h	Every 2000 s/h	Customer	Authorised workshop
Fluid and filter changes ( ):									
Carry out the following oil and filter changes (check oil levels after test run):									
• Engine oil[1]		●		●					●
• Engine oil filter[2]		●		●					●
• Fuel filter[3]		●		●					●
• Air filter element (if indicator light comes on)[4]				●				●	
• Coolant					●				●
• Hydraulic oil filter insert [5]		●		●					●
• Hydraulic oil					●				●
• Hydraulic oil tank breather					●				●
• Drain the condensation water from the hydraulic oil tank				●					●
• Replace cab air filter for heating and air conditioning					●			●	
• Drive gearbox oil [6]		●			●				●
Inspection work ( ):									
Check the following material. Refill if necessary:									
• Engine oil	●							●	
• Engine coolant	●							●	
• Hydraulic oil	●							●	
• Fuel	●							●	
• Drive gearbox oil			●						●
Clean water ducts							●		●
Check pedal function	●							●	
Check engine/hydraulic oil radiator and air conditioning for dirt. Clean if necessary	●							●	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.22 Maintenance plan (overview)

Work description

For service and maintenance work on the attachment, please refer to the operation and maintenance manual of the attachment manufacturer as well.

	Maintenance plan/service hours (s/h)								
	Service work (daily)	Every 50 s/h	Every 250 s/h	Every 500 s/h	Every 1000 s/h once a year	Every 1500 s/h	Every 2000 s/h	Customer	Authorised workshop
Check cooling systems, heating and hoses for leaks and pressure (visual check)	●							●	
Check the pilot control filter for dirt, clean it if necessary					●				●
Clean the cab air filter of the heating system				●				●	
Replace the cab air filter of the heating system					●			●	
Check the air filter for damage	●							●	
Check the air filter elements for dirt, replace them if necessary			●					●	
Check correct function of air filter contamination gauge				●					●
Remove dust from dust valve	●							●	
Prefilter with water separator: drain water	●							●	
• Clean				●					●
Diesel particulate filter (option) – *see chapter 5.9 Diesel particulate filter (option)* on page 5-16	●	●		●				●	●
Check the exhaust gas recirculation valve, clean it if necessary					●				●
Check V-belt condition and tension	●							●	
Check exhaust system for damage and condition	●							●	
Check valve clearance. Adjust if necessary					●				●
Lapping the intake and exhaust valves							●		●
Check and adjust the injection pressure of the injection nozzles, clean the injection needles/nozzles						●			●
Empty the fuel tank and check for dirt				●					●
Check battery electrolyte. Fill up with distilled water if necessary		●		●				●	
Check alternator, starter and electric connections, bearing play and function				●					●
Check preheating system and electric connections				●					●
Pressure check of primary pressure limiting valves[7]		●		●					●
Check tracks for cracks and cuts	●							●	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.22 Maintenance plan (overview)

Work description

For service and maintenance work on the attachment, please refer to the operation and maintenance manual of the attachment manufacturer as well.

	Maintenance plan/service hours (s/h)							
	Service work (daily)	Every 50 s/h	Every 250 s/h	Every 500 s/h	Every 1000 s/h once a year	Every 1500 s/h	Every 2000 s/h	Customer	Authorised workshop
Check track tension. Retighten if necessary	●							●	
Check bearing play of tread rollers, track carrier rollers, front idlers				●					●
Check piston rods for damage	●							●	
Check the screw connections of the safety devices (e.g. cab, etc.) for tightness	●			●					●
Check screws for tightness				●					●
Check pin lock	●							●	
Check line fixtures	●							●	
Check indicator lights for correct function	●							●	
Check cab tilt lock, cables and cable holders for damage and correct function		●		●					●
Couplings, dirt pile-up on hydraulic system dust caps	●							●	
Check insulating mats in the engine compartment for damage/condition		●						●	
Ensure grease supply of central lubrication system (option)	●							●	
Check labels and Operator's Manual for completeness and condition		●						●	
Adjust the mirrors (option) correctly, clean them and check them for damage and correct function	●							●	
Check all fastening screws on the mirrors (option) and tighten them if necessary		●						●	
Check function of engine cover gas strut	●							●	
Check hydraulic quickhitch for damage	●							●	
Lights and acoustic warning system [8]	●							●	
Check gearing of swivel unit pinion					●				●
Check Powertilt (option) for damage	●							●	
Check the axial play of the Powertilt (option). (must not be over 0.38 mm/0.015 in)			●						●
Actuate the Powertilt (option) swivel device in the final position for 1 minute[9]	●							●	
Check protective structures (cab, Front Guard, FOPS)					●			●	

5.22 Maintenance plan (overview)

Work description

For service and maintenance work on the attachment, please refer to the operation and maintenance manual of the attachment manufacturer as well.

	Maintenance plan/service hours (s/h)								
	Service work (daily)	Every 50 s/h	Every 250 s/h	Every 500 s/h	Every 1000 s/h once a year	Every 1500 s/h	Every 2000 s/h	Customer	Authorised workshop
Lubrication service ( ):									
Lubricate the following assemblies/components – *see chapter 5.23 Maintenance label* on page 5-62: When used in water – *see chapter Using the quickhitches in water* on page 2-14									
• Stabiliser blade	●							●	
• Swivelling console	●							●	
• Boom	●							●	
• Stick	●							●	
• Attachment	●							●	
• Hydraulic quickhitch system (option) – *see Hydraulic quickhitch – Easy Lock (option)* on page 3-92	●[10]							●	
• Powertilt (option) with Easy Lock (option)	●[11]							●	
• Grease strip on chassis – *see chapter 5.23 Maintenance label* on page 5-62	●							●	
• Ball bearing race and teeth of live ring		●						●	
• Control lever base			●					●	
Air conditioning ( ):									
Carry out the following maintenance and inspection work:									
• Air conditioning function[12]		●							●
Change cab air filter				●				●	
Check dehumidifier for corrosion, condensation and air bubbles		●							●
Replace dehumidifier						●			●
Compressor oil [13]						●			●
Functional check ( ):									
Check the function of the following assemblies/components. Rectify if necessary:									
• Lights, signalling system, acoustic warning system	●							●	

https://truckmanualshub.com/

5.22 Maintenance plan (overview)

Work description

For service and maintenance work on the attachment, please refer to the operation and maintenance manual of the attachment manufacturer as well.

	Maintenance plan/service hours (s/h)								
	Service work (daily)	Every 50 s/h	Every 250 s/h	Every 500 s/h	Every 1000 s/h once a year	Every 1500 s/h	Every 2000 s/h	Customer	Authorised workshop
• Heating function		●						●	
• Hydraulic quickhitch system (option) (lock)	●							●	
• Check pedal function	●							●	
• Check the Powertilt (option)	●							●	
Leakage check ( ):									
Check for tightness, leaks and chafing: pipes, flexible lines and screw connections of the following assemblies and components. Rectify if necessary:									
• Visual check	●							●	
☞ Engine, hydraulic system and components	●							●	
☞ Cooling and heating circuit	●							●	
☞ Travelling drive	●							●	
☞ Air conditioning	●								●
☞ Hydraulic quickhitch system (option) (hoses, valves)	●							●	

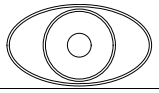
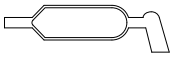
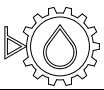
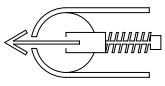
1. Drain engine oil the first time after 50 s/h, then every 500 s/h.
2. Replace the engine oil filter the first time after 50 s/h, then every 500 s/h.
3. Replace the fuel filter the first time after 50 s/h, then every 500 s/h.
4. According to the fouling indicator, replace every 500 s/h at the latest. (Replace after 50 s/h when in extensive use in environments with acidic air, such as acid production facilities, steel and aluminium mills, chemical plants and other nonferrous-metal plants)
5. Replace the hydraulic oil filter insert the first time after 50 s/h, then every 500 s/h.
6. Drain the gearbox oil the first time after 50 s/h, then every 1000 s/h.
7. Check the first time after 50 s/h, then every 500 s/h.
8. Check once a week.
9. Check once a week. Rinse the system to remove dirt. Repeat the procedure in the opposite flow direction.
10. Switch on once every week.
11. Switch on once every week.
12. Switch on once every week.
13. Replace the compressor oil every other 1500 s/h servicing.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

https://truckmanualshub.com/

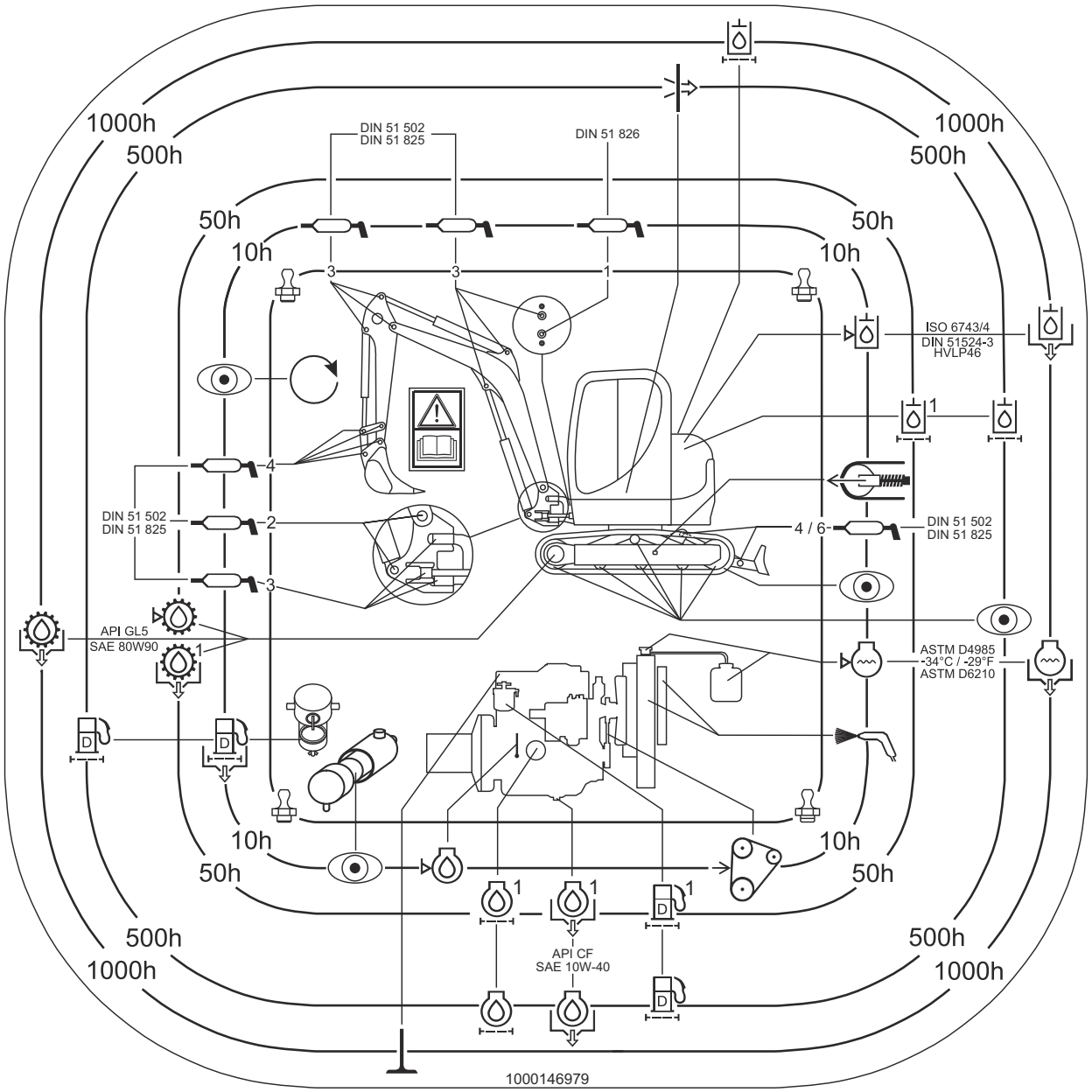
5.23 Maintenance label

Explanation of symbols on the maintenance label

Symbol	Assembly	Explanation
	General	Visual check
	General	Grease instructions
	Fuel system	Drain condensation water
	Fuel system	Replace the fuel filter, clean the fuel prefilter
	Radiator	Check the coolant level
	Radiator	Drain and fill in new coolant
	Engine	Check valve clearance. Adjust if necessary
	Engine	Check the engine oil level
	Engine	Change engine oil
	Engine	Replace the oil filter
	Engine	Check V-belt tension
	Travelling drive	Change oil
	Travelling drive	Check oil
	Undercarriage	Check track tension
	Hydraulic system	Check oil level
	Hydraulic system	Change hydraulic oil
	Hydraulic system	Replace the hydraulic oil filter, replace the breather filter

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Symbol	Assembly	Explanation
	Radiator fins	Clean
	Heating, air conditioning	Clean the cab filter



https://truckmanualshub.com/

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6 Specifications

6.1 Chassis

Sturdy steel sheet chassis, rubber-mounted engine

6.2 Engine

Engine	Models 75Z3/8003
	Tier III-A
Product	Yanmar diesel engine
Model (75Z3/8003 up to serial no. AD07209/AD07187)	4TNV98-VNS (Tier II)
Model (75Z3/8003 from serial no. AH00646/AH00611)	4TNV98-ZVNS
Design	Water-cooled 4 stroke diesel engine
No. of cylinders	4
Displacement	3319 cm³ (202.5 cu. in.)
Nominal bore and stroke	98 x 110 mm (3.85 x 4.3 in)
Output	43.4 kW at 2100 rpm (58.2 hp at 2100 rpm)
Max. torque	238.3 Nm at 1350 rpm (175.8 lbf ft at 1350 rpm)
Max. engine speed without load	2130 +/- 50 rpm (2130 +/- 50 rpm)
Idling speed	1100 +/− 50 rpm (1100 +/− 50 rpm)
Fuel injection system	Direct injection
Starting aid	Intake manifold preheating (preheating time 10 – 15 sec)
Max. inclined position (engine no longer supplied with oil):	30° – permanently in all directions 35° – no longer than 3 minutes Observe the machine's climbing ability (15°)
Fuel tank	93 l (24.6 gal)
Exhaust values according to	EPA Tier III-A, 97/68/EC

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.3 Hydraulic system

Hydraulics	Model 75Z3	Model 8003
Pump	Double variable displacement + twin gear pump 2 x 32 + 27.4 cm³ (2 x 1.95 + 1.67 cu. in.)	Double variable displacement + twin gear pump 2 x 36 + 2 x 16.2 cm³ (2 x 2.2 + 2 x 0.99 cu. in.)
Flow rate	2 x 68.2 + 58.4 l/min at 2130 rpm +/- 25 rpm (2 x 18 + 15.4 gal/min at 2130 rpm +/- 25 rpm)	2 x 76.7 + 2 x 34.5 l/min at 2130 rpm +/- 25 rpm (2 x 20.26 + 2 x 9.11 gal/min at 2130 rpm +/- 25 rpm)
Operating pressure for work and drive hydraulics	260 bar (3771 psi)	300 bar (4351 psi)
Swivel unit operating pressure	215 bar (3118 psi)	212 bar (3075 psi)
Hydraulic oil radiator	Standard	
Hydraulic oil tank capacity	99 l (26.2 gal)	
Hydraulic oil quantity (system fill)	155 l (40.94 gal)	161 l (42.5 gal)

6.4 Work hydraulics

Work hydraulics	Model 75Z3	Model 8003
Control valve	12 sections/ 13 sections (3rd control circuit)	
Max. operating pressure	$260^{\pm 3}$ bar ($3771^{+43/-43}$ psi)	$300^{\pm 3}$ bar ($4351^{+43/-43}$ psi)
Main pressure restriction for boom/bucket/stick	$260^{\pm 3}$ bar ($3771^{+43/-43}$ psi)	$300^{\pm 3}$ bar ($4351^{+43/-43}$ psi)
Main pressure restriction for stabiliser blade	$250^{\pm 3}$ bar ($3626^{+43/-43}$ psi)	$245^{\pm 3}$ bar ($3553^{+43/-43}$ psi)
Main pressure restriction for pilot control pressure	$32.5^{-0/+4}$ bar ($471^{+58/-0}$ psi)	
Main pressure restriction for swivel drive (hydraulic motor pressure restriction)	$215^{\pm 3}$ bar ($3118^{+43/-43}$ psi)	$215^{\pm 3}$ bar ($3118^{+43/-43}$ psi)
Filter	Return filter	

6.5 Undercarriage and swivel unit

Undercarriage/swivel unit	Model 75Z3	Model 8003
2 drive speeds	2.87/4.45 kph (1.78/2.76 mph)	3.2/4.97 kph (1.99/3.08 mph)
Theoretical hill climbing ability (hydraulic system)	30°/58 %	
Track width (rubber track, hybrid track)	450 mm (17.7 in)	
Track width (steel track)	450 mm (17.7 in), 600 mm (23.62 in)	
No. of track rollers on either side	5 pieces	
Ground clearance	375 mm (14.76 in)	380 mm (15 in)
Ground pressure	0.35 kg/cm² (4.98 psi)	0.36 kg/cm² (5.12 psi)
Upper carriage swivel speed	8.7 rpm	9.2 rpm

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.6 Stabiliser blade

Stabiliser blade	Model 75Z3	Model 8003
Width/height	2300/500 mm (90.5 in/19.68 in)	
Max. lift over/under subgrade	485/480 mm (19 in/18.9 in)	450/520 mm (17.7 in/20.5 in)

6.7 Electrical system

Electrical system	
Alternator	12 V 55 A
Starter	12 V 3.0 kW (4.0 hp)
Battery	12 V 88 Ah
Socket	E.g. for cigarette lighter; 15 A max.

Fuse box on instrument panel (75Z3/8003 up to serial no. AD07209/AD07187)

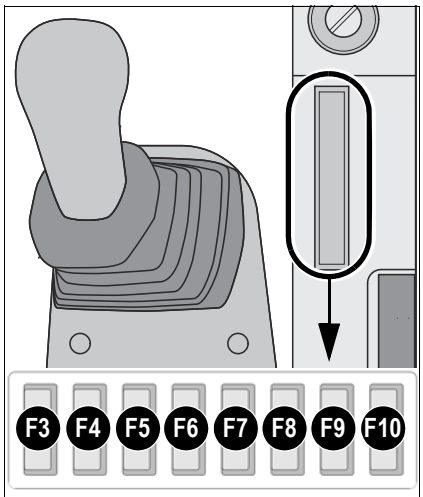


Fig. 317: Fuse box

Fuse no.	Rated current (A)	Protected circuit
F3	10 A	Indicators, cutoff solenoid, relays
F4	10 A	Boom light
F5	15 A	Roof lights
F6	10 A	Valves, horn
F7	15 A	Heating, air conditioning
F8	10 A	Wiper, interior light
F9	10 A	Rotating beacon, radio
F10	15 A	Socket, cigarette lighter

Main fuse box with relays (75Z3/8003 up to serial no. AD07209/AD07187)

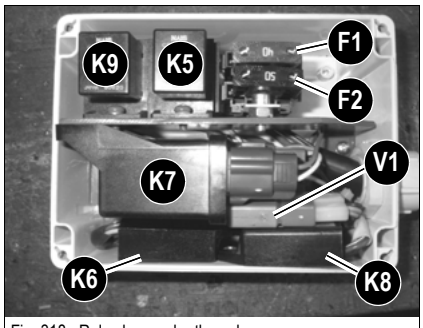


Fig. 318: Relay box under the cab

Fuse no.	Rated current (A)	Protected circuit
F1	40 A	Start, preheat, cutoff solenoid
F2	50 A	Fuel-filling pump, main fuse, ignition lock

Relay no.	Protected circuit
K 5	Preheating
K 6	Preheating timer
K 7	Starting relay
K 8	Cutoff solenoid timer
K 9	Cutoff solenoid
V 1	Diode

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Fuse box on instrument panel (75Z3/8003 serial nos. AH00646/AH00611 to AH02749/AH02747)

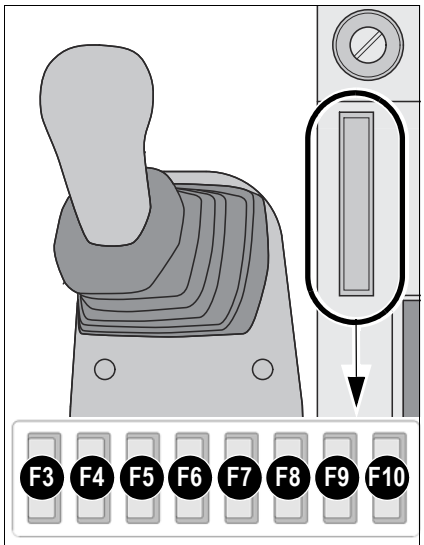


Fig. 319: Fuse box

Fuse no.	Rated current (A)	Protected circuit
F3	10 A	Displays, E-ECU
F4	10 A	Boom working light
F5	15 A	Cab working light
F6	10 A	Valves, horn
F7	15 A	Heating, air conditioning
F8	10 A	Wiper, interior light
F9	10 A	Rotating beacon, radio
F10	15 A	Socket, cigarette lighter

Main fuse box with relays (75Z3/8003 from serial no. AH00646/AH00611)

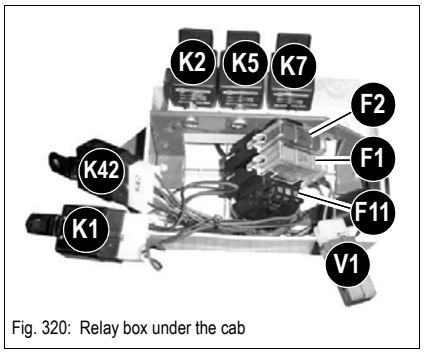


Fig. 320: Relay box under the cab

The main fuse box is located under the cab at the front right.

Fuse no.	Rated current (A)	Protected circuit
F1	40 A	Start, preheat
F2	50 A	Fuel-filling pump, main fuse, ignition lock
F11	10 A	E-ECU, engine relays

Relay no.	
K1	Engine electronics main relay
K2	Fuel-filling pump relay
K5	Preheating high-current relay
K7	Start high-current relay
K42	Fuel injection pump relay
V1	Blocking diode

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Fuse box on instrument panel (75Z3/8003 from serial no. AJ02793 /AH02798)

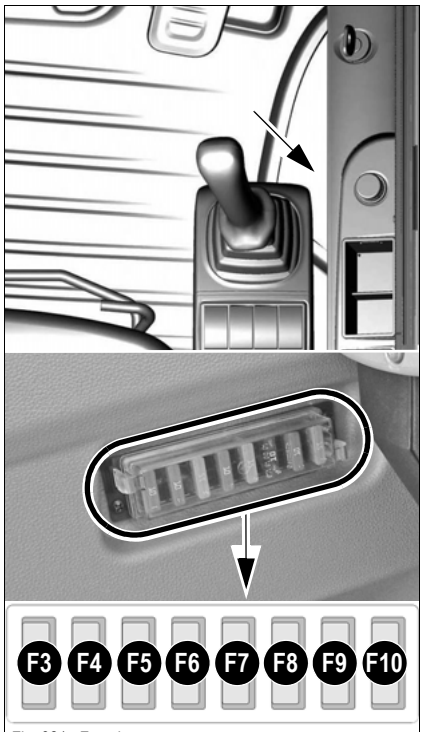


Fig. 321: Fuse box

Fuse no.	Rated current (A)	Protected circuit
F3	10 A	Displays, E-ECU
F4	10 A	Boom working light
F5	15 A	Cab working light
F6	10 A	Valves, horn
F7	15 A	Heating, air conditioning
F8	10 A	Wiper, interior light
F9	10 A	Rotating beacon, radio
F10	15 A	Socket, cigarette lighter

6.8 ECU control unit (75Z3/8003 from serial no. AH00646/AH00611)

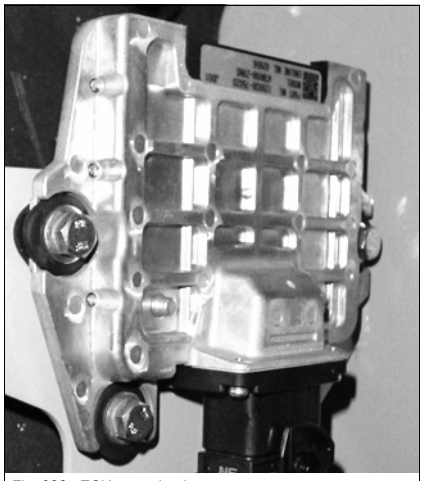


Fig. 322: ECU control unit

The ECU control unit is located above the main fuse box, under the cab.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.9 Noise levels

Sound power level	
Sound power level (L_{WA})[1]	98 dB (A)
Driver-perceived sound pressure level (L_{PA})[2]	79 dB (A)
Uncertainty (K_{PA}) [3]	1.4 (A)

1. According to ISO 6395
2. According to ISO 6396
3. According to EN ISO 4871

Notice!

Measurement of sound power level according to EC Directive 2000/14 EC. Driver-perceived noise level measured according to EC Directives 84/532/EEC, 89/514/EEC and 95/27/EEC.
Measurements carried out on asphalted surface.

6.10 Vibration

Vibration	
Effective acceleration value for the upper extremities of the body [1]	< Trigger value $< 2.5 \frac{m}{s^2}$
Effective acceleration value for the body[1]	$< 0.5 \frac{m}{s^2}$

1. Measurements as per 2002/44/EC, ISO EN 20643 and ISO/TR 25398 (excavating, driving and hammering with a Wacker Neuson hammer). Machine and attachment operation and maintenance as per Operator's Manual.
Uncertainty of measurement: measurements as per EN 12096:1997

6.11 Coolant compound table

Outside temperature	Coolant			
	Water	Anticorrosion agent		Antifreeze
Up to °C (°F)	% by volume	cm³/l / (cu. in./gal)	% by volume	% by volume
−37 (−34.6)	50	10 (2.6)	1	50

Use the 1:1 concentration for warm outside temperatures, too:

- Protection against corrosion, cavitation and deposits

Do not mix the coolant with other coolants.
Machine filled at the factory with Eurolub SF D12 coolant (ethylene glycol basis).

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.12 Powertilt

Powertilt	
Model size	8
Piston stroke	1460 cm³ (89.1 cu. in.)
Required oil flow	12 – 20 l/min (3.2 – 5.3 gal/min)
Ports	1/4"
Slewing range	180°[1]
Weight	150 kg (331 lbs.)
Drive torque – at 210 bar (3045 psi)	7350 Nm (5421 lbf ft)
Holding torque – at 225 bar (3263 psi)	17250 Nm (12723 lbf ft)
Minimum hose/pipe size Connecting hose size	10 mm (0.4") 6 mm (0.23")

1. The actual angle can vary slightly from the indication made here.

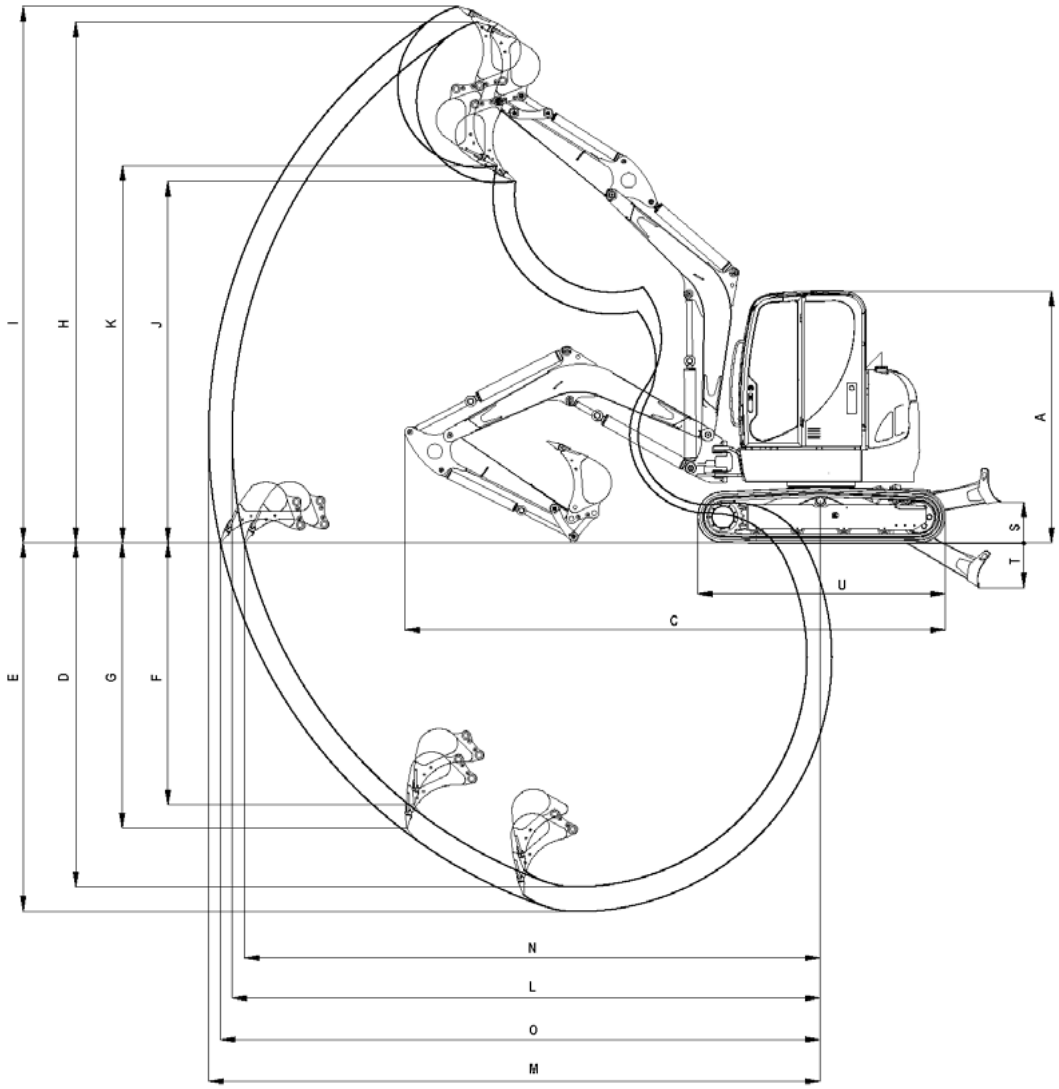
6.13 Weight indications

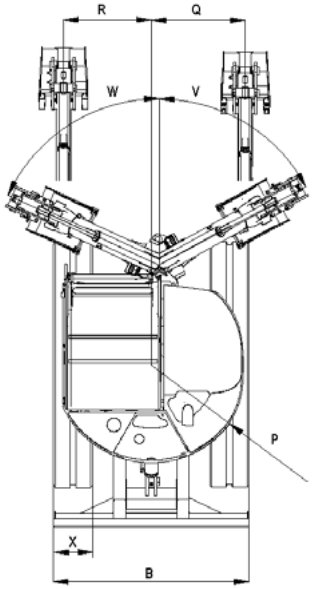
Weight		75Z3	8003
Transport weight [1]	With standard boom	7448 kg (16420 lbs.)	7758 kg (17103 lbs.)
	With triple articulation boom	Not available	8041 kg (17727 lbs.)
Service weight [2]	With standard boom	7820 kg (17240 lbs.)	8130 kg (17924 lbs.)
	With triple articulation boom	Not available	8414 kg (18550 lbs.)
Option [3]	Counterweight	+ 400 kg (882 lbs.)	+ 400 kg (882 lbs.)
	Steel track (450 mm/17.7 in)	+ 264 kg (582 lbs.)	+ 228 kg (503 lbs.)
	Steel track (600 mm/23.62 in)	+ 476 kg (1049 lbs.)	+ 440 kg (970 lbs.)
	Hybrid track	+ 164 kg (362 lbs.)	+ 128 kg (282 lbs.)
	Long stick[4]	+ 36 kg (79.4 lbs.)	+ 34 kg (75 lbs.)
	FOPS/TOPS II protective screen	+ 54 kg (119 lbs.)	+ 54 kg (119 lbs.)
	Front protective screen	+ 52 kg (115 lbs.)	+ 52 kg (115 lbs.)
	8003 Vario (option)	Not available	+ 640 kg (1411 lbs.)

1. Transport weight: basic machine + 10 % fuel capacity.
2. Opeating weight: basic machine + full fuel tank + attachment + user (75 kg according to standard).
3. If the machine is equipped with an option, the weight of the option must be added to the transport or operating weight of the machine to obtain the actual machine weight. All indications on options are calculated differential values and are not the actual weight indications of the options.
4. Not available with triple articulation boom.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.14 Dimensions model 75Z3



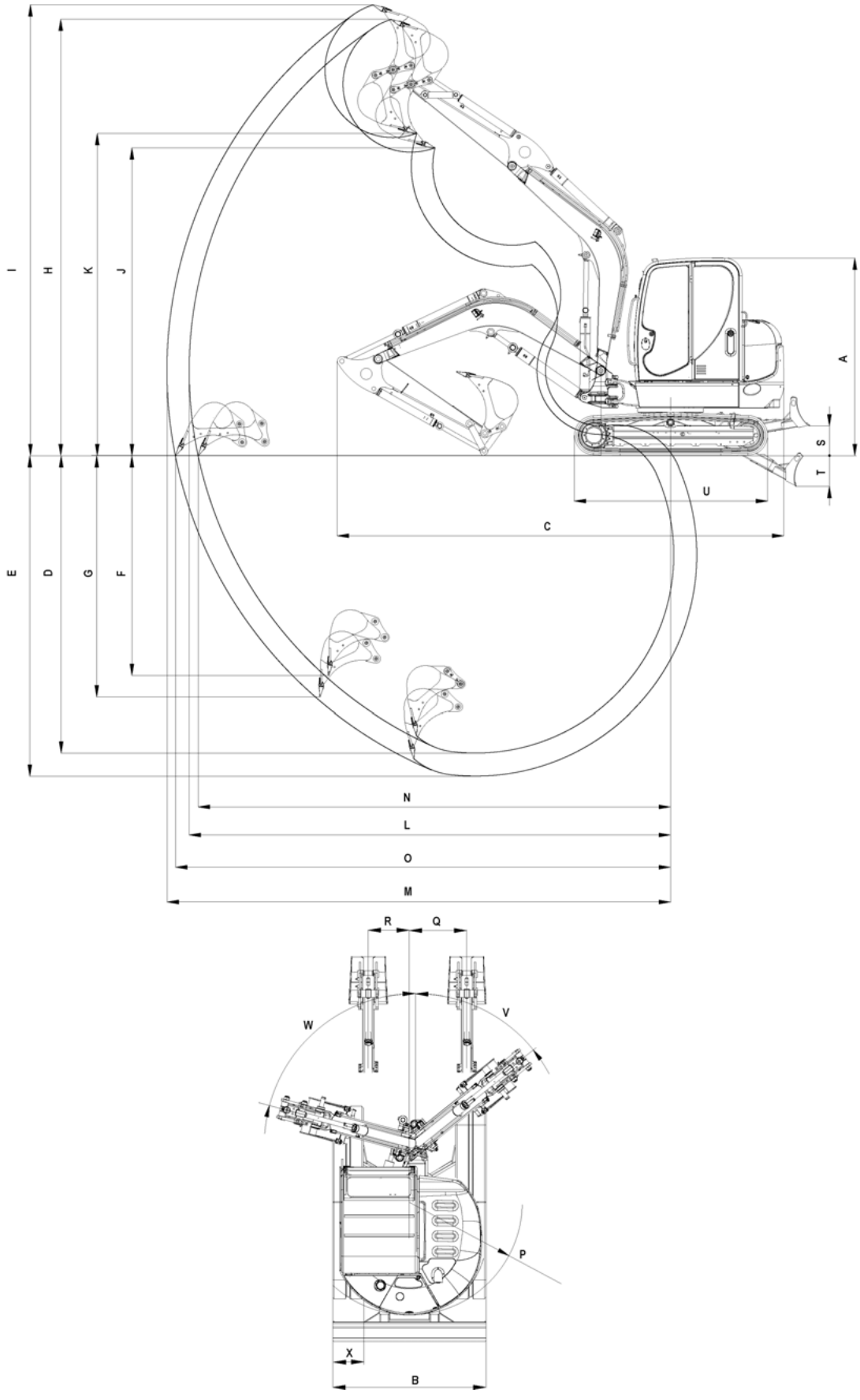


https://truckmanualshub.com/

	Main data	Model 75Z3
A	Height	2679 mm (105.4 in)
B	Width	2300 mm (90.5 in)
C	Transport length	6480 mm (255 in)
D	Max. digging depth (short stick)	4039 mm (159 in)
E	Max. digging depth (long stick)	4339 mm (170.8 in)
F	Max. vertical digging depth (short stick)	3390 mm (133.4 in)
G	Max. vertical digging depth (long stick)	3681 mm (145 in)
H	Max. digging height (short stick)	6648 mm (261.7 in)
I	Max. digging height (long stick)	6814 mm (268.3 in)
J	Max. dump height (short stick)	4511 mm (177.6 in)
K	Max. dump height (long stick)	4677 mm (184 in)
L	Max. digging radius (short stick)	7144 mm (281.3 in)
M	Max. digging radius (long stick)	7384 mm (290.7 in)
N	Max. reach at ground level (short stick)	6970 mm (274.4 in)
O	Max. reach at ground level (long stick)	7246 mm (285.3 in)
P	Min. tail end slewing radius	1150 mm (45.3 in)
Q	Max. boom displacement to bucket centre (right-hand side)	950 mm (37.4 in)
R	Max. boom displacement to bucket centre (left-hand side)	770 mm (30.3 in)
S	Max. lift height of stabiliser blade over ground	485 mm (19 in)
T	Max. scraping depth of stabiliser blade below ground surface	480 mm (18.9 in)
U	Running gear length	2845 mm (112 in)
V	Max. tilting angle of boom to the right	63°
W	Max. tilting angle of boom to the left	67°
X	Track width	450 mm (17.7 in)
	Short stick	1700 mm (67 in)
	Long stick	2000 mm (78.7 in)
	Max. breakout force at bucket tooth	45.30 kN (10184 lbf)
	Max. tearout force (short stick)	35.30 kN (7936 lbf)
	Max. tearout force (long stick)	31.90 kN (7171 lbf)
	Max. tail end lateral projection over tracks	0 mm (0 in)

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.15 Dimensions model 8003 Vario (option)



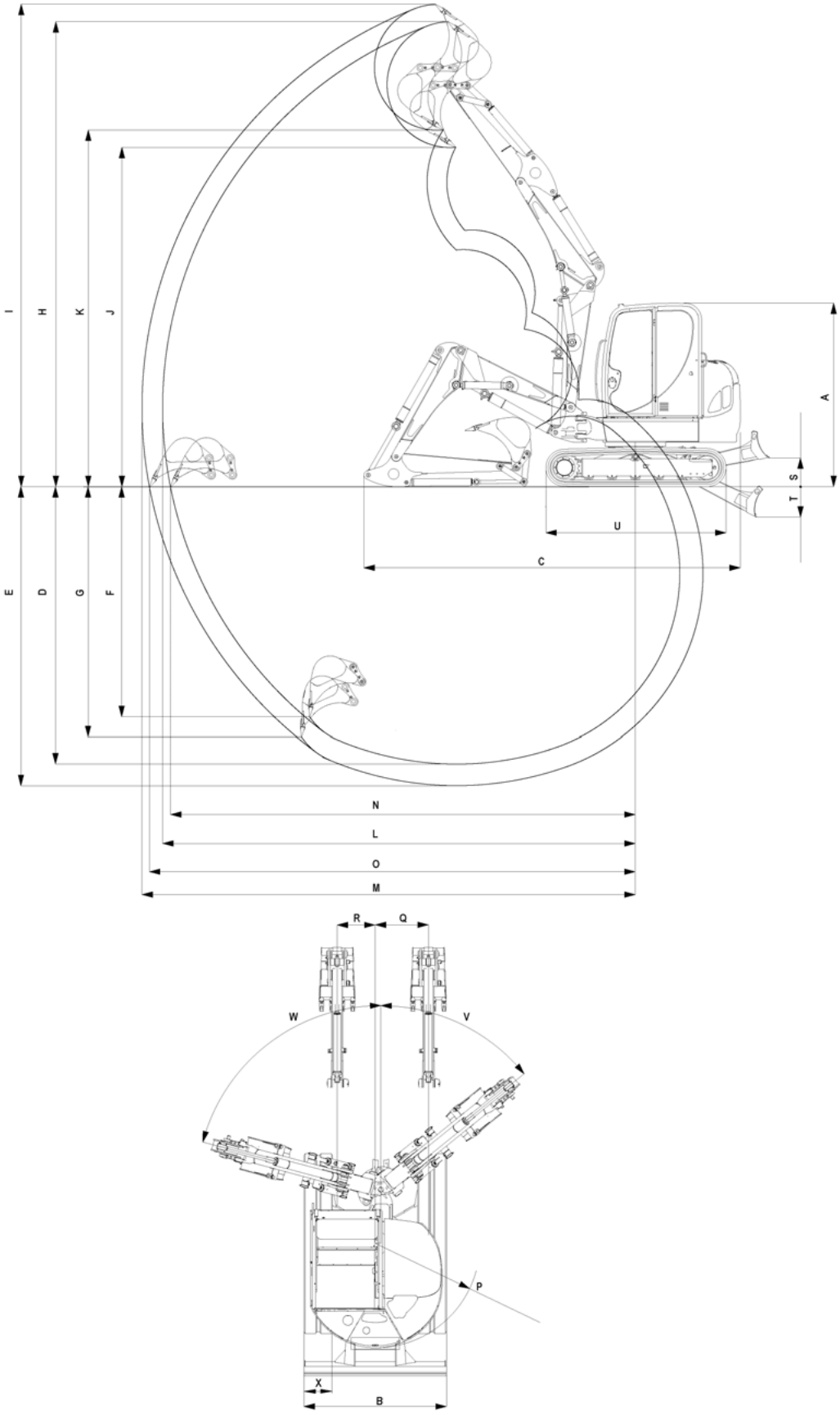
https://truckmanualshub.com/

	Main data	Model 8003	Vario (option)
A	Height	2712 mm (106.7 in)	2864 mm (112.6 in)
B	Width	2300 mm (90.5 in)	2300 mm (90.5 in)
C	Transport length	6573 mm (258.8 in)	6573 mm (258.8 in)
D	Max. digging depth (short stick)	4311 mm (169.7 in)	4162 mm (163.9 in)
E	Max. digging depth (long stick)	4611 mm (181.5 in)	4462 mm (175.7 in)
F	Max. vertical digging depth (short stick)	3664 mm (144.3 in)	3516 mm (138.4 in)
G	Max. vertical digging depth (long stick)	3963 mm (156 in)	3814 mm (150.2 in)
H	Max. digging height (short stick)	6979 mm (274.8 in)	7128 mm (280.6 in)
I	Max. digging height (long stick)	7168 mm (282.2 in)	7317 mm (288 in)
J	Max. dump height (short stick)	4850 mm (191 in)	4999 mm (196.8 in)
K	Max. dump height (long stick)	5039 mm (198.4 in)	5188 mm (204.3 in)
L	Max. digging radius (short stick)	7190 mm (283 in)	7211[1]/7711[2] mm (284/303.6 in)
M	Max. digging radius (long stick)	7471 mm (294.1 in)	7491[1]/7992[2] mm (294.9/314.6 in)
N	Max. reach at ground level (short stick)	7046 mm (277.4 in)	7032[1]/7532[2] mm (276.8/296.5 in)
O	Max. reach at ground level (long stick)	7334 mm (288.7 in)	7322[1]/7822[2] mm (288.3/308 in)
P	Min. tail end slewing radius	1150 mm (45.3 in)	1150 mm (45.3 in)
Q	Max. boom displacement to bucket centre (right-hand side)	719 mm (28.3 in)	719 mm (28.3 in)
R	Max. boom displacement to bucket centre (left-hand side)	546 mm (21.5 in)	546 mm (21.5 in)
S	Max. lift height of stabiliser blade over ground	528 mm (20.8 in)	528 mm (20.8 in)
T	Max. scraping depth of stabiliser blade below ground surface	450 mm (17.7 in)	450 mm (17.7 in)
U	Running gear length	2808 mm (111 in)	2808 mm (111 in)
V	Max. tilting angle of boom to the right	63°	63°
W	Max. tilting angle of boom to the left	67°	67°
X	Track width	450 mm (17.7 in)	450 mm (17.7 in)
	Max. breakout force at bucket tooth	52.3 kN (11758 lbf)	52.3 kN (11758 lbf)
	Max. tearout force (short stick)	38.7 kN (8700 lbf)	38.7 kN (8700 lbf)
	Max. tearout force (long stick)	35.1 kN (7891 lbf)	35.1 kN (7891 lbf)
	Max. tail end lateral projection over tracks	400 mm (15.7 in)	400 mm (15.7 in)

1. Vario to the rear
2. Vario to the front

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.16 Dimensions model 8003 triple articulation boom (option)



https://truckmanualshub.com/

	Main data	Model 8003 triple articulation boom (option)
A	Height	2712 mm (106.7 in)
B	Width	2300 mm (90.5 in)
C	Transport length	5585 mm (220 in)
D	Max. digging depth (short stick)	4260 mm (167.7 in)
E	Max. digging depth (long stick)	4560 mm (179.5 in)
F	Max. vertical digging depth (short stick)	3266 mm (128.6 in)
G	Max. vertical digging depth (long stick)	3558 mm (140 in)
H	Max. digging height (short stick)	7768 mm (306 in)
I	Max. digging height (long stick)	8036 mm (316.4 in)
J	Max. dump height (short stick)	5614 mm (221 in)
K	Max. dump height (long stick)	5882 mm (231.6 in)
L	Max. digging radius (short stick)	7482 mm (294.6 in)
M	Max. digging radius (long stick)	7778 mm (306.2 in)
N	Max. reach at ground level (short stick)	7345 mm (289.2 in)
O	Max. reach at ground level (long stick)	7646 mm (301 in)
P	Min. tail end slewing radius	1150 mm (45.3 in)
Q	Max. boom displacement to bucket centre (right-hand side)	719 mm (28.3 in)
R	Max. boom displacement to bucket centre (left-hand side)	546 mm (21.5 in)
S	Max. lift height of stabiliser blade over ground	511 mm (20.1 in)
T	Max. scraping depth of stabiliser blade below ground surface	429 mm (16.9 in)
U	Running gear length	2808 mm (111 in)
V	Max. tilting angle of boom to the right	63°
W	Max. tilting angle of boom to the left	67°
X	Track width	450 mm (17.7 in)
	Max. breakout force at bucket tooth	52.3 kN (11758 lbf)
	Max. tearout force (short stick)	38.7 kN (8700 lbf)
	Max. tearout force (long stick)	35.1 kN (7891 lbf)
	Max. tail end lateral projection over tracks	400 mm (15.7 in)

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.17 Lift capacity table 75Z3

A / B	max		5.0 m (196.8 in)		4.0 m (157.5 in)		3.0 m (118.1 in)		2.0 (78.7 in)	
	Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade	
4.0 m (157.5 in)	1795* (3957*)	920 (2028)	1785* (3935)	1005 (2216)	1865* (4112*)	1505 (3318)				
3.0 m (118.1 in)	1760* (3880*)	765 (1687)	1855* (4090*)	985 (2172)	2130* (4696*)	1425 (3142)				
2.0 m (78.7 in)	1760* (3880*)	690 (1521)	2020* (4453*)	925 (2039)	2535* (5589*)	1290 (2844)				
1.0 m (39.4 in)	1775* (3913*)	665 (1466)	2175* (4795*)	870 (1918)	2885* (6360*)	1170 (2579)				
0.0 m (0 in)	1795* (3957*)	675 (1488)	2230* (4916)	830 (1830)	2995* (6603*)	1105 (2436)	4415* (9733*)	1630 (3594)		
−1.0 m (−39.4 in)	1800* (3968)	745 (1642)	2100* (4630)	820 (1808)	2840* (6261)	1090 (2403)	3990* (8796)	1650 (3638)	5680* (12522)	3485 (7683)
−2.0 m (−78.7 in)	1740* (3836)	915 (2017)			2345* (5170)	1125 (2480)	3215* (7088)	1715 (3781)	4560* (10053)	3585 (7904)

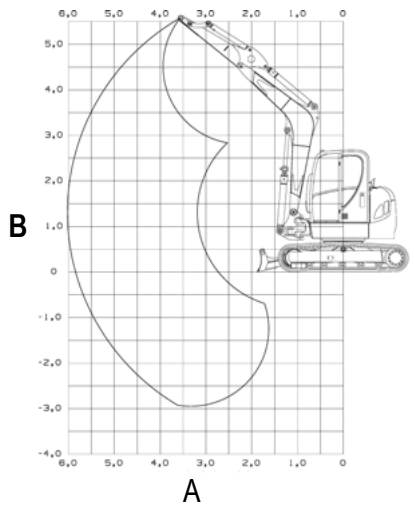


Fig. 323: Lift capacity table (model 75Z3)

max	Admissible load on extended stick
A	Reach from live ring centre
B	Load hook height
*	Lift capacity limited by hydraulic system

All table indications in kg (lbs.) and horizontal position on firm ground without bucket.

	With the stabiliser blade in driving direction
	Without the stabiliser blade, 90° to driving direction

If equipped with a bucket or other attachments, lift capacity or tilt load is reduced by bucket or attachment dead weight.

Calculation basis: according to ISO 10567

The machine's lift capacity is restricted by the settings of the overpressures and the hydraulic system's stabilising features.

Neither 75 % of the static tilt load nor 87 % of the hydraulic lift capacity is exceeded.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.18 Lift capacity table 75Z3 counterweight (option)

	max		5.0 m (196.8 in)		4.0 m (157.5 in)		3.0 m (118.1 in)		2.0 (78.7 in)	
A / B	Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade	
4.0 m (157.5 in)	1795* (3957*)	1065 (2348)	1785* (3935)	1160 (2557)	1865* (4112*)	1710 (3770)				
3.0 m (118.1 in)	1760* (3880*)	895 (1973)	1855* (4090*)	1140 (2513)	2130* (4696*)	1630 (3594)				
2.0 m (78.7 in)	1760* (3880*)	815 (1797)	2020* (4453*)	1085 (2392)	2535* (5589*)	1500 (3307)				
1.0 m (39.4 in)	1775* (3913*)	785 (1731)	2175* (4795*)	1025 (2260)	2885* (6360*)	1375 (3031)				
0.0 m (0 in)	1795* (3957*)	805 (1775)	2230* (4916*)	985 (2172)	2995* (6603*)	1310 (2888)	4415* (9733*)	1935 (4266)		
−1.0 m (−39.4 in)	1800* (3968*)	880 (1940)	2100* (4630*)	975 (2150)	2840* (6261*)	1295 (2855)	3990* (8796*)	1960 (4321)	5680* (12522*)	4100 (9039)
−2.0 m (−78.7 in)	1740* (3836*)	1080 (2381)			2345* (5170*)	1335 (2943)	3215* (7088*)	2025 (4464)	4560* (10053*)	4200 (9259)

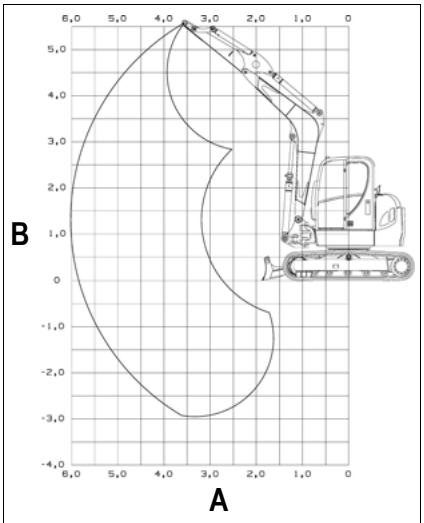
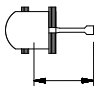


Fig. 324: Lift capacity table (model 75Z3)

max	Admissible load on extended stick
A	Reach from live ring centre
B	Load hook height
*	Lift capacity limited by hydraulic system

All table indications in kg (lbs.) and horizontal position on firm ground without bucket.

	With the stabiliser blade in driving direction
	Without the stabiliser blade, 90° to driving direction

If equipped with a bucket or other attachments, lift capacity or tilt load is reduced by bucket or attachment dead weight.

Calculation basis: according to ISO 10567

The machine's lift capacity is restricted by the settings of the overpressures and the hydraulic system's stabilising features.

Neither 75 % of the static tilt load nor 87 % of the hydraulic lift capacity is exceeded.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.19 Lift capacity table 75Z3 long stick (option)

A / B	max		5.0 m (196.8 in)		4.0 m (157.5 in)		3.0 m (118.1 in)		2.0 (78.7 in)	
	Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade	
4.0 m (157.5 in)	1640* (3616*)	825 (1819)	1615* (3560)	1015 (2238)						
3.0 m (118.1 in)	1620* (3571*)	700 (1543)	1715* (3781*)	985 (2172)	1920* (4233*)	1435 (3164)				
2.0 m (78.7 in)	1625* (3583*)	635 (1400)	1910* (4211*)	930 (2050)	2375* (5236*)	1320 (2910)				
1.0 m (39.4 in)	1650* (3638*)	605 (1334)	2105* (4641*)	870 (1918)	2805* (6184*)	1205 (2657)				
0.0 m (0 in)	1675* (3693*)	615 (1356)	2215* (4883*)	825 (1819)	3010* (6636*)	1130 (2491)	4635* (10218*)	1710 (3770)		
−1.0 m (−39.4 in)	1695* (3737*)	665 (1466)	2155* (4751*)	805 (1775)	2935* (6471*)	1100 (2425)	4300* (9480*)	1695 (3737)	7100* (15653*)	3565 (7859)
−2.0 m (−78.7 in)	1675* (3693*)	795 (1753)			2545* (5611*)	1110 (2447)	3610* (7959*)	1725 (3803)	5755* (12688*)	3630 (8003)

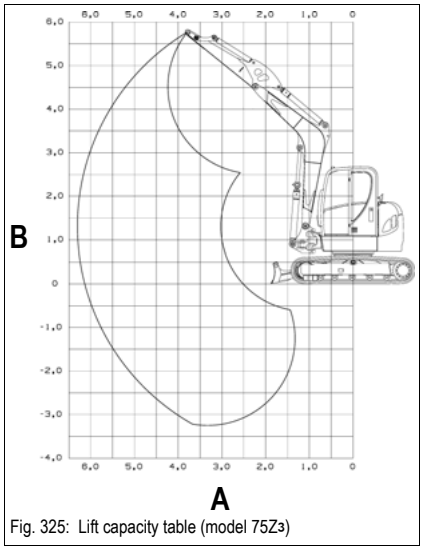
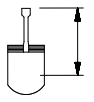


Fig. 325: Lift capacity table (model 75Z3)

max	Admissible load on extended stick
A	Reach from live ring centre
B	Load hook height
*	Lift capacity limited by hydraulic system

All table indications in kg (lbs.) and horizontal position on firm ground without bucket.

	With the stabiliser blade in driving direction
	Without the stabiliser blade, 90° to driving direction

If equipped with a bucket or other attachments, lift capacity or tilt load is reduced by bucket or attachment dead weight.

Calculation basis: according to ISO 10567

The machine's lift capacity is restricted by the settings of the overpressures and the hydraulic system's stabilising features.

Neither 75 % of the static tilt load nor 87 % of the hydraulic lift capacity is exceeded.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.20 Lift capacity table 75Z3 long stick, counterweight (option)

	max		5.0 m (196.8 in)		4.0 m (157.5 in)		3.0 m (118.1 in)		2.0 (78.7 in)	
A / B	Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade	
4.0 m (157.5 in)	1640* (3616*)	965 (2127)	1615* (3560)	1170 (2579)						
3.0 m (118.1 in)	1620* (3571*)	825 (1819)	1715* (3781*)	1140 (2513)	1920* (4233*)	1640 (3616)				
2.0 m (78.7 in)	1625* (3583*)	750 (1653)	1910* (4211*)	1085 (2392)	2375* (5236*)	1525 (3362)				
1.0 m (39.4 in)	1650* (3638*)	725 (1598)	2105* (4641*)	1025 (2260)	2805* (6184*)	1410 (3108)				
0.0 m (0 in)	1675* (3693*)	735 (1620)	2215* (4883*)	980 (2161)	3010* (6636*)	1335 (2943)	4635* (10218*)	2015 (4442)		
−1.0 m (−39.4 in)	1695* (3737*)	795 (1753)	2155* (4751*)	960 (2116)	2935* (6471*)	1310 (2888)	4300* (9480*)	2005 (4420)	7100* (15653*)	4175 (9204)
−2.0 m (−78.7 in)	1675* (3693*)	950 (2094)			2545* (5611*)	1315 (2899)	3610* (7959*)	2035 (4486)	5755* (12688*)	4240 (9347)

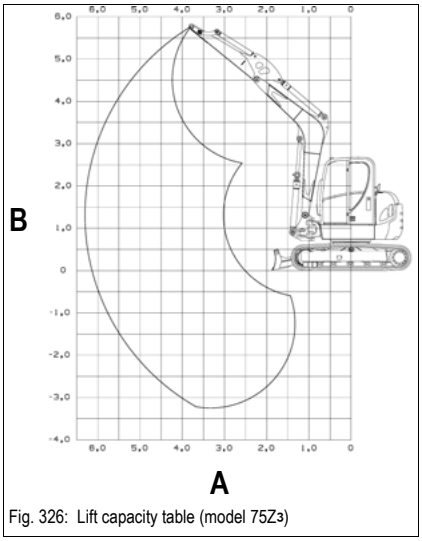
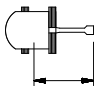


Fig. 326: Lift capacity table (model 75Z3)

max	Admissible load on extended stick
A	Reach from live ring centre
B	Load hook height
*	Lift capacity limited by hydraulic system

All table indications in kg (lbs.) and horizontal position on firm ground without bucket.

	With the stabiliser blade in driving direction
	Without the stabiliser blade, 90° to driving direction

If equipped with a bucket or other attachments, lift capacity or tilt load is reduced by bucket or attachment dead weight.

Calculation basis: according to ISO 10567

The machine's lift capacity is restricted by the settings of the overpressures and the hydraulic system's stabilising features.

Neither 75 % of the static tilt load nor 87 % of the hydraulic lift capacity is exceeded.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.21 Lift capacity table 8003

A / B	max		5.0 m (196.8 in)		4.0 m (157.5 in)		3.0 m (118.1 in)		2.0 (78.7 in)	
	Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade	
5.0 m (196.8 in)	2000* (4409*)	1510 (3329)			1955* (4310*)	1950 (4299)				
4.0 m (157.5 in)	1920* (4233*)	1165 (2568)	1915* (4222)	1330 (2932)	2010* (4431*)	1930 (4255)				
3.0 m (118.1 in)	1895* (4178*)	985 (2172)	2020* (4453*)	1300 (2866)	2315* (5104*)	1845 (4068)	2925* (6449*)	2920 (6437)		
2.0 m (78.7 in)	1905* (4200*)	920 (2028)	2205* (4861*)	1245 (2745)	2750* (6063*)	1730 (3814)	4070* (8973*)	2620 (5776)		
1.0 m (39.4 in)	1930* (4255*)	890 (1962)	2380* (5247*)	1185 (2612)	3120* (6878*)	1620 (3571)	4770* (10516*)	2400 (5291)		
0.0 m (0 in)	1960* (4321*)	910 (2006)	2455* (5412*)	1145 (2524)	3260* (7187*)	1550 (3417)	4750* (10472*)	2335 (5148)		
−1.0 m (−39.4 in)	1975* (4354*)	990 (2183)	2345* (5170*)	1130 (2491)	3135* (6911*)	1530 (3373)	4375* (9645*)	2330 (5137)	6305* (13900*)	4830 (10648)
−2.0 m (−78.7 in)	1940* (4277*)	1180 (2601)			2690* (5930*)	1545 (3406)	3675* (8102*)	2365 (5214)	5230* (11530*)	4900 (10803)
−3.0 m (−118.1 in)	1700* (3748*)	1700 (3748)					2385* (5258*)	2385 (5258)		

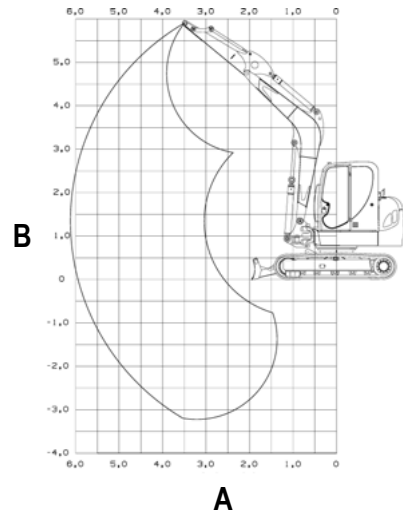
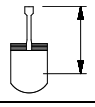


Fig. 327: Lift capacity table (model 8003)

max	Admissible load on extended stick
A	Reach from live ring centre
B	Load hook height
*	Lift capacity limited by hydraulic system

All table indications in kg (lbs.) and horizontal position on firm ground without bucket.

	With the stabiliser blade in driving direction
	Without the stabiliser blade, 90° to driving direction

If equipped with a bucket or other attachments, lift capacity or tilt load is reduced by bucket or attachment dead weight.

Calculation basis: according to ISO 10567

The machine's lift capacity is restricted by the settings of the overpressures and the hydraulic system's stabilising features.

Neither 75 % of the static tilt load nor 87 % of the hydraulic lift capacity is exceeded.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.22 Lift capacity table 8003 counterweight (option)

A / B	max		5.0 m (196.8 in)		4.0 m (157.5 in)		3.0 m (118.1 in)		2.0 (78.7 in)	
	Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade	
5.0 m (196.8 in)	2000* (4409*)	1715 (3781)			1955* (4310*)	1955 (4310)				
4.0 m (157.5 in)	1920* (4233*)	1335 (2943)	1915* (4222)	1515 (3340)	2010* (4431*)	2010 (4431)				
3.0 m (118.1 in)	1895* (4178*)	1140 (2513)	2020* (4453*)	1485 (3274)	2315* (5104*)	2095 (4619)	2925* (6449*)	2925 (6449)		
2.0 m (78.7 in)	1905* (4200*)	1070 (2359)	2205* (4861*)	1430 (3153)	2750* (6063*)	1975 (4354)	4070* (8973*)	2985 (6581)		
1.0 m (39.4 in)	1930* (4255*)	1035 (2282)	2380* (5247*)	1370 (3020)	3120* (6878*)	1865 (4112)	4770* (10516*)	2765 (6096)		
0.0 m (0 in)	1960* (4321*)	1060 (2337)	2455* (5412*)	1330 (2932)	3260* (7187*)	1800 (3968)	4750* (10472*)	2700 (5952)		
−1.0 m (−39.4 in)	1975* (4354*)	1150 (2835)	2345* (5170*)	1315 (2899)	3135* (6911*)	1775 (3913)	4375* (9645*)	2700 (5952)	6305* (13900*)	5560 (12258)
−2.0 m (−78.7 in)	1940* (4277*)	1370 (3020)			2690* (5930*)	1750 (3858)	3675* (8102*)	2735 (6030)	5230* (11530*)	5230 (11530)
−3.0 m (−118.1 in)	1700* (3748*)	1700 (3748)					2385* (5258*)	2385 (5258)		

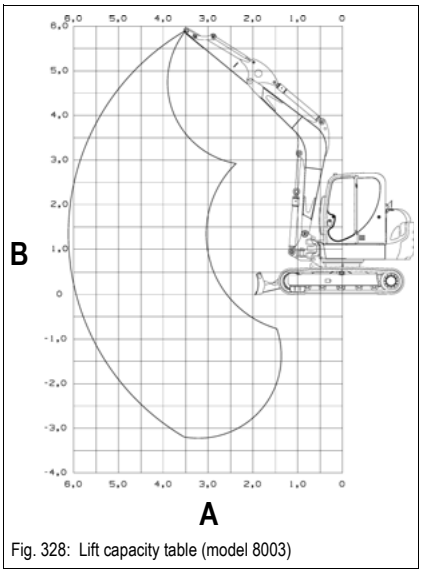
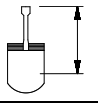


Fig. 328: Lift capacity table (model 8003)

max	Admissible load on extended stick
A	Reach from live ring centre
B	Load hook height
*	Lift capacity limited by hydraulic system

All table indications in kg (lbs.) and horizontal position on firm ground without bucket.

	With the stabiliser blade in driving direction
	Without the stabiliser blade, 90° to driving direction

If equipped with a bucket or other attachments, lift capacity or tilt load is reduced by bucket or attachment dead weight.

Calculation basis: according to ISO 10567

The machine's lift capacity is restricted by the settings of the overpressures and the hydraulic system's stabilising features.

Neither 75 % of the static tilt load nor 87 % of the hydraulic lift capacity is exceeded.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.23 Lift capacity table 8003 long stick (option)

	max		5.0 m (196.8 in)		4.0 m (157.5 in)		3.0 m (118.1 in)		2.0 (78.7 in)	
A / B	Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade	
5.0 m (196.8 in)	1825* (4023*)	1320 (2910)			1730* (3814*)	1730* (3814*)				
4.0 m (157.5 in)	1770* (3902*)	1050 (2315)	1760* (3880)	1345 (2965)	1805* (3979*)	1805* (3979*)				
3.0 m (118.1 in)	1755* (3869*)	915 (2017)	1885* (4156*)	1305 (2877)	2115* (4663*)	1865 (4112)	2550* (5622*)	2550* (5622*)		
2.0 m (78.7 in)	1765* (3891*)	845 (1863)	2090* (4608*)	1245 (2745)	2575* (5677*)	1740 (3836)	3690* (8135*)	2685 (5919)		
1.0 m (39.4 in)	1790* (3946*)	815 (1797)	2295* (5060*)	1180 (2601)	2995* (6603*)	1620 (3571)	4580* (10097*)	2425 (5346)		
0.0 m (0 in)	1820* (4012*)	830 (1830)	2415* (5324*)	1130 (2491)	3210* (7077*)	1540 (3395)	4775* (10527*)	2320 (5115)		
−1.0 m (−39.4 in)	1840* (4057*)	895 (1973)	2375* (5236*)	1110 (2447)	3135* (6911*)	1505 (3318)	4530* (9987*)	2295 (5060)	7150* (15763*)	4730 (10428)
−2.0 m (−78.7 in)	1830* (4034*)	1040 (2293)			2835* (6250*)	1510 (3329)	3935* (8675*)	2320 (5115)	6000* (13228*)	4800 (10582)
−3.0 m (−118.1 in)	1705* (3759*)	1415 (3120)					2855* (6294*)	2390 (5269)		

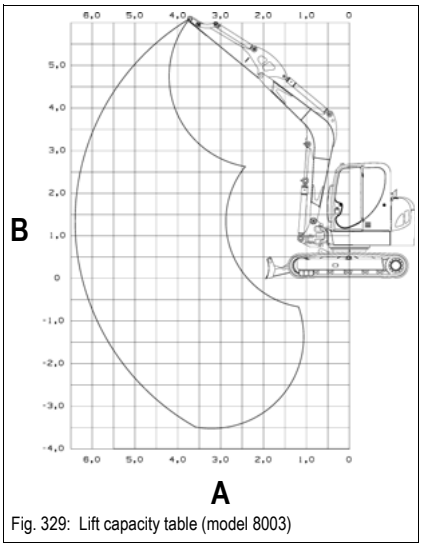
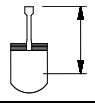


Fig. 329: Lift capacity table (model 8003)

max	Admissible load on extended stick
A	Reach from live ring centre
B	Load hook height
*	Lift capacity limited by hydraulic system

All table indications in kg (lbs.) and horizontal position on firm ground without bucket.

	With the stabiliser blade in driving direction
	Without the stabiliser blade, 90° to driving direction

If equipped with a bucket or other attachments, lift capacity or tilt load is reduced by bucket or attachment dead weight.

Calculation basis: according to ISO 10567

The machine's lift capacity is restricted by the settings of the overpressures and the hydraulic system's stabilising features.

Neither 75 % of the static tilt load nor 87 % of the hydraulic lift capacity is exceeded.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.24 Lift capacity table 8003 long stick, counterweight (option)

	max		5.0 m (196.8 in)		4.0 m (157.5 in)		3.0 m (118.1 in)		2.0 (78.7 in)	
A / B	Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade	
5.0 m (196.8 in)	1825* (4023*)	1495 (3296)			1730* (3814*)	1730* (3814*)				
4.0 m (157.5 in)	1770* (3902*)	1200 (2646)	1760* (3880)	1520 (3351)	1805* (3979*)	1805* (3979*)				
3.0 m (118.1 in)	1755* (3869*)	1050 (2315)	1885* (4156*)	1480 (3263)	2115* (4663*)	2100 (4630)	2550* (5622*)	2550* (5622*)		
2.0 m (78.7 in)	1765* (3891*)	975 (2150)	2090* (4608*)	1420 (3131)	2575* (5677*)	1975 (4354)	3690* (8135*)	3035 (6691)		
1.0 m (39.4 in)	1790* (3946*)	950 (2094)	2295* (5060*)	1355 (2987)	2995* (6603*)	1855 (4090)	4580* (10097*)	2775 (6118)		
0.0 m (0 in)	1820* (4012*)	965 (2127)	2415* (5324*)	1310 (2888)	3210* (7077*)	1775 (3913)	4775* (10527*)	2670 (3682)		
−1.0 m (−39.4 in)	1840* (4057*)	1040 (2293)	2375* (5236*)	1285 (2833)	3135* (6911*)	1740 (3836)	4530* (9987*)	2645 (5831)	7150* (15763*)	5425 (11960)
−2.0 m (−78.7 in)	1830* (4034*)	1205 (2657)			2835* (6250*)	1745 (3847)	3935* (8675*)	2670 (5886)	6000* (13228*)	5495 (12114)
−3.0 m (−118.1 in)	1705* (3759*)	1630 (3594)					2855* (6294*)	2740 (6041)		

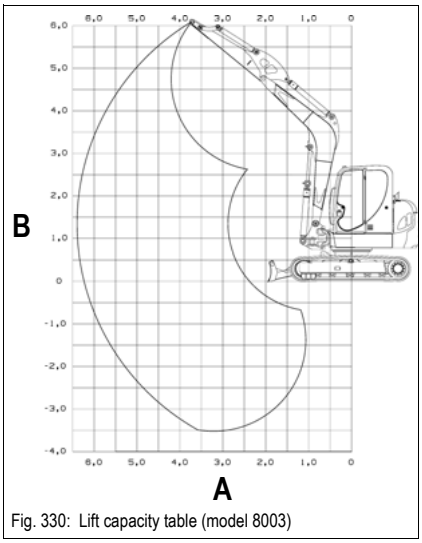
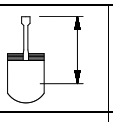


Fig. 330: Lift capacity table (model 8003)

max	Admissible load on extended stick
A	Reach from live ring centre
B	Load hook height
*	Lift capacity limited by hydraulic system

All table indications in kg (lbs.) and horizontal position on firm ground without bucket.

	With the stabiliser blade in driving direction
	Without the stabiliser blade, 90° to driving direction

If equipped with a bucket or other attachments, lift capacity or tilt load is reduced by bucket or attachment dead weight.

Calculation basis: according to ISO 10567

The machine's lift capacity is restricted by the settings of the overpressures and the hydraulic system's stabilising features.

Neither 75 % of the static tilt load nor 87 % of the hydraulic lift capacity is exceeded.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.25 Lift capacity table 8003 triple articulation boom (option)

	max		5.0 m (196.8 in)		4.0 m (157.5 in)		3.0 m (118.1 in)		2.0 (78.7 in)	
A / B	Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade	
5.0 m (196.8 in)	2050* (4519*)	1180 (2601)	2045* (4508*)	1190 (2623)	2115* (4663*)	1830 (4034)				
4.0 m (157.5 in)	1890* (4167*)	925 (2039)	1960* (4321)	1215 (2679)	2190* (4828*)	1795 (3957)				
3.0 m (118.1 in)	1805* (3979*)	800 (1764)	2060* (4542*)	1170 (2579)	2465* (5434*)	1685 (3715)	3295* (7264*)	2685 (5919)		
2.0 m (78.7 in)	1745* (3847*)	735 (1620)	2205* (4861*)	1100 (2425)	2820* (6217*)	1535 (3384)	4250* (9370*)	2300 (5071)		
1.0 m (39.4 in)	1690* (3726*)	715 (1576)	2315* (5104*)	1030 (2271)	3065* (6757*)	1405 (3097)	4585* (10108*)	2060 (4542)		
0.0 m (0 in)	1625* (3583*)	730 (1609)	2315* (5104*)	985 (2171)	3070* (6768*)	1335 (2943)	4295* (9469*)	2015 (4442)		
−1.0 m (−39.4 in)	1515* (3340*)	800 (1764)	2130* (4696*)	970 (2138)	2825* (6228*)	1320 (2910)	3770* (8311*)	2030 (4475)	4485* (9888*)	4485* (9888*)
−2.0 m (−78.7 in)	1310* (2888*)	950 (2094)	1610* (3549*)	1000 (2205)	2285* (5038*)	1345 (2965)	2960* (6526*)	2085 (4597)	3545* (7815*)	3545* (7815*)

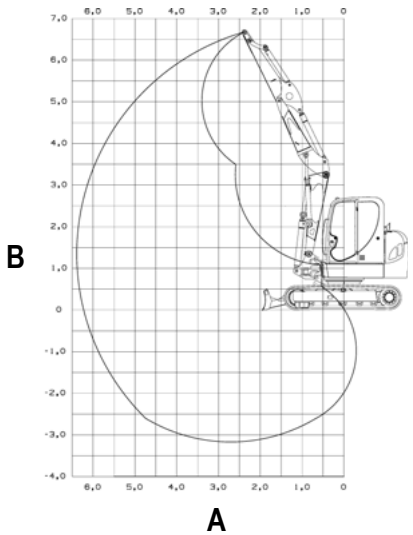
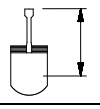


Fig. 331: Lift capacity table (model 8003)

max	Admissible load on extended stick
A	Reach from live ring centre
B	Load hook height
*	Lift capacity limited by hydraulic system

All table indications in kg (lbs.) and horizontal position on firm ground without bucket.

	With the stabiliser blade in driving direction
	Without the stabiliser blade, 90° to driving direction

If equipped with a bucket or other attachments, lift capacity or tilt load is reduced by bucket or attachment dead weight.

Calculation basis: according to ISO 10567

The machine's lift capacity is restricted by the settings of the overpressures and the hydraulic system's stabilising features.

Neither 75 % of the static tilt load nor 87 % of the hydraulic lift capacity is exceeded.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.26 Lift capacity table 8003 triple articulation boom, counterweight (option)

A / B	max		5.0 m (196.8 in)		4.0 m (157.5 in)		3.0 m (118.1 in)		2.0 (78.7 in)	
	Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade	
5.0 m (196.8 in)	2050* (4519*)	1365 (3009)	2045* (4508*)	1375 (3031)	2115* (4663*)	2075 (4575)				
4.0 m (157.5 in)	1890* (4167*)	1085 (2392)	1960* (4321)	1400 (3086)	2190* (4828*)	2040 (4497)				
3.0 m (118.1 in)	1805* (3979*)	945 (2083)	2060* (4542*)	1355 (2987)	2465* (5434*)	1930 (4255)	3295* (7264*)	3055 (6735)		
2.0 m (78.7 in)	1745* (3847*)	875 (1929)	2205* (4861*)	1285 (2833)	2820* (6217*)	1780 (3924)	4250* (9370*)	2665 (5875)		
1.0 m (39.4 in)	1690* (3726*)	850 (1874)	2315* (5104*)	1215 (2679)	3065* (6757*)	1655 (2649)	4585* (10108*)	2430 (5357)		
0.0 m (0 in)	1625* (3583*)	875 (1929)	2315* (5104*)	1170 (2579)	3070* (6768*)	1580 (3483)	4295* (9469*)	2385 (5258)		
−1.0 m (−39.4 in)	1515* (3340*)	950 (2094)	2130* (4696*)	1155 (2546)	2825* (6228*)	1565 (2450)	3770* (8311*)	2400 (5291)	4485* (9888*)	4485* (9888*)
−2.0 m (−78.7 in)	1310* (2888*)	1125 (2480)	1610* (3549*)	1185 (2612)	2285* (5038*)	1590 (3505)	2960* (6526*)	2455 (5412)	3545* (7815*)	3545* (7815*)

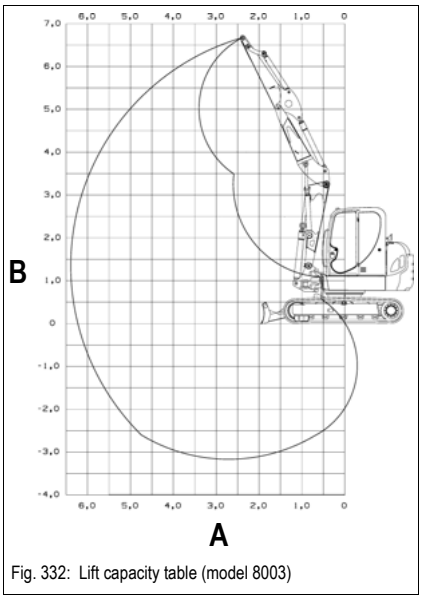
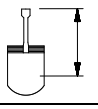
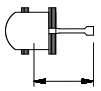


Fig. 332: Lift capacity table (model 8003)

max	Admissible load on extended stick
A	Reach from live ring centre
B	Load hook height
*	Lift capacity limited by hydraulic system

All table indications in kg (lbs.) and horizontal position on firm ground without bucket.

	With the stabiliser blade in driving direction
	Without the stabiliser blade, 90° to driving direction

If equipped with a bucket or other attachments, lift capacity or tilt load is reduced by bucket or attachment dead weight.

Calculation basis: according to ISO 10567

The machine's lift capacity is restricted by the settings of the overpressures and the hydraulic system's stabilising features.

Neither 75 % of the static tilt load nor 87 % of the hydraulic lift capacity is exceeded.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.27 Lift capacity table 8003 long stick, triple articulation boom (option)

A / B	max		5.0 m (196.8 in)		4.0 m (157.5 in)		3.0 m (118.1 in)		2.0 (78.7 in)	
	Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade	
5.0 m (196.8 in)	1870* (4123*)	1035 (2282)	1845* (4068*)	1235 (2723)						
4.0 m (157.5 in)	1745* (3847*)	835 (1841)	1835* (4045)	1230 (2712)	2020* (4453*)	1820 (4012)				
3.0 m (118.1 in)	1675* (3693*)	730 (1609)	1950* (4299*)	1180 (2601)	2300* (5071*)	1710 (3770)	2965* (6537*)	2770 (6107)		
2.0 m (78.7 in)	1620* (3571*)	670 (1477)	2115* (4663*)	1105 (2436)	2680* (5908*)	1555 (3428)	3940* (8686*)	2390 (5269)		
1.0 m (39.4 in)	1575* (3472*)	655 (1444)	2255* (4971*)	1030 (2271)	2980* (6570*)	1415 (3120)	4520* (9965*)	2095 (4619)		
0.0 m (0 in)	1520* (3351*)	665 (1466)	2295* (5060*)	975 (2150)	3060* (6746*)	1325 (2921)	4435* (9777*)	1995 (4398)		
−1.0 m (−39.4 in)	1430* (3153*)	720 (1587)	2175* (4795*)	950 (2094)	2895* (6382*)	1290 (2844)	4000* (8818*)	1985 (4376)	5565* (12269*)	5565* (12269*)
−2.0 m (−78.7 in)	1270* (2800*)	840 (1852)	1805* (3979*)	960 (2116)	2455* (5412*)	1305 (2877)	3270* (7209*)	2030 (4475)	4415* (9733*)	4285 (9447)

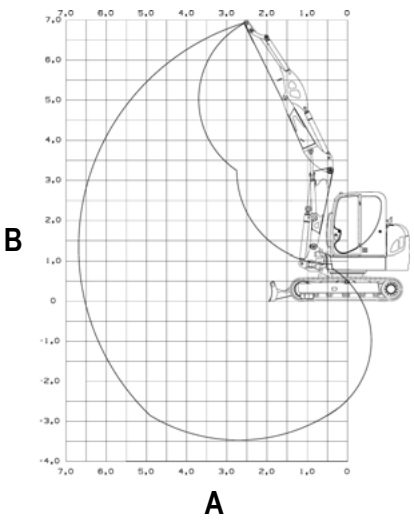
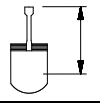


Fig. 333: Lift capacity table (model 8003)

max	Admissible load on extended stick
A	Reach from live ring centre
B	Load hook height
*	Lift capacity limited by hydraulic system

All table indications in kg (lbs.) and horizontal position on firm ground without bucket.

	With the stabiliser blade in driving direction
	Without the stabiliser blade, 90° to driving direction

If equipped with a bucket or other attachments, lift capacity or tilt load is reduced by bucket or attachment dead weight.

Calculation basis: according to ISO 10567

The machine's lift capacity is restricted by the settings of the overpressures and the hydraulic system's stabilising features.

Neither 75 % of the static tilt load nor 87 % of the hydraulic lift capacity is exceeded.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.28 Lift capacity table 8003 long stick, triple articulation boom, counterweight (option)

	max		5.0 m (196.8 in)		4.0 m (157.5 in)		3.0 m (118.1 in)		2.0 (78.7 in)	
A / B	Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade		Lowered blade	
5.0 m (196.8 in)	1870* (4123*)	1195 (2635)	1845* (4068*)	1410 (3109)						
4.0 m (157.5 in)	1745* (3847*)	975 (2150)	1835* (4045)	1405 (3097)	2020* (4453*)	2020* (4453*)				
3.0 m (118.1 in)	1675* (3693*)	860 (1896)	1950* (4299*)	1355 (2987)	2300* (5071*)	1945 (4288)	2965* (6537*)	2965* (6537*)		
2.0 m (78.7 in)	1620* (3571*)	795 (1753)	2115* (4663*)	1280 (2822)	2680* (5908*)	1760 (3880)	3940* (8686*)	2740 (6041)		
1.0 m (39.4 in)	1575* (3472*)	775 (1709)	2255* (4971*)	1205 (2657)	2980* (6570*)	1650 (3638)	4520* (9965*)	2445 (5390)		
0.0 m (0 in)	1520* (3351*)	795 (1753)	2295* (5060*)	1150 (2535)	3060* (6746*)	1560 (3439)	4435* (9777*)	2345 (5170)		
−1.0 m (−39.4 in)	1430* (3153*)	1885 (1587)	2175* (4795*)	1125 (2480)	2895* (6382*)	1525 (3362)	4000* (8818*)	2340 (5159)	5565* (12269*)	5565* (12269*)
−2.0 m (−78.7 in)	1270* (2800*)	990* (2183*)	1805* (3979*)	1135 (2502)	2455* (5412*)	1540 (3395)	3270* (7209*)	2380 (5247)	4415* (9733*)	4415* (9733*)

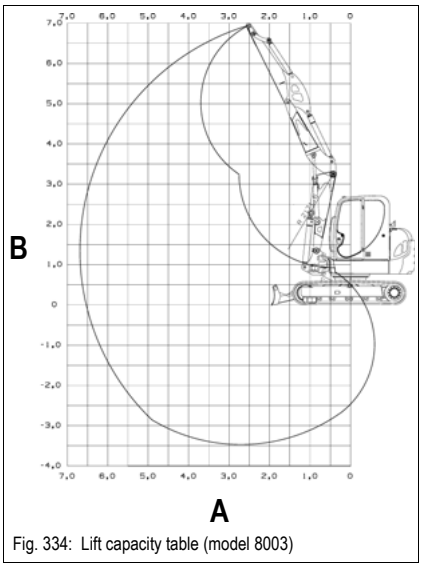
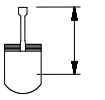


Fig. 334: Lift capacity table (model 8003)

max	Admissible load on extended stick
A	Reach from live ring centre
B	Load hook height
*	Lift capacity limited by hydraulic system

All table indications in kg (lbs.) and horizontal position on firm ground without bucket.

	With the stabiliser blade in driving direction
	Without the stabiliser blade, 90° to driving direction

If equipped with a bucket or other attachments, lift capacity or tilt load is reduced by bucket or attachment dead weight.

Calculation basis: according to ISO 10567

The machine's lift capacity is restricted by the settings of the overpressures and the hydraulic system's stabilising features.

Neither 75 % of the static tilt load nor 87 % of the hydraulic lift capacity is exceeded.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

6.29 Lift capacity table 8003 Vario (option)

A	max	5.0 m (196.8 in)			4.0 m (157.5 in)			3.0 m (118.1 in)			2.0 m (78.7 in)		
B \ C		Rear Vario position	Front Vario position		Rear Vario position	Front Vario position		Rear Vario position	Front Vario position		Rear Vario position	Front Vario position		Rear Vario position	Front Vario position
5.0 m (196.8 in)	2000* (4409*)	1950 (4299)	1040 (2293)				1955* (4310*)	1955* (4310*)	1345 (2965)						
4.0 m (157.5 in)	1920* (4233*)	1505 (3318)	805 (1775)	1915* (4222*)	1715 (3781)	920 (2028)	2010* (4431*)	2010* (4431*)	1330 (2932)						
3.0 m (118.1 in)	1895* (4178*)	1270 (2800)	680 (1499)	2020* (4453*)	1675 (3693)	895 (1973)	2315* (5104*)	2315* (5104*)	1275 (2811)	2925* (6449*)	2925* (6449*)	2015 (4442)			
2.0 m (78.7 in)	1905* (4200*)	1185 (2612)	635 (1400)	2205* (4861*)	1605 (3538)	860 (1896)	2750* (6063*)	2230 (4916)	1195 (2635)	4070* (8973*)	3380 (7452)	1805 (3979)			
1.0 m (39.4 in)	1930* (4255*)	1150 (2535)	615 (1356)	2380* (5247*)	1530 (3373)	820 (1808)	3120* (6878*)	2090 (4608)	1120 (2469)	4770* (10516*)	3095 (6823)	1655 (3649)			
0.0 m (0 in)	1960* (4321*)	1175 (2590)	630 (1389)	2455* (5412*)	1475 (3252)	790 (1742)	3260* (7187*)	2000 (4409)	1070 (2359)	4750* (10472*)	3010 (6636)	1610 (3549)			
−1.0 m (−39.4 in)	1975* (4354*)	1275 (2811)	685 (1510)	2345* (5170*)	1460 (3219)	780 (1720)	3135* (6889*)	1975 (4354)	1055 (2326)	4375* (9645*)	3005 (6625)	1605 (3538)	6305* (13900*)	6230 (13735)	3335 (7352)
−2.0 m (−78.7 in)	1940* (4277*)	1520 (3351)	815 (1797)				2690* (5930*)	1995 (4398)	1065 (2348)	3675* (8102*)	3050 (6724)	1630 (3593)	5230* (11530*)	5230* (11530*)	3380 (7452)
−3.0 m (−118.1 in)	1700* (3748*)	1700* (3748*)	1175 (2590)							2385* (5258*)	2385* (5258*)	1645 (3626)			

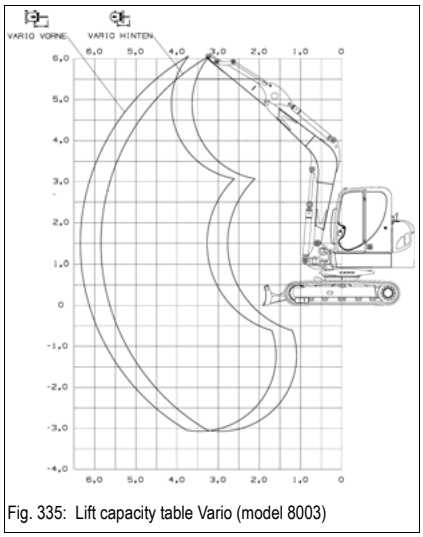


Fig. 335: Lift capacity table Vario (model 8003)

max	Admissible load on extended stick
A	Reach from live ring centre
B	Load hook height
C	Vario position
*	Lift capacity limited by hydraulic system

All table indications in kg (lbs.) and horizontal position on firm ground without bucket.

	With the stabiliser blade in driving direction
	Without the stabiliser blade 90° in driving direction Upper carriage shifted to the rear with Vario option
	Without the stabiliser blade 90° in driving direction Upper carriage shifted to the front with Vario option

If equipped with a bucket or other attachments, lift capacity or tilt load is reduced by bucket or attachment dead weight.

Calculation basis: according to ISO 10567

The machine's lift capacity is restricted by the settings of the overpressures and the hydraulic system's stabilising features.

Neither 75 % of the static tilt load nor 87 % of the hydraulic lift capacity is exceeded.

https://truckmanualshub.com/

Wacker Neuson Linz GmbH keep abreast of the latest technical developments and constantly improve their products. For this reason, we may from time to time need to make changes to diagrams and descriptions in this documentation which do not reflect products which have already been delivered and which will not be implemented on these machines.

Technical data, dimensions and weights are given as an indication only. Responsibility for errors or omissions not accepted.

No reproduction or translation of this publication, in whole or part, without the written consent of Wacker Neuson Linz GmbH.

All rights under the provision of the Copyright Act are reserved.

Wacker Neuson Linz GmbH
Flughafenstraße 7
A-4063 Hörsching
Austria

https://truckmanualshub.com/



WACKER NEUSON

Wacker Neuson Linz GmbH
Flughafenstraße 7
A-4063 Hörsching

Phone: +43 (0) 7221 63000
Fax: +43 (0) 7221 63000 - 2200
E-mail: office.linz@wackerneuson.com
www.wackerneuson.com

Order no. 1000132136
Language en